

出国留学英语阅读强化教程 入门

总主编 王东升
主 审 邓红风
主 编 郑文文

清华大学出版社

出国留学英语阅读强化教程：入门

主　编：郑文文

副主编：李尚一

编　委：李玮玮　王祖正　张阳

内 容 简 介

本套教材共四册，是面向高中英语水平以上的学生而编写的强化阅读教程。本套书的词汇量起点为最基础的3 000 个单词，通过计算机程序筛选，以英国国家语料库最常用词汇列表的前11部分为基准，每册书增加2 000 个新词，四册书的词汇覆盖量达到11 000。每册各包含十个单元，每单元由Focus on、Text A和Text B三部分组成。

本书帮助学生掌握第3 000~5 000 的两千词汇量；Focus on板块主要聚焦构词法，加深学生对构词法规律的认知。

本套教材配有慕课在线课件和在线测试系统，全部课文也都配有英美原声朗读音频，可以进入“海大慕课”（www.moocouc.com）参加学习、辅导，并下载音频文件。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

出国留学英语阅读强化教程. 入门 / 王东升总主编；郑文文主编. —北京：清华大学出版社，2018

ISBN 978-7-302-50684-3

Ⅰ. ①出… Ⅱ. ①王… ②郑… Ⅲ. ①英语–阅读教学–自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H319.4

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2018）第163125号

责任编辑：刘细珍
封面设计：子 一
责任校对：王凤芝
责任印制：董 瑾

出版发行：清华大学出版社
网　　址：http:// www. tup. com. cn，http:// www. wqbook. com
地　　址：北京清华大学学研大厦A座　**邮　　编：**100084
社 总 机：010-62770175　**邮　　购：**010-62786544
投稿与读者服务：010-62776969, c-service@tup.tsinghua.edu.cn
质量反馈：010-62772015, zhiliang@tup.tsinghua.edu.cn
印 装 者：三河市金元印装有限公司
经　　销：全国新华书店
开　　本：185mm × 260mm　**印　　张：**19.5　**字　　数：**507千字
版　　次：2018 年 9 月第 1 版　**印　　次：**2018 年 9 月第 1 次印刷
定　　价：69.00元

产品编号：078419-01

前 言

本套教材是面向已经具有高中英语水平的学生而编写的英语阅读教程。国内目前所使用的英语教材，尽管对词汇量有一定的要求，但是教材本身的词汇量覆盖面严重不足。国外要求学生进行大量的课外阅读，教材没有覆盖的词汇可以依靠大量的课外阅读进行补充。但是中国的情况比较特殊，学生在学习英语时，有很强的应试目的性，基本上没有时间进行课外阅读，所以教材没有覆盖的词汇是很难掌握的。根据以上情况，本套教材提出了基本词汇全覆盖的设计理念。在中小学 12 年英语学习的基础上，通过本套教材的学习，可以培养学生的英语阅读能力，包括对基本词汇的认知能力，使之基本达到英语国家阅读人群的一般水平，或者说达到可以到国外大学接受以英语为教学语言的教育的程度。

根据高中阶段教学大纲规定的高中生词汇量大约为 4 000 个这一基本事实，本套教材的起点是最基础的 3 000 个单词（即这 3 000 个单词不再作为生词），通过计算机程序筛选，以英国国家语料库最常用词汇列表的前 11 部分（即全部为 11 000 个单词）为基准，每一册书增加 2 000 个新词，四册书的全部词汇量覆盖面为 11 000 个单词。这一词汇量水平，尽管远达不到英语国家学生大学入学时的词汇量，但超出国内大学公共英语四六级水平。如果能够达到这一目标，学习者至少可以有一个比较好的英语基础，能够顺利进入英语国家或其他国家以英语为教学语言的大学继续学习。

本套教材共四册，每册书的每一个单元都包括 150~200 个新词（编写过程中通过编好的计算机程序进行筛选），并保证新词不与其他三册书的新词重复。通过程序筛选，确保每册书的新增词汇量达到 2 000 左右。学生在学习完四册书之后，阅读词汇量达到 11 000 个左右，基本上可以达到自主流畅阅读一般性英语读物的水平，为进一步用英语作为教学语言学习各个专业（包括英语语言文学专业）打下坚实的语言基础。

长期以来，许多人对国人英语学习的状况有一个误解，即国人阅读能力尚好，但听说能力不行。其实，这一误解来源于对英语阅读本身的误解。所谓的阅读能力，正常应当是指在不借助字典的情况下，可以无障碍读懂一般性英语读物的能力，而一般性读物通常是指一般文学和非文学读物、报刊，也就是英语国家高中毕业生所能够达到的能力。换句话说，本套教材的目标是要求学习者达到英语国家教育的扫盲要求。目前，我国中学生和大学生的英语阅读能力，即便是基础好的学生，也普遍达不到这个标准。主要差距在两个方面：一词汇量太小，基本阅读的材料都是控制词汇量的文本，而且还时常需要查生词；二阅读速度太慢，理解也慢，一个文本往往要读两遍及以上才能读懂。在这种情况下，想听懂同样水平的英语语音材料基本是不可能的。所以，很多自认为阅读能力尚好的学生，实际上阅读能力可能并不好。如果按英语国家对阅读的要求，基本算是文盲。本套教材的编者充分考虑了我国学生在阅读方面的这两个差距，一方面强调词汇量的扩充，另一方面强调阅读速度的提高。本套教材的书名，也反映了这样一种理念，即通过学习这套教材，突破阅

读障碍，为进一步学习英语打下坚实的基础。

为了实现这一目标，本套教材配有慕课（MOOC）在线课件和在线测试系统，全部课文也都配有英美原声朗读音频，可以进入“海大慕课”（www.moocouc.com）参加学习、辅导，并下载音频文件。课文朗读音频一方面可以作为一种学习阅读的辅助手段，反复听读、跟读，把学习的内容从视听两个方面输入大脑，强化和巩固学习的效果；另一方面也可作为阅读学习的一把标尺来衡量学生是否达到学习目标之一：阅读速度的提升。学生的阅读速度至少要达到朗读速度，并且逐渐超过朗读速度，才能听懂音频材料，达到教学目标的要求。所以，使用本套教材的教师，不能仅以学生读懂课文内容为目标，一定要在读懂的基础上，不断提高阅读速度：首先，需要读懂课文；其次，需要听懂课文的录音，并进一步熟练跟读课文，达到熟练朗读的程度；最后，应当默读达到每分钟 250~300 个词的速度（即英语国家受过教育人群的一般阅读速度）。

英语作为一种拼音文字，其阅读可以分为四种：第一，拼读，即对每一个词，按读音规则读出每一个音节，也就是学会看到一个词，能拼读出它的发音，然后理解它的意义。第二，流畅朗读，省略音节的拼读，把每一个词作为一个整体读出发音并理解意义，这样可以大大提高阅读速度。第三，默读，即并不发出声音，只是在心里默读（根据研究，发音器官实际上也有反应，但是不发出声音）。默读要比朗读快很多，根据研究，默读的极限速度可以达到每分钟 800~900 个词。第四，视读，完全省略语音与单词的联系，通过视觉把词或词组直接与意义建立联系。掌握这种阅读方法的人，阅读速度可以达到每分钟几千个词。不同的阅读方法有着不同的功用和使用环境。即使在英语国家，大部分人也只能获得前三种阅读能力，而使用本套教材的学生都是把英语作为外语学习的人，所以只以掌握前三种阅读能力为目标。而且，第三种能力也只设立了最低的目标，即每分钟阅读 250~300 个词。当然作为长远目标，每分钟阅读 500 个词或更多应当是每一个英语学习者努力的方向。所以，本套教材要求学生对所有的课文都应当熟练朗读和快速默读。

本套教材的编者认为，由于所处的环境，我们最容易得到的英语材料是阅读材料，而且阅读材料从词汇的覆盖面、题材的广泛性方面来看都是其他材料所不能比拟的。所以，对中国学习者而言，英语阅读往往是最容易入门的。从阅读入手取得突破，然后转战听力、口语、写作，不但体现了中国古代先哲兵力战法的智慧，也符合现代学习心理学的认知。

本书为该套教材的第一册，共分十个单元，每单元两篇文章，题材十分广泛，涉及自然、旅游、体育、媒体、健康、卫生、环境、语言、文学、政治、校园、社会、文化等领域。每单元主体共分三个部分。第一部分为语言点（Focus on）。本册主要涉及构词法（词根、词缀、复合词、转换等）的讲解，以此加深学生对词汇本身的认识，帮助学生了解生词的来源和构成，让学生在阅读文章时能猜测、了解生词的含义，促进他们对文章内容的快速理解。第二部分为 Text A。这一部分下分三个板块：第一个板块是词汇。课文之前的重点单词 Core Words 需老师重点讲解，学生重点识记；其他生词都在 Words for Self-study 部分，

要求学生通过查词典等方式自己学习掌握，以提高学生的自学能力。第二个板块是课文。本册课文的平均长度在 1 500 词左右，要求学生经过阅读训练，争取达到每分钟 150 词的阅读速度，因此每篇文章学生需在 10 分钟左右读完，并对文章内容有初步的了解，能做基本的概述。有些文章后有注解 Notes，可以辅助学生理解相关的背景知识。最后一个板块是练习。每个单元的题型设计不尽相同。练习的前半部分是训练阅读速度的，后半部分是针对课文词汇的掌握和内容理解的。每篇课文均要求学生精读，理解并掌握课文，按照练习设计的顺序层层递进，逐步掌握课文和词汇。第三部分为 Text B。这一部分的结构与 Text A 相同。

每个单元都配有专门的单词表，覆盖了该单元中出现的全部大纲生词（英国国家语料库最常用词汇列表的 3 000~5 000 个词），包括 Focus on、Core Words、Text、Notes、Exercises 中的生词。因此，要求学生在学习各单元的每一部分时都要掌握这些生词，包括基本发音、用法等，还可以尝试背诵词汇讲解中的例句，甚至课文的重要段落，多方面掌握课文相关的知识点，以便达到积累每册 2 000 个生词的目的。

总之，通过本册书的学习，学生应在掌握 2 000 个大纲词汇的同时，训练较快的阅读速度，并逐步提升阅读理解能力和听力水平，从而提高英语的综合运用能力。

本教材的编写得到山东大学外国语学院、中国海洋大学外国语学院和国际教育中心、山东师范大学外国语学院、山东科技大学外国语学院、青岛理工大学外国语学院、山东威海外事学院、青岛工学院和山东外贸职业学院以及清华大学出版社的鼎力相助，尤其是山东中英国际工程图书有限公司的资助，在此一并感谢。

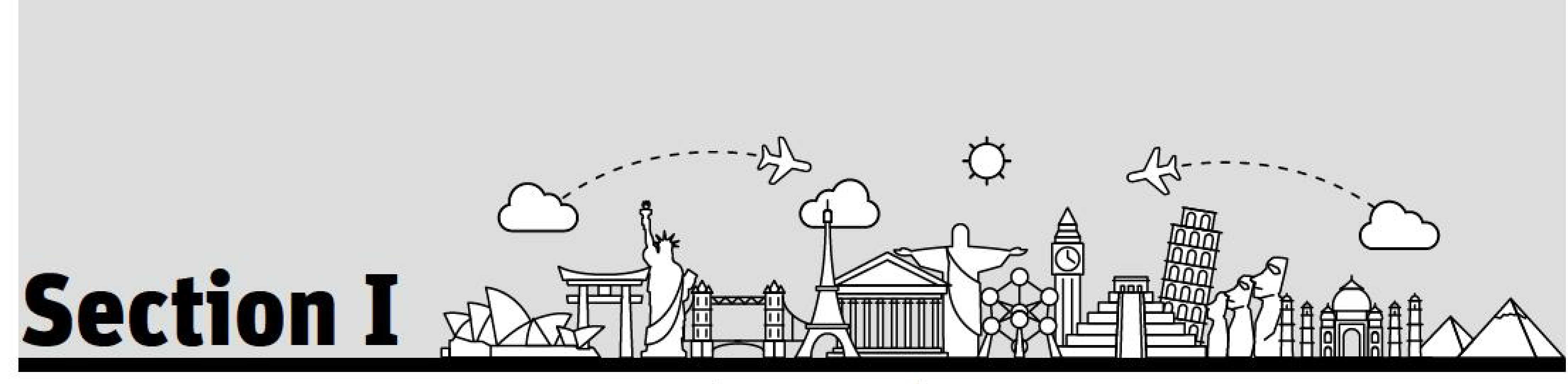
编者

2018 年 8 月

目　录



Unit 1
Nature and Tourism



Section I
Focus on Compound Words

Sources of New Vocabulary

English vocabulary is not a stable, finite collection of words. New words and expressions are continuously coming into use, while older ones drop out of use. Additionally, old words often take on new meanings (e.g. mouse, virus, window in computing), and older meanings can simply die out (e.g. the original meaning of computer was a person whose job was to make calculations or do accounts). Words are very rarely invented entirely from scratch.

One of the most important factors in reading is the knowledge of words. The number of words readers know determines the difficulty and complexity of the material they can read and understand. However, it should be realized that the English vocabulary is so vast that nobody can hope to master vocabulary only by learning his or her lessons in the classroom. Somehow, readers must become self-motivated learners who can continue to learn words when reading an article. Most readers depend on dictionaries, but to do that takes up too much time, which makes reading a tiresome task. Besides, when students are engaged in taking exams, they aren't allowed to use dictionaries. How can they know the meanings of the new words? In fact, there are some other ways to solve the problem, such as guessing the meanings of words from word formation. Usually the words are formed through three major methods, i.e. compounding, affix, and conversion. In this unit, we are going to talk about compounding.

What Is a Compound Word?

Compounding, also called composition, is the formation of new words by joining two or more stems. So a compound is a lexical unit consisting of more than one stem and functioning both grammatically and semantically as a single word. English vocabulary mainly has noun compounds, adjective compounds and verb compounds. Particularly, adjectives and nouns are combined into compound structures in a variety of ways. When someone joins two words together to form a compound word, the spelling of those words does not usually change. Instead, the major change is simply a deletion of spaces between the words. It is, in essence, a marriage of words, where two become one. A common pattern is that two words—fire fly, say—will be joined by a hyphen for a time—fire-fly—and then be joined into one word—firefly. There are some exceptions to this rule of marriage. Just as many women prefer a hyphenated last name when they get married to keep their maiden names, some compound words may be hyphenated instead of being joined directly together. Compound words not joined by a hyphen are called "closed" compounds, while words joined by a hyphen are "hyphenated" compounds. There is also an "open" form for a compound word such as "post office", in which the space is not deleted but the two words function as one.

When choosing whether to join words, either by a hyphen or deletion of space, a writer should consult a dictionary for the correct structure. There are many words that may be compounded,

and sometimes it can be difficult to determine how they should be joined and in what context it is appropriate to do so. Generally, when someone joins two words that are not usually compounded, the writer uses a hyphen to express a relationship instead of creating a compound word that does not actually exist. This is often done for words that are used together to create an adjective, such as "well-known" or "bright-red". Hence, we can see that there are altogether three forms of compound words: the closed form, in which the words are combined together, such as firefly, secondhand, football, childlike, keyboard, makeup; the hyphenated form, such as daughter-in-law, over-the-counter, state-owned, six-year-old, mass-produced, knowledge-intensive; and the open form, such as post office, real estate, middle class, full moon.

To understand the meanings of compound words, you'd better put the meanings of the two stems together and try to guess their part of speech based on the context. It is important to understand the use of compound words because some of them may have different definitions when the words are joined, rather than merely used consecutively in a sentence. This distinction is vital to ensuring proper meaning in a statement. For example, the compound word "overall" takes on a slightly different meaning than the two words "over all" in a sentence.

Let's look at the following group examples and figure out the implications of them.

Compound Nouns

1) *n.* + *n.*: woodwork; airways; carriageway; earthquake; windowsill; hometown; windowscreen; eyesight; bookshop; doughnut; earphone; eyebrow; footpath; handbook; housework; pancake; roadworks; teaspoon; teatime; caretaker; postcode; lipstick; ashtray; saucepan; seabird; seaweed; clownfish; fireman; windscreen; physiotherapist
2) *n.* + *v.*: sunrise; sunset; sunshine; daybreak; headache; heartbeat; snowfall
3) *adj.* + *n.*: loudspeaker; commonwealth; midnight; blackboard; software; microwave; sideway; shorthand; greenhouse; greenhand
4) *v.*-ing + *n.*: sitting room; cooling water
5) *v.* + *n.*: playground; chopsticks; runway; washroom; showroom; breakfast; playgroup; shotgun; suitcase; caretaker
6) *n.* + *v.*-ing: handwriting; home-cooking; roller-skating
7) *v.* + *adv.*: get-together; printout; standby; turnover
8) *v.*-ing + *adv.*: opening-up
9) others: afternoon; leeway; tonight; bestseller; T-shirt; E-mail; self-respect; backup

Compound Adjectives

1) *adj.* + *n.*-(e)d: kind-hearted; medium-sized
2) *adj.* + *v.*-ing: good-looking; easy-going
3) *adv.* + *v.*-ing: hard-working; ever-increasing
4) *adv.* + *n.*: after-sales; overseas; downhill
5) *n.* + *v.*-ing: English-speaking; tree-planting; peace-loving
6) *n.* + *v.*-ed: man-made; home-made; heartbroken
7) *adv.* + *v.*-ed: well-known; once-isolated; so-called; newly-built

8) *adj.* + *n.*: commonsense; mid-east; round-trip; real-time; long-distance; medium-distance

9) *adj.* + *adj.*: super-rich; dark-blue

10) *n.* + *adj.*: visa-free; worldwide; world-famous; homesick

11) *num.* + *n.*: third-tier; double-digit; eight-fold; secondhand; two-month; first-class

12) *prep.* + *n.*: inbound; outbound; online; indoor

13) others: everyday; take-away; part-time; intermediate; year-on-year

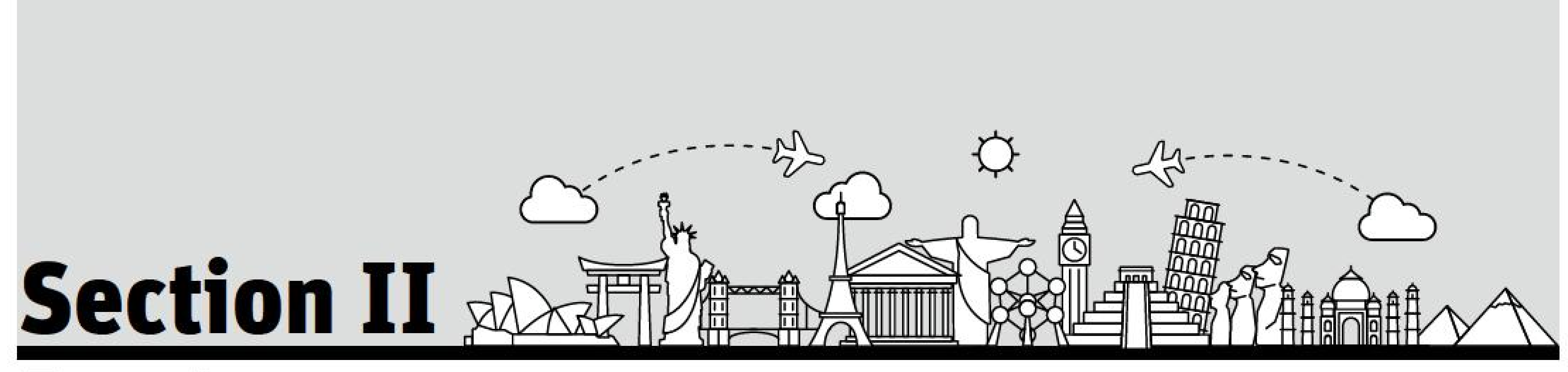
Compound Adverbs

maybe; forever; somewhere; anytime; whenever; without; outside; sometime(s); half-way; nearby; wholesale; clockwise; upstairs

Compound Verbs

blackmail; typewrite; undergo; overflow; overthrow; outdo; download

(Adapted from http: //www. xzbu. com/9/view-3550900. htm and http: //www. wisegeek. org/what-is-a-compound-word. htm and http: //grammar. ccc. commnet. edu/grammar/compounds. htm)



Section II

Text A: Chinese: The New Globe-travelers

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **explosion** [ɪk'spləʊʒ(ə)n] ***n.***

a sudden or quick increase in the number or amount of something; a loud sound and the energy produced by something such as a bomb bursting into small pieces

synonym	blast; burst
antonym	plunge; slump
word family	explode; explosive
related phrase	information explosion; population explosion

Example 1 From 1641 to 1643, there had been an unprecedented explosion of printing and publishing in England.

Example 2 After several bouts of heated discussion, we all agree that the most grotty of all was the discovery of the population explosion.

② **alien** ['eɪlɪən] ***adj.***

very different from what you are used to, especially in a way that is difficult to understand or accept; belonging to another country or race

synonym	foreign; external
antonym	native; local; domestic
word family	alienable; alienation
related phrase	alien from; be alien to sb.; alien cultures

Example 1 Print your name and Alien Registration Number on the back of each photo and put them into the archive.

Example 2 A few people within major governments have known since at least 1947 that some UFOs are alien spacecraft.

③ **ambitious** [æm'bɪʃəs] ***adj.***

Someone who is ambitious is determined to be successful, rich, powerful, etc.; An ambitious plan,

idea, etc. shows a desire to do something good but difficult.

synonym aggressive; thirsty

word family ambition; ambitiously; ambitiousness

related phrase ambitious objective; ambitious attitude

Example 1 Mark was intensely ambitious, obsessed with the idea of becoming rich.

Example 2 The ambitious young man used his friends to further his auditing career.

④ **portable** ['pɔːtəb(ə)l] ***adj.***

able to be carried or moved easily; easily or conveniently transported; A portable machine or device is designed to be easily carried or moved.

synonym luggable; hand-held

word family portability

related phrase portable computer; portable machine

Example 1 I would really like to see a portable version of a stereo application like this.

Example 2 Turn on your portable radio for instructions and news reports.

⑤ **viable** ['vaɪəbl] ***adj.***

a viable idea, plan, or method can work successfully; Something that is viable is capable of doing what it is intended to do.

synonym feasible; working; practicable

antonym unworkable; impracticable

word family viability

related phrase viable solution; financially viable

Example 1 In all the years of debate, the government failed to consider other viable proposals.

Example 2 Other development partners are also ready to participate in viable dam projects.

⑥ **successive** [sək'sesɪv] ***adj.***

coming or following one after the other; Successive means happening or existing one after another without a break.

synonym continuing; consecutive; endless; running

antonym discontinuous; inconsecutive

word family succeed; successively; succession

related phrase successive contrast; for a second successive year

Example 1 The team has had five successive triumphs in stewing.

Example 2 Two successive quarters of growth would mean the U.S. is pulling out of recession and surplus.

⑦ **acquire** [ə'kwaɪə] ***vt.*** **(acquired/acquired/acquiring)**

to gain knowledge or learn a skill; to obtain something by buying it or being given it; to get or gain something; If you acquire something such as a skill or a habit, you learn it, or develop it through your daily life or experience.

synonym	earn; obtain; score; get; attain
antonym	lose; miss; forfeit
word family	acquired; acquiring
related phrase	acquire knowledge; acquire skills

Example 1 During her film career, she acquired a reputation after years of trekking.

Example 2 Freedom is something we all want, but many of us are not sure how to acquire it.

⑧ **accompany** [ə'kʌmpənɪ] ***vi./vt.*** **(accompanied/accompanied/accompanying)**

to go somewhere with someone; to be associated with; If you accompany someone, you go somewhere with them; If one thing accompanies another, it happens or exists at the same time, or as a result of it; If you accompany a singer or a musician, you play one part of a piece of music while they sing or play the main tune.

synonym	attend; companion
word family	accompanied; accompanying
related phrase	accompany by; accompany with

Example 1 Having some people to support you and accompany you in any social activity feels great.

Example 2 After my plea, Ken agreed to accompany me on a trip to Cork to buy some perfume.

⑨ **elevate** ['elɪveɪt] ***vt.*** **(elevated/elevated/elevating)**

to increase the amount, temperature, pressure, etc. of something; to lift someone or something to a higher position; When someone or something achieves a more important rank or status, you can say that they are elevated to it.

synonym	promote; upgrade; lift
antonym	reduce; decrease; hack
word family	elevated; elevation
related phrase	elevate sb. to; elevate one's spirits

Example 1 Language has elevated humans above the other animals.

Example 2 Emotional stress can elevate blood pressure.

⑩ **enhance** [ɪn'hɑːns] ***vt.*** **(enhanced/enhanced/enhancing)**

to improve something; To enhance something means to improve its value, quality, or attractiveness.

synonym	raise; cement; boost; gain

antonym	lower; reduce; weaken
word family	enhanced; enhancement
related phrase	enhance cooperation; enhance reputation

Example 1 Good lighting will enhance any room.

Example 2 The White House is eager to protect and enhance that reputation.

⑪ **enlarge** [ɪn'lɑːdʒ] ***vi./vt.*** **(enlarged/enlarged/enlarging)**

If you enlarge something, or if it enlarges, it increases in size or scale; When you enlarge something or when it enlarges, it becomes bigger.

synonym	extend; broaden; grow
antonym	shrink; reduce; minish
word family	enlarged; enlargement
related phrase	enlarge on/upon; enlarge one's knowledge

Example 1 A good way to enlarge your vocabulary is to read a daily newspaper like the *Newsletter*.

Example 2 The college has announced its intention to enlarge its chemical research office on sodium.

⑫ **exceed** [ɪk'siːd] ***vi./vt.*** **(exceeded/exceeded/exceeding)**

to be more than a particular number or amount; to go beyond what rules or laws say you are allowed to do; to surpass one's understanding

synonym	surpass; outdo
word family	exceeding; exceedingly
related phrase	exceed standard; exceed in

Example 1 Stop the blahs! Working hours must not exceed 42 hours a week.

Example 2 Its research budget exceeds $700 million a year.

⑬ **launch** [lɔːntʃ] ***vi./vt.*** **(launched/launched/launching)**

to start something, usually something big or important; to make a new product, book, etc. available for sale for the first time

synonym	release; issue; proceed
word family	launching; launcher
related phrase	launch a new product; launch into sth.

Example 1 The municipal government will launch an extensive public works program next year.

Example 2 The police have launched an investigation into the uproar and grilled the mob.

⑭ **obsess** [əb'ses] ***vi./vt.*** **(obsessed/obsessed/obsessing)**

If something or someone obsesses you, you think or worry about them all the time and you cannot think about anything else.

synonym spell; fascinate
word family obsessive; obsession
related phrase obsess with/by/about/over

Example 1 A lot of young girls want the gloss of appearance and are obsessed by their weight.

Example 2 Jody's been obsessed with some handsome guy for months.

⑮ perceive [pə'si:v] *vi./vt.* (perceived/perceived/perceiving)

to understand or think of something or someone in a particular way; to notice, see, or recognize something; If you perceive someone or something as doing or being a particular thing, it is your opinion that they do this thing or that they are that thing.

synonym detect; deem; regard
word family perceived; perceivable
related phrase perceive as; perceive to be

Example 1 Even as a young woman she had been perceived as a future chief executive.

Example 2 Children who do badly in school quizzes often perceive themselves to be failures.

⑯ surge [sɜ:dʒ] *n./vi.* (surged/surged/surging)

a sudden increase in amount or number; to suddenly move very quickly in a particular direction; If a feeling surges or surges up, you begin to feel it very strongly.

synonym boom; soar
antonym plunge; decrease; slump
word family surged; surging
related phrase surge out of; surge forward; a surge of

Example 1 The crowd surged through the porch almost in one minute.

Example 2 Specialists see various reasons for the recent surge in inflation.

⑰ sustain [sə'steɪn] *vt.* (sustained/sustained/sustaining)

to make something continue to exist or happen for a period of time; If food or drink sustains a person, animal, or plant, it makes them able to continue living; to suffer damage, an injury, or loss of money

synonym maintain; support; suffer
word family sustained; sustainable; sustainability
related phrase sustain losses; sustain economic growth

Example 1 To produce and sustain this growth, they must expend vast amounts of energy.

Example 2 Recovery can't be sustained unless more jobs are created.

⑱ **swell** [swel] ***vi./vt.*** **(swelled/swollen/swelling)**

to increase in amount or number; to become larger and rounder than normal—used especially about parts of the body

synonym	expand; increase
antonym	shrink; decrease; hack
word family	swelled; swelling
related phrase	swell up; swell with pride

Example 1 The crowd swelled to around 10,000 at the square.

Example 2 His bank balance has swelled by $222,000 in the last three weeks.

⑲ **flock** [flɒk] ***n./vi.*** **(flocked/flocked/flocking)**

If people flock to a place, they go there in large numbers because something interesting or exciting is happening there; A flock of birds, sheep, or goats is a group of them.

synonym	cluster; crowd; bunch
antonym	disperse; scatter
word family	flocked; flocking
related phrase	flock to do; flock together; sheep flock

Example 1 People have been flocking to the exhibition and behold the works.

Example 2 The criticisms will not stop people flocking to see the film.

⑳ **streamline** ['stri:mlaɪn] ***vt.*** **(streamlined/streamlined/streamlining)**

to make something such as a business, organization, etc. work more simply and effectively; to form something into a smooth shape, so that it moves easily through the air or water

synonym	retrench; simplify
antonym	complicate; perplex
word family	streamlined; streamlining
related phrase	streamline account; streamline process

Example 1 Guideline on the other hand attempts to streamline a particular process according to a set routine.

Example 2 Instead, see if there are things you can streamline, do more effectively.

㉑ **attain** [ə'teɪn] ***vi./vt.*** **(attained/attained/attaining)**

to succeed in achieving something after trying for a long time; to reach a particular level, age, size, etc.; If you attain something, you gain it or achieve it, often after a lot of effort.

synonym	acquire; gain; earn; get; achieve
antonym	lose; miss
word family	attainable; attainment

related phrase attain a high score; attain one's goal

Example 1 Whenever you have an aim, you must sacrifice something to attain it.

Example 2 The significance of man is not in what he attains, but rather in what he longs to attain.

22 **aggregate** ['ægrɪgət] ***n.***

the total after a lot of different figures or points have been added together; An aggregate amount or score is made up of several smaller amounts or scores added together.

synonym total; sum

word family aggregative; aggregation

related phrase in the aggregate; on aggregate

Example 1 The direct result of these scrambles is a credit crunch and a squeeze on aggregate demand that is forcing Europe into recession.

Example 2 It has two main components, neither of which is pleasant, but which are in the aggregate often highly effective.

23 **accrue** [ə'kruː] ***vi./vt.*** **(accrued/accrued/accruing)**

If money accrues or is accrued, it gradually increases over a period of time; If advantages accrue to you, you get those advantages over a period of time.

synonym acquire; breed; earn

word family accrued; accrual; accruement

related phrase accrue interest; accrue to

Example 1 You will see obvious ways to reduce the small daily expenses that many of us accrue.

Example 2 The big difference between traditional and cash-balance plans lies in the way workers accrue benefits and perks.

24 **commence** [kə'mens] ***vt.*** **(commenced/commenced/commencing)**

to begin or to start something; When something commences or you commence it, it begins.

synonym start; begin; initiate; launch

antonym stop; cease; quit; halt

word family commencement

related phrase commence business; commence doing

Example 1 The performances will commence in a minute in the gymnasium.

Example 2 Developing economies such as Mexico and Brazil would commence reductions around 2040–2045.

㉕ **anticipate** [æn'tɪsɪpeɪt] ***vt.*** **(anticipated/anticipated/anticipating)**

to expect that something will happen and be ready for it; to think about something that is going to happen, especially something pleasant; to do something before someone else; If you anticipate a question, request, or need, you do what is necessary or required before the question, request, or need occurs.

synonym	hope; presume
word family	anticipation; anticipator; anticipative
related phrase	anticipate doing sth.; anticipate problems/difficulties

Example 1 A good speaker is able to anticipate an audience's needs and concerns.

Example 2 It is anticipated that the research will have many different practical applications.

㉖ **disposable income**

the amount of money you have left to spend after you have paid your taxes, bills, etc.

synonym	spendable income
related phrase	disposable household income

Example 1 Within these countries, the poor will be especially vulnerable as they often spend as much as half their disposable income on food.

Example 2 Disposable income is defined as income left at institutional units' disposal for final consumption and saving.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

academy	administration	airway	antique	anxious
anytime	architecture	bay	billion	bound
bureau	commodity	cozy	cruise	decade
destination	digit	emerge	expenditure	explore
fantastic	festival	globe	gorgeous	halt
hence	heritage	ink	inland	integral
kilometer	kin	legitimate	liberate	lifestyle
millionaire	ministry	native	obstacle	opt
overseas	passport	precious	primary	prolong
rapid	reform	review	rural	sector
spike	statistic	sunset	tedious	trend
urban	visa	wealth	worldwide	

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Can you figure out the reasons for tourism booming?
2. What will the Chinese tourism be like in ten years based on the data from the text?

Chinese: The New Globe-travelers

China became the top tourist source market in the world and the outbound Chinese travelers have grown at double-digit percentage rates ever since 2012, according to the United Nations World Tourism Organization[1]. Thanks to relaxed visa restrictions, rising value of the currency *renminbi* and the advancement of mobile network, the boom in overseas travel is expected to expand further in the near future.

Since the turn of the century, there has been over an eightfold increase in the number of overseas trips made by Chinese travelers from 10 million who traveled to other countries in 2000. Many are so obsessed with the gorgeous natural landscape, fantastic artificial architecture as well as the precious heritages and antiques around the globe that they are anxious to explore all those mysteries in person. Hence, they've become part of the rapidly rising group of Chinese who are traveling abroad more frequently and independently.

China's outbound tourists reached 107 million in 2014 and the number is expected to cross 120 million in 2015, up 16 percent over the previous year, according to the China Tourism Academy[2]. "There is no doubt that 2015 will mark the fourth successive year of China as the world's top tourism source market," says Jiang Yiyi, director of the International Tourism Development Institute. Still, according to a recent forecast, outbound Chinese travelers could number around 174 million by 2019, spending about $264 billion annually. That's roughly equivalent to the GDP[3] of a developed country like Singapore.

Chinese overseas travelers make up a sizable group of consumers, perceived as the world's largest, most favorable spenders. Chinese spent $164.8 billion overseas in 2014—a fourfold spike over 2008, and about 88 percent was on shopping. About 400,000 Chinese spent around $833.7 million in Japan during the last National Day Golden Week. They spent about $8.9 billion in Japan during the first nine months in 2015, up 165 percent year-on-year. About four million Chinese arrived in Thailand in the first six months of 2015, a 110 percent increase over the same period in 2014. Spending surged 140 percent to $53.5 million. Weekends, festivals and anytime people are free are all superior chances for them to stay away from the tedious life. But the biggest spending surprise came from Australia, where Chinese spent $5.6 billion in the 12 months to September 2015. The expenditure number is so huge that it even exceeds the spending by the British, Americans and Canadians combined.

As more Chinese names make it onto the global rich list (the so-called millionaires), luxury tourism packages are proving more popular. "Schedules that offer rich, alien experiences are now popular with super-rich travelers, such as our Amazon River cruise." Utour's publicity manager Li adds that tours to the South and North Poles led by scientists and accompanied by professional photographers are also best-sellers. With the outbound travelers' rising numbers, airways and flight capacity have expanded accordingly.

"The major and primary reason for the growth consists in the policy changes that began in 1997 to allow Chinese to travel abroad at their own expenses, which liberate a high demand for overseas travel," says Jiang. "Since then, increased disposable income, prolonged national holidays, relaxed visa restrictions for Chinese travelers and the accruing value of the *renminbi* have all contributed to the explosion."

The starting point of Chinese outbound tourism is July 1, 1997, when China National Tourism Administration and the Ministry of Public Security[4] jointly inked an agreement on measures concerning the administration of outbound travel of Chinese citizens at their own expenses. Since the reform and opening-up policy in 1978, China dramatically spiked the number of private passports. In fact, before the policy, generally Chinese travelers needed official and legitimate reasons to leave the country. The two following decades showed a continuous growth of private passport holders due to an increase in outbound visits to friends and kins, as well as a growth of young Chinese studying abroad from the late 1980s. The 1990s has seen more Chinese going abroad at their own expenses. Today the processes to acquire passports and other pass certificates are further streamlined and more than two thirds of the private passport holders go abroad for tours.

On the other hand, China has swelling ranks of upper middle class and wealthy families with a monthly disposable income over 12,500 *yuan*. This group has seen their share in China expanding from 7 to 17 percent in the past five years and will continue to grow to 30 percent, or 100 million households, by 2020. Some have compared the current trend to when Japanese tourists began going abroad three decades ago. From the mid-1980s through to the 1990s, the number of Japanese heading overseas swelled from 4 million to 16 million, while at the same time the nation's personal GDP rose from $10,000 to $35,000. Before the 1980s, Japanese tourists liked to stay inland for holidays. But as they became richer all of a sudden they started to travel more to enjoy a cosier lifestyle. The same thing is happening in China, but at a much steeper rate.

Mobile network and apps have also helped to elevate China's outbound tourism boom. The rapid advancement in technology in recent years means even cheap mobile phones are now effectively portable computers, giving users instant access to real-time information on almost any topic. Ambitious travelers benefit most from this technological revolution—they can now book flights and hotels in an instant, use "digital wallets" to buy gifts, post reviews on the fly, and install apps that offer detailed maps and guides of distant places, all in their native language. Technological advances have been key, as the network has reduced travel costs and made alien destinations more viable for Chinese tourists. At least 50 percent of tourists arranged a holiday through a smart phone software in 2015, up 17 percent year-on-year.

During recent years, China's outbound travel market has grown rapidly partly due to another emerging reason concerning the poor air quality in major cities. Most people who prefer to overseas destinations like to enjoy good environment. Going to U.S. is easier now thanks to the relaxed visa policies. "It feels great there just to go around in the sunshine under the blue sky and enjoy the sunset along the bay," adds Jiang.

China's outbound tourism market is expected to sustain rapid growth this year thanks to several favorable elements at home and abroad. The number of outbound tourists is expected to exceed 130 million in 2016, up 10 percent over 2015.

China's reform, which aims to improve industrial efficiency and productivity and reduce

corporate costs through tax cuts and other measures, will produce new engines for economic growth, which is good news for outbound tourism. Efforts to ensure the orderly development of the sector will continue, as China considers tourism an integral part of social harmony. As President Xi has pointed out, tourism is seen as an important reflection of the standard of living, while outbound tourism holds a special charm for the Chinese public.

Developed economies are paying more attention to the role of inbound tourism in enhancing local economies and employment. Hence, neighboring, medium-distance and long-distance destinations will continue to compete for Chinese tourists. The relaxed visa policies and improved Chinese language services that nations have been introduced in recent years are proof of that. The exchange rate for China's currency, the *renminbi*, is likely to maintain a downward trend this year, but the range won't be too wide or halt speed in China's outbound tourism. China has held plans to launch major tourism programs with South Korea, India and countries in Central and Eastern Europe.

In its 2014 report on the impact of tourism on the global economy, the World Travel and Tourism Council[5] headquartered in London said visa policy restrictions were one of the main obstacles to tourism market growth. To prove the point, visits by Chinese have swelled in countries that have released visas, streamlined application procedures or cut processing costs. Chinese visitors to South Korea's Jeju Island surged by 58 percent year-on-year to nearly 2.9 million in 2014 after the authorities there commenced to allow 30-day visa-free stays. The flow of Chinese tourists will therefore likely grow thanks to further relaxed visa policies this year. More outbound tourists are likely to emerge from China's central and western regions, especially from second- or third-tier cities and rural areas.

According to forecasts by the Ministry of Transportation, the country was to have 42 high-speed railways in operation by the end of 2015, stretching an aggregate of 20,000 kilometers. The rapid development of high-speed rail will give people from once-isolated areas easy access to large cities, which will greatly enlarge the source of outbound Chinese tourists.

Urbanization will also continue to activate growth in tourism consumption. Data from the National Bureau of Statistics suggested the urbanization rate would attain 58 percent in 2015. Small and medium-sized cities and rural areas are already warming to the outbound tourism market. Meanwhile, retail consumption will likely flock back to China in 2016. Chinese are anticipated to buy more in their home town outlets as more foreign commodities become available, while there is also room to cut prices and improve after-sales service.

(Adapted from http: //www. chinadaily. com. cn/travel/2016chinaoutbound/?id=wjt18)

Notes

① The United Nations World Tourism Organization

UNWTO is the United Nations agency responsible for the promotion of responsible, sustainable and universally accessible tourism. It is the leading international organization in the field of tourism, which promotes tourism as a driver of economic growth, inclusive development and environmental sustainability and offers leadership and support to the sector in advancing knowledge and tourism policies worldwide.

② **China Tourism Academy**

CTA is a Beijing-based research institution with a focus on studies in tourism industry. Under the Document *No. [2007] 98* released by the State Commission for Public Sector Reform, it was established in 2008, directly under the China National Tourism Administration.

③ **GDP**

(Gross Domestic Product) It is a monetary measure of the market value of all final goods and services produced in a period (quarterly or yearly). GDP estimates are commonly used to determine the economic performance of a whole country or region, and to make international comparisons.

④ **Ministry of Public Security**

MPS is the principal police and security authority of the People's Republic of China and the government agency that is ultimately responsible for day-to-day law enforcement. It is headed by the Minister of Public Security.

⑤ **World Travel and Tourism Council**

WTTC is a forum for the travel and tourism industry. It is made up of members from the global business community and works with governments to raise awareness about the travel and tourism industry. It is known for being the only forum to represent the private sector in all parts of the industry worldwide. Its activities include research on the economic and social impact of the industry and its organization focused on issues and developments relevant to the industry.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. (   ) The boom of Chinese overseas tourism will still expand in the future.
2. (   ) The tourist number to China is expected to cross 120 million in 2015.
3. (   ) Chinese tourist expense is roughly equivalent to the GDP of a country like Thailand.
4. (   ) Anytime people are free are all chances for Chinese people to travel abroad.
5. (   ) Due to the rising number of travelers, airways and flight capacity have expanded a lot.
6. (   ) The starting point of Chinese outbound tourism is after the reform and opening-up policy.
7. (   ) The processes to acquire passports and other pass certificates are so complicated that many people find it hard to travel abroad in 2015.
8. (   ) The technology contributes a lot to overseas tourism.
9. (   ) Tourism is an important reflection of the standard of living nowadays.
10. (   ) Small and medium-sized cities and rural areas are difficult to expand tourism.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

For example:

Topic: Booming Outbound Tourism

Reasons: 1. ... 2. ... 3. ... 4. ... 5. ... 6. ...

Prospect:

Your perspective:

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

Subvocal reading, or silent speech, is the internal speech typically made when reading; it provides the sound of the word as it is read. This is a natural process when reading and it helps the mind to access meanings to comprehend and remember what is read, potentially reducing cognitive load and improve the reading speed. This inner speech is characterized by minute movements in the larynx and other muscles involved in the articulation of speech. Most of these movements are undetectable (without the aid of machines) by the person who is reading.

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. Thanks to relaxed ________ restrictions, rising value of the ________ *renminbi* and the ________ of mobile network, the ________ in overseas travel is expected to ________ further in the near future.
2. Many are so ________ with the ________ natural landscape, ________ artificial architecture as well as the precious ________ and antiques around the ________ that they are anxious to ________ all those mysteries ________ person.
3. The major and ________ reason for the growth ________ in the policy changes that began in 1997 to allow Chinese to travel abroad ________ their own ________, which ________ a high demand for ________ travel.
4. The starting point of Chinese outbound tourism is July 1, 1997, when China National Tourism ________ and the ________ of Public Security jointly ________ an agreement ________ measures concerning the administration of ________ travel of Chinese citizens at their own expenses.
5. The two following ________ showed a ________ growth of private ________ holders due to ________ increase in outbound visits to friends and ________, as well as a growth of young Chinese studying abroad from the late 1980s.

6. Today the processes to ________ passports and other pass ________ are further ________ and more than two thirds of the private passport holders go ________ for tours.
7. Before ________ 1980s, Japanese tourists liked to stay ________ for holidays. But as they became richer all ________ a sudden they started to travel more to enjoy a ________ lifestyle.
8. The ________ advancement in technology in recent years means even cheap ________ phones are now effectively ________ computers, giving users instant access ________ real-time information ________ almost any topic.
9. China's outbound tourism market is expected to ________ rapid growth this year thanks to several ________ elements at home and ________. The number of outbound tourists is expected to ________ 130 million in 2016, ________ 10 percent over 2015.
10. The ________ rate for China's currency, the *renminbi*, is likely to ________ a downward ________ this year, but the range won't be too wide or ________ speed in China's outbound tourism. China has held plans to ________ major tourism programs with South Korea, India and countries in Central and Eastern Europe.

VI. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VII. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

expansion	exceed	streamline	acquire	portable
enhance	launch	perceive	sustain	

VIII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. The general misread the enemy's intentions, and didn't <u>anticipate</u> the attack. (　　)

   A. hope　　B. expect　　C. analyze　　D. regard

2. This is perhaps one of the product's most useful features, ensuring that users are informed of what is happening at every step of the application <u>launch</u> procedure. (　　)

   A. start　　B. expel　　C. found　　D. shut

3. This <u>surge</u> of stock market wealth has meant that executive pay is racing well ahead of economic growth. (　　)

   A. decrease　　B. reduce　　C. boom　　D. emerge

4. Ben holds dear an <u>ambitious</u> goal to retire at the age of 55, but there is nothing concrete that he does in order to succeed. (　　)

   A. small　　B. realistic　　C. positive　　D. aggressive

5. If you ask energy firms what their biggest <u>obstacle</u> will be in 2009, most point to their reduced

access to capital. (　　)

A. challenge　　B. difficulty　　C. standard　　D. objective

6. They encountered untold difficulties and dangers before they reached their destination and realized their dream. (　　)

A. benefit　　B. goal　　C. place　　D. sector

7. Some jobs are pretty tedious—there's no way round that. Whatever you're doing, though, you're helping someone. (　　)

A. meaningful　　B. wonderful　　C. boring　　D. gorgeous

8. It's ironic that this country which has such a traditional culture and superior qualities in culture now has reduced itself to this. (　　)

A. serial　　B. excellent　　C. general　　D. digital

9. Whether or not to enforce positive financial policy is a controversial issue. (　　)

A. perform　　B. delete　　C. force　　D. produce

10. That change may not come in 2010, but streaming news elements will become an integral part of traditional news sources. (　　)

A. single　　B. isolated　　C. complete　　D. similar

IX. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in the blanks with Chinese meanings or proper words based on the English roots and Chinese meanings in the brackets as well as the compound word knowledge.

1. bound (________) —________（入境的）—________（出境的）
2. tier (________) —________（一线城市）
3. digit (________) —________（两位数）
4. fold (________) —________（八倍的）
5. visa (________) —________（免签）
6. isolate (________) —________（偏僻的）
7. explore (________) —________（探索者）
8. wealth (________) —________（富裕的）
9. million (________) —________（百万富翁）
10. urban (________) —________（城市化）

X. Word Puzzle

Directions: Fill in the blanks with words of opposite meanings.

1. rural—________　　2. inbound—________
3. domestic—________　　4. interesting—________
5. native—________　　6. sunrise—________
7. slow—________

Directions: Fill in the blanks with words of similar meanings.

8. surpass—________ 9. stop—________

10. choose—________ 11. free—________

12. increase—________ 13. gain—________

14. expect—________ 15. boom—________

16. valued—________ 17. appear—________

XI. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. China became the top tourist source market in the world and the outbound Chinese travelers have grown at double-digit percentage rates ever since 2012 ...
2. China's outbound tourists reached 107 million in 2014 and the number is expected to cross 120 million in 2015, up 16 percent over the previous year ...
3. Chinese overseas travelers make up a sizable group of consumers, perceived as the world's largest, most favorable spenders.
4. The major and primary reason for the growth consists in the policy changes that began in 1997 to allow Chinese to travel abroad at their own expenses, which liberate a high demand for overseas travel ...
5. The 1990s has seen more Chinese going abroad at their own expenses. Today the processes to acquire passports and other pass certificates are further streamlined and more than two thirds of the private passport holders go abroad for tours.

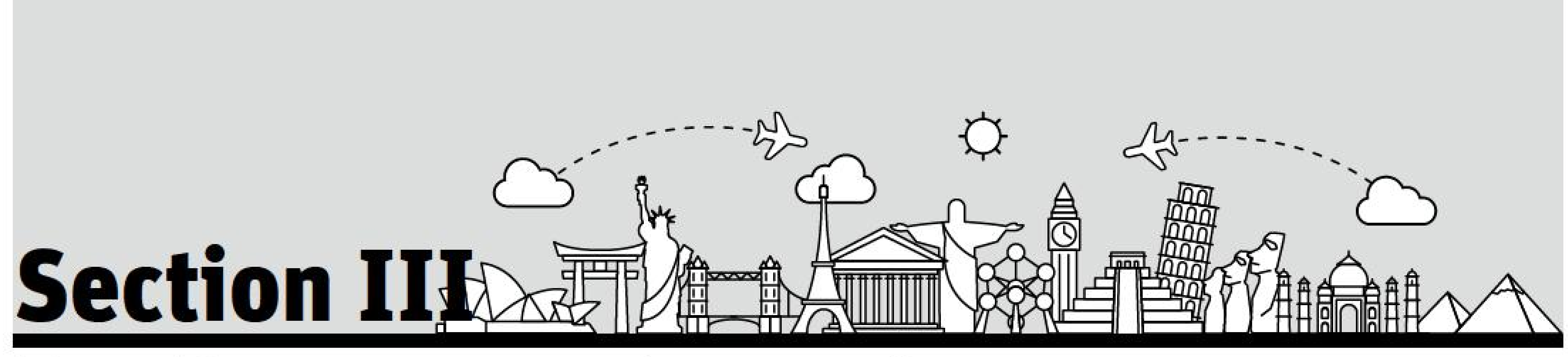
XII. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. rose daffodil petal daisy lily （ ） ____________
2. costume teddy shorts pants blouse underwear brassiere stocking （ ） ____________
3. chancellor chauffeur chef chemistry constable barrister （ ） ____________
4. ankle chin knuckle ass liver agony belly bowel appendix （ ） ____________
5. amber diamond pearl ruby gem （ ） ____________



Section III

Text B: Great Barrier Reef

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **await** [ə'weɪt] ***vt.*** **(awaited/awaited/awaiting)**

to look forward to the probable occurrence of; If you await someone or something, you wait for them; something that awaits you is going to happen or come to you in the future.

synonym expect; wait for

word family awaited; awaiting

related phrase await publication; await delivery

Example 1 Very little was said as we awaited the arrival of the chairman.

Example 2 We eagerly await your early arrival.

② **biological** [ˌbaɪə'lɒdʒɪk(ə)l] ***adj.***

pertaining to biology or to life and living things; of parents and children; related by blood

synonym genetic; natural

antonym adoptive

word family biology; biologist; biologically

related phrase biological clock; the biological sciences

Example 1 Biological warfare is terrible.

Example 2 Biological ways will be revered as ideal ways.

③ **bleach** [bliːtʃ] ***n./vt.*** **(bleached/bleached/bleaching)**

(cause to) become white or pale, especially by means of chemicals or by the action of sunlight; If you bleach something, you use a chemical to make it white or pale in color; If the sun bleaches something, or something bleaches, its color gets paler until it is almost white.

synonym decolorize; discolor; fade

word family bleacher

related phrase bleach out; bleaching powder; chlorine bleach

Example 1 You should bleach your face properly before you paint your face.

Example 2 There were only a few dry bones left, bleached by the sun.

④ **charter** ['tʃɑːtə] ***n./vt.*** **(charted/charted/charting)**

to give a charter (a signed statement from a ruler, government) to; If a person or organization charters a plane, boat, or other vehicle, they rent it for their own use; A charter is a formal document describing the rights, aims, or principles of an organization or group of people.

synonym hire; lease

word family charters; charterer

related phrase corporate charter; chartered accountant

Example 1 He chartered a jet to fly her home from California to Switzerland.

Example 2 The magistrate chartered him to do business in the metropolitan city.

⑤ **comprise** [kəm'praɪz] ***vt.*** **(comprised/comprised/comprising)**

(of parts) to form; If you say that something comprises or is comprised of a number of things or people, you mean it has them as its parts or members.

synonym consist; include

word family comprised; comprising

related phrase be comprised of

Example 1 The task force is comprised of congressional leaders, cabinet heads and administration officials.

Example 2 Fifty states comprise the United States.

⑥ **creature** ['kriːtʃə] ***n.***

a living organism characterized by voluntary movement

synonym animal; beast; brute; living being

word family create; creator; creative

related phrase living creature; a creature of habit

Example 1 This creature lives in the depth of the ocean.

Example 2 Pandas are precious creatures.

⑦ **crusty** ['krʌstɪ] ***adj.***

having a hardened crust as a covering; Crusty bread has a hard, crisp outside.

synonym crispy

word family crust; crustal

related phrase crusty bread; crusty structure

Example 1 Crusty whole wheat bread is my favorite.

Example 2 Little Tom swabbed up the gravy with crusty bread.

⑧ **diverse** [daɪ'vɜːs] ***adj.***

of different kinds; If a group of things is diverse, it is made up of a wide variety of things.

synonym varied; different; various

antonym same; similar

word family diversity; diversify; diverseness

related phrase diverse society; diverse opinion

Example 1 They are the people from diverse cultures.

Example 2 Her interests are very diverse.

⑨ **encounter** [ɪn'kaʊntə] ***vi./vt.*** **(encountered/encountered/encountering)**

to meet unexpectedly; If you encounter problems or difficulties, you experience them; If you encounter someone, you meet them, usually unexpectedly.

synonym meet; confront

word family encountered; encountering

related phrase encounter with; encounter danger

Example 1 Every day of our lives we encounter major and minor stresses of one kind or another.

Example 2 Did you encounter anyone in the building?

⑩ **expel** [ɪk'spel] ***vt.*** **(expelled/expelled/expelling)**

to send away by force; to force to leave; If someone is expelled from a school or organization, they are officially told to leave because they have behaved badly.

synonym exile; dismiss; remove; eliminate

antonym accept; hire; admit

word family expellable; expeller; expellee

related phrase expel from; expel air

Example 1 They were told that they should expel the refugees from the refuges and slums.

Example 2 As the lungs expel this waste, gas is expelled into the atmosphere.

⑪ **infinite** ['ɪnfɪnət] ***adj.***

without limits or end; not finite; If you describe something as infinite, you are emphasizing that it is extremely great in amount or degree; Something that is infinite has no limit, end, or edge.

synonym limitless; unlimited

antonym small; finite; little

related phrase infinite space; infinite sequence

Example 1 Teaching little children takes infinite patience.

Example 2 The totality of space could be infinite.

⑫ **magnificent** [mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt] ***adj.***

characterized by grandeur; wonderfully fine, etc.; If you say that something or someone is magnificent, you mean that you think they are extremely good, beautiful, or impressive.

synonym	grand; generous; glorious; splendid; wonderful
antonym	simple; plain
word family	magnify; magnification; magnifier
related phrase	magnificent performance

Example 1 The magnificent and immaculate sights collect a jolly crowd.

Example 2 Just look at this magnificent autumn landscape!

⑬ **migration** [maɪ'greɪʃ(ə)n] ***n.***

the movement of persons from one country or locality to another

synonym	resettlement; relocation
word family	migrate; emigration; immigration
related phrase	migration movement

Example 1 There was a huge migration of people into Europe because of the war.

Example 2 You can proceed with the migration page by page by repeating this step, if you wish.

⑭ **outstanding** [aʊt'stændɪŋ] ***adj.***

distinguished from others in excellence; If you describe someone or something as outstanding, you think that they are very remarkable and impressive.

synonym	excellent; remarkable
antonym	ordinary; common
word family	outstandingly; outstand
related phrase	be outstanding in; outstanding performance; outstanding question

Example 1 He was an outstanding student.

Example 2 A good deal of work is still outstanding.

⑮ **preserve** [prɪ'zɜːv] ***vt.*** **(preserved/preserved/preserving)**

to keep safe from harm or danger; If you preserve a situation or condition, you make sure that it remains as it is, and does not change or end; If you preserve something, you take action to save it or protect it from damage or decay.

synonym	reserve; maintain; keep; sustain
word family	preserver; preservable; preservability
related phrase	preserve from; preserved egg; preserved meat

Example 1 We need to preserve the forest.

Example 2 I tried to preserve my independence.

⑯ shallow ['ʃæləʊ] *adj.*

not deep; lacking deep or serious thinking; superficial; A shallow container, hole, or area of water measures only a short distance from the top to the bottom.

synonym superficial; light

antonym deep; profound

word family shallowness; shallowly

related phrase shallow sea; a shallow argument

Example 1 This shallow ford made it possible for us to cross the river.

Example 2 That dish is too shallow to serve soup in.

⑰ span [spæn] *n./vi.* (spanned/spanned/spanning)

a stretch between two things, especially in time; period; If something spans a long period of time, it lasts throughout that period of time or relates to that whole period of time; A bridge or other structure that spans something such as a river or a valley stretches right across it.

synonym distance; breadth; length

word family spanned; spanning

related phrase life span; span of control

Example 1 The bridge has a span of 100 meters.

Example 2 His professional career spanned 16 years.

⑱ spectacular [spek'tækjʊlə] *adj./n.*

unusually interesting or grand; attracting excited notice; something that is spectacular is very impressive or dramatic; A spectacular is a show or performance which is very grand and impressive.

synonym imposing; wonderful; tremendous; incredible

word family spectacularly; spectacularity

related phrase spectacular sign; spectacular scenery

Example 1 We watched a spectacular sunset at the beach.

Example 2 The view from the top of the tower was spectacular.

⑲ stunning [stʌnɪŋ] *adj.*

commanding attention; causing great astonishment and consternation; A stunning event is extremely unusual or unexpected.

synonym gorgeous; attractive

word family stun; stunningly

related phrase stunning lighting; stunning view

Example 1 The newspapers had fallen into a stunning silence.

Example 2 The President's final decision came with stunning suddenness.

⑳ **tropical** ['trɒpɪk(ə)l] ***adj.***

coming from or found in the tropics; very hot; belonging to or typical of the tropics; Tropical weather is hot and damp weather typical of the tropics.

synonym	hot; intertropical; subsolar
antonym	arctic; temperate
word family	tropic; tropics; tropically
related phrase	tropical fruit; tropical climate

Example 1 Her motherland is in the tropical region.

Example 2 These tropical flowers have bright colors.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

algae	calf	centimeter	cod	coral
crocodile	dwarf	ecosystem	ferry	fox
helmet	majesty	marine	microscope	minke
paradise	playground	prey	rainbow	reef
whale	wildlife			

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Have you ever been to any scenic spots? Which tourist destination impresses you most? Why?
2. Do you know how to introduce some famous places? Try to introduce one to your partners by illustrating its key characteristics.

Great Barrier Reef[1]

Take a step back and smile as the Great Barrier Reef takes your breath away. With stunning coral reefs[2], colorful marine life and a rainbow of blue water as far as the eye can see, it's a once in a lifetime experience not to be missed. You should experience the greatest reef on earth first hand.

Covering over 344,000 square kilometers (roughly the same size as Japan or Germany), the sheer size and majesty of the reef resulted in it being one of the original eight wonders of the world and the first coral reef to be awarded World Heritage status. The Great Barrier Reef stretches over 2,300 kilometers from Tropical North Queensland in the north, right down to Bundaberg in the south.

The World's Largest and Most Extensive Coral Reef System

The Great Barrier Reef is the largest and most extensive coral reef system in the world comprising about 2,900 individual coral reefs, 600 continental islands and 300 coral reefs. It represents approximately 10% of all coral reefs in the world. The Great Barrier Reef spans two thirds

of the northeastern sea line of Australia extending north from Bundaberg on Queensland's coast, the northern tip of Australia. It is 2,300 kilometers long and approximately 350,000 km^2 in size. That's about 70 million football fields or the size of Japan! It is the largest natural feature on earth and its impressive size makes it the only living structure that can be seen from the moon.

World Class, World Heritage

The Great Barrier Reef is recognized internationally as one of the world's greatest natural wonders. Its outstanding natural significance was recognized in 1981 when it became the first coral reef system in the world to be awarded World Heritage status. It is the world's third largest World Heritage Area. The Great Barrier Reef meets all four of the natural criteria for World Heritage listing, one of only a handful of natural areas on earth to do so. Over 99% of the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area is protected within the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park[3] and about 50% of its islands are protected by National Park status. This ensures the coral reef system and its citizens are protected effectively and preserved for future generations to enjoy. The Great Barrier Reef is famous as one of the world's healthiest reef systems. This is due in part to new management and its status as a protected area.

A Rich Underwater World

The Great Barrier Reef is home to more than 30 species of whales, 1,625 species of fish, 411 species of hard coral and over 150 species of soft coral (equals to 10% of the world's soft coral), together with giant clams over 120 years old and millions of nesting seabirds. Crocodiles are the marine "dinosaurs" of the Reef. Crocodiles have been on the Reef for 200 million years!

These are the symbolic marine animals of the Great Barrier Reef that you have to see: whales, clownfish, giant clam, manta rays[4] and cod. Other spectacular wildlife that can be seen on some of the islands of the Great Barrier Reef includes a range of birds like waders and birds of prey, some traveling great distances to nest there. Flying foxes can also be found. Spectacular annual events like the northern whale migration and nesting can be experienced.

Marine Life

The Great Barrier Reef is one of the richest and most diverse ecosystems in the world. It has a stunning range of marine-life that can be found nowhere else on the planet. There are 2,900 separate coral reefs, making it the largest living being in the world and is home to over 300 types of hard and soft coral, and 1,500 species of fish. A visit to the Great Barrier Reef wouldn't be complete without experiencing these five marine encounters:

- Clownfish—One of the symbols of the Great Barrier Reef and a common and colorful sight, they hide away from any potential hunters.
- Giant clams—Growing up to 1.5 m in length and weighing up to 250 kg, they eat algae. Crusty on the outside, soft and colorful on the inside, they are found everywhere on the Great Barrier Reef.
- Manta rays—The largest of all rays with a wing span of up to seven meters. Lady Elliot Island is one of the hot spots during winter to see these graceful and magnificent creatures.
- Potato cods—Always taking the time to say hello and hang out for a while, they come right up close, their wide mouths constantly opening and closing as if they were trying to have a chat.

- Whales—The Great Barrier Reef is the ultimate nursery playground for whales and their calves, making an appearance each year from June to September. Their smaller cousins, the Dwarf Minke Whales[5], also pass through Tropical North Queensland at the same time and exclusively in Tropical North Queensland, you can swim with the Dwarf Minke Whales.

Accessing the Reef

Stretching over 2,300 km along the Queensland sea line, the Great Barrier Reef is a World Heritage playground waiting to be explored. The Great Barrier Reef is easily accessible from various access points. With five distinctive districts, each offering a unique set of experiences, there is a spectacular adventure waiting for you to discover.

- The Wild North—A marine desert experience that is complete and remote. For fearless marine adventures from plentiful fishing, exploring untouched coral reefs and meeting native locals.
- Port Douglas District—Where world heritage rainforest and reef meet. Take an adventure in nature and dive with Minke Whales, go helmet diving or game fishing.
- Townsville District—Surround yourself in history and learn with historic ship wrecks and complete islands.
- Whitsundays and Mackay District—Explore stylish islands and go on a sailing adventure in the area.
- Southern Great Barrier Reef District—Experience the beauty of an uncrowded escape, explore unhurried coastal towns.

The reef is easily accessed from all of these districts, with Great Barrier Reef tours, ferries to islands, cruises to the outer reef and other transport options available. The most popular way to experience the Great Barrier Reef is by boat. Diving, sailing, bare boating, cruise shipping and journey cruising are just some of the world-class water-based activities on offer. A range of "above water" activities are also available for visitors to experience the Great Barrier Reef without getting wet. These include air-based activities such as aircraft and helicopter scenic flights over coral reefs and islands or coral viewing from glass bottom boats. Other great activities of the Great Barrier Reef can be experienced on one of its 600 islands where visitors can stay at a tropical island resort, camp on a deserted island, take in spectacular views, meet the wildlife or simply take part in beach activities.

Coral Reef Facts

The Great Barrier Reef provides divers with a display of color, shape and movement that is reproduced nowhere else in the world. Here are five facts to help you understand our underwater world better.

- More than 400 (or one-third) of the world's coral species can be found in the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area. Believed to be about 8,000 years old, the thin layer of living coral has built up on top of dead corals and algae over the past 500,000 years.
- Hard coral grows up to 1.5 cm per year and is the backbone of the reef, growing and constantly adapting to the demands of the environment around it. It will be divided into two and leave behind its hard outer skeleton when a new one is formed. The reef's alien

coral structures provide a permanent home for a wide range of creatures including an infinite of fish, and micro-beings such as algae.

- Most soft coral species have a dependent relationship with microscopic single-celled algae that live inside their tissues, transferring food to the host coral. This very important relationship depends on clear warm shallow waters with temperatures of above 18℃. Dramatic temperature variations can result in the coral expelling the algae, resulting in coral death or coral bleaching.
- Apart from climate change and human impact, the reef's worst natural hunter is the Crown-of-Thorns Starfish[6]. While this species is unknown for stripping reefs of nearly all living coral, fortunately new corals are generally able to re-grow after an outbreak.
- Home to a quarter of all known seaweed species, the reef's 500 seaweed and algae species are a significant contribution to the preservation and biological diversity of the reef. They also provide feeding grounds for a number of creatures and form important home for them.

Adventure awaits! Get on a boat and sail! Charter a journey through paradise!

(Adapted from https: //www. queensland. com/en-au/explore-queensland/great-barrier-reef)

Notes

① Great Barrier Reef

One of Australia's most remarkable natural gifts, the Great Barrier Reef is blessed with the breathtaking beauty of the world's largest coral reef. The reef contains an abundance of marine life and comprises of over 3,000 individual reef systems and coral cays and literally hundreds of picturesque tropical islands with some of the world's most beautiful sun-soaked, golden beaches. Because of its natural beauty, the Great Barrier Reef has become one of the world's most sought after tourist destinations. The Great Barrier Reef is one of the eight wonders of the natural world, and pulling away from it, and viewing it from a greater distance, you can understand why. It is larger than the Great Wall of China and the only living thing on earth visible from space.

② Coral reefs

Coral reefs are diverse underwater ecosystems held together by calcium carbonate structures secreted by corals. Coral reefs are built by colonies of tiny animals found in marine waters that contain few nutrients. Most coral reefs are built from stony corals, which in turn consist of polyps that cluster in groups. The polyps belong to a group of animals known as Cnidaria, which also includes sea anemones and jellyfish. Unlike sea anemones, corals secrete hard carbonate exoskeletons which support and protect the coral polyps. Most reefs grow best in warm, shallow, clear, sunny and agitated waters.

③ Marine Park

A marine park is a park consisting of an area of sea (or lake) sometimes protected for recreational use, but more often set aside to preserve a specific habitat and ensure the ecosystem is sustained for the organisms that exist there. Most marine parks are designated by governments, and organized like "watery" national parks. The largest marine park used to be

the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park in Australia, at 350,000 km^2 until 2010, when the United Kingdom announced the opening of the Chagos Marine Park or Chagos Archipelago. These can range from glass-bottomed boats and small submarines, to windowed undersea tubes.

④ Manta rays

Manta rays are large rays belonging to the genus Manta. The larger species, M. birostris, reaches 7 m in width while the smaller, M. alfredi, reaches 5.5 m. Both have triangular pectoral fins, horn-shaped cephalic fins and large, forward-facing mouths. Like whales, they breach, for unknown reasons. Both species are listed as vulnerable by the International Union for Conservation of Nature.

⑤ Minke Whales

Minke Whale is a type of baleen whale. The two species of Minke Whale are the common (or northern) Minke Whale and the Antarctic (or southern) Minke Whale. Minke Whales typically live for 30 to 50 years; in some cases they may live for up to 60 years. The maximum swimming speed of minkes has been estimated at 38 km/h (24 mph).

⑥ Crown-of-Thorns Starfish

The Crown-of-Thorns Starfish is a large, multiple-armed starfish that usually preys upon hard, or stony, coral polyps. The Crown-of-Thorns Starfish receives its name from venomous thorn-like spines that cover its upper surface, resembling the biblical crown of thorns. It is one of the largest starfish in the world. A planci has a very wide Indo-Pacific distribution. It is perhaps most common in Australia, but can occur at tropical and subtropical latitudes from the Red Sea and the east African coast across the Indian Ocean, and across the Pacific Ocean to the west coast of Central America.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. (　　) The Great Barrier Beef is one of the original seven wonders of the world and the first coral reef to be awarded World Heritage status.
2. (　　) It is the largest natural feature on earth and its impressive size makes it one of the living structures that can be seen from the moon.
3. (　　) The Great Barrier Reef meets all four of the natural criteria for World Heritage listing, one of only a handful of natural areas on earth to do so.
4. (　　) Crocodiles are the marine “dinosaurs” of the Reef. Crocodiles have been on the Reef for 100 million years!
5. (　　) A range of “above water” activities are also available for visitors to experience the Great Barrier Reef without getting wet.

6. ( ) Great Barrier Reef provides divers with a display of color, shape and movement that is reproduced somewhere else in the world.
7. ( ) Giant clams grow up to 2 m in length and weighing up to 255 kg, who eat algae.
8. ( ) Stretching over 2,300 km along the Queensland sea line, the Great Barrier Reef is a World Heritage playground waiting to be explored.
9. ( ) Port Douglas District is a place where you can learn with historic ship wrecks and complete islands.
10. ( ) Believed to be about 8,000 years old, the thin layer of living coral has built up on top of dead corals and algae over the past 500,000 years.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. With ________ coral reefs, colorful ________ life and a rainbow of blue water as ________ as the eye can see, it's a ________ in a lifetime experience not to be ________.
2. Its ________ natural significance was recognized in 1981 ________ it became the first ________ reef system in the world to be ________ World ________ status.
3. Other ________ wildlife that can be seen ________ some of the islands of the Great Barrier Reef includes a range of birds like ________ and birds of ________, some traveling great distances to ________ there.
4. The reef is easily ________ from all of these ________, with Great Barrier Reef tours, ________ to islands, ________ to the outer reef and other ________ options available.
5. Other great activities of the Great Barrier Reef can be ________ on one of its 600 islands where visitors can stay at a ________ island resort, camp on a ________ island, take in ________ views, meet the ________ or simply take part in ________ activities.

VI. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VII. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

span	bleach	await	comprise	infinite
shallow	charter	expel	encounter	stunning

VIII. Word Formation

Directions: Write the appropriate form of the given words according to the context.

1. Because of this and other differences in the two versions, we recommend that you test the maps after ________ (migrate).
2. The refugees were ________ (await) their entry permits into the United States.
3. It's relatively clean and ________ (crowded), and a good choice for most visitors to India.
4. You're like a single cell in the larger body of humanity, which ________ (comprise) of billions of other people—cells.
5. Ultimately, we chose six system analysts with ________ (diverse) levels of experience.
6. They were fighting in order ________ (preserve) their independence.
7. He could not help having compassion for the poor ________ (creature).
8. After the fire, nothing remained of the ________ (magnificent) buildings of the temple.
9. Of course, Mary ________ (encounter) problems, as she would with any product.
10. So the prince told her the whole story, and of the impossible task given him by the ________ (crocodile).

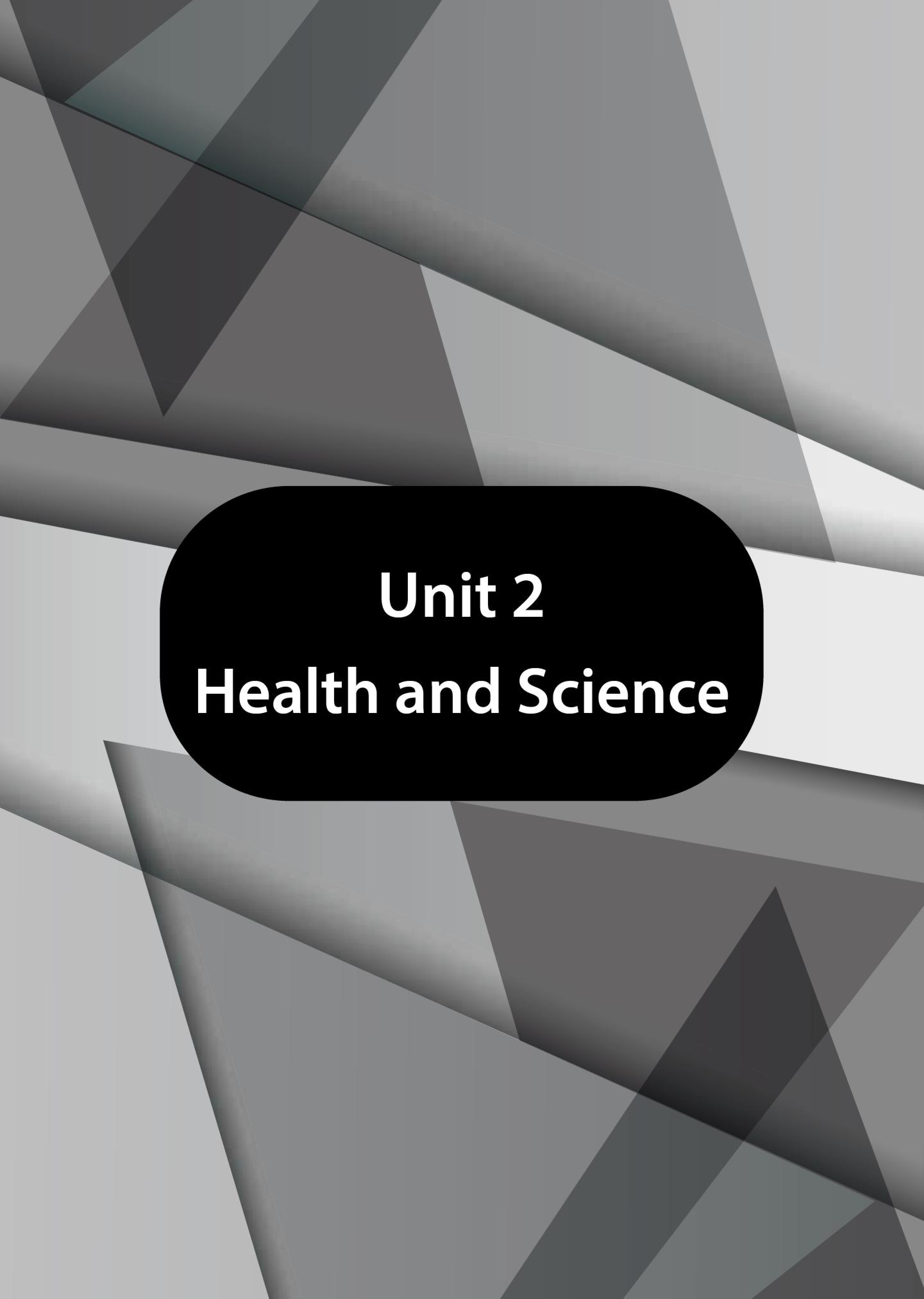
IX. Translation

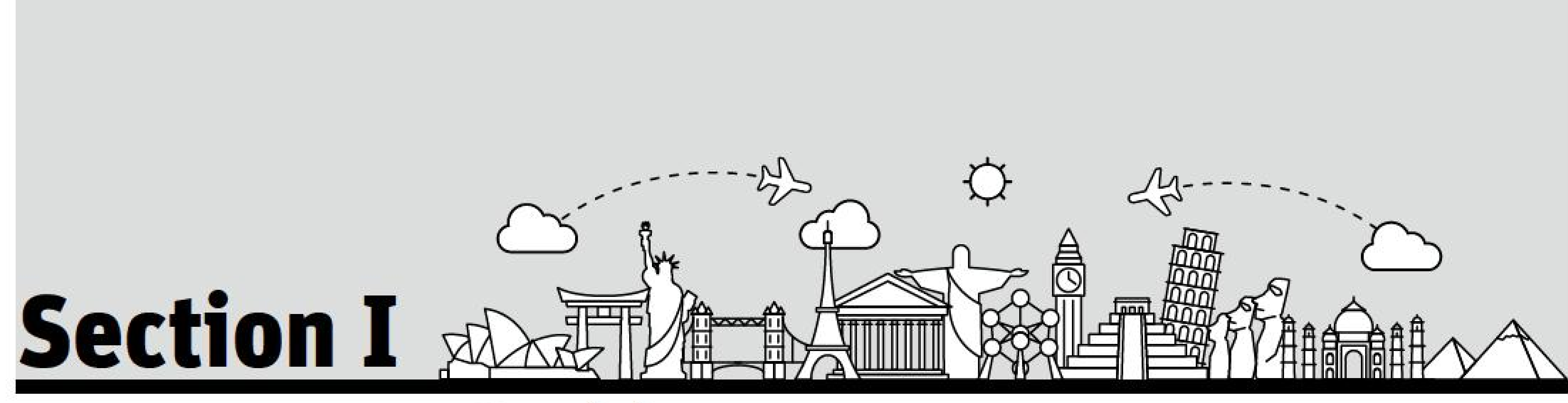
Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Its outstanding natural significance was recognized in 1981 when it became the first coral reef system in the world to be awarded World Heritage status.
2. The Great Barrier Reef is one of the richest and most diverse ecosystems in the world. It has a stunning range of marine-life that can be found nowhere else on the planet.
3. ... visitors can stay at a tropical island resort, camp on a deserted island, take in spectacular views, meet the wildlife or simply take part in beach activities.
4. Dramatic temperature variations can result in the coral expelling the algae, resulting in coral death or coral bleaching.
5. Home to a quarter of all known seaweed species, the reef's 500 seaweed and algae species are a significant contribution to the preservation and biological diversity of the reef.

X. Composition

Directions: Introduce one of the most fascinating places that you have traveled to your pen pals. Please write at least 120 words.


Unit 2
Health and Science



Section I

Focus on Prefix (I)

How Roots, Prefixes and Suffixes Build Words

Most English words are made up of smaller elements: roots, prefixes and suffixes. When you meet a new word in your reading process, you can guess the new word by the prefix and suffix because: affixation is generally defined as the formation of words by adding word-forming or derivational affixes to bases. This process is also known as derivation, by which new words are derived from old or base forms. The words created in this way are called derivatives. According to the positions affixes occupy in words, affixation falls into two subcategories: prefix and suffix. When you know the common ones and how to combine them, you can understand hundreds of different words. The majority of academic vocabulary (and a lot of everyday English) uses Latin roots and affixes (prefixes and suffixes). They are especially useful if you want to study at a university in an English-speaking country or to work with English-speaking colleagues (fellow professionals or business associates).

Think about the Latin root *scrib/script*, which means to write. When you add prefixes and suffixes to the root, you can create many new words that all have something to do with writing, such as subscriber, scripture, inscribed, description, postscript, prescription, scribbling and unscripted. It's like an 8-for-1 deal: you learn one Latin root, and you get eight words in return. And when you come across a less familiar word like scriptorium, you can recognize the root *script*, which in turn gives you a head start on understanding the word's meaning and spelling.

From this unit, we are going to learn prefix.

What Is Prefix?

A prefix is a word part added to the beginning of a word to create a new word with a different meaning. Examples: **re**fill, **un**do, **in**complete, **pre**cooked. Usually you can predict the meanings of words based on the prefix knowledge and the roots.

Think about the word happy. The prefix *un* placed in front of the word happy makes a new word with a new meaning—unhappy. The prefix *un* means not, so it changes the meaning of the word happy to not happy. (un + happy = unhappy)

A prefix is usually added directly to the base word, but sometimes a hyphen is needed. Following are six common rules for adding a hyphen between the prefix and the base word.

Six Rules for Using Hyphens with Prefixes

1) Hyphenate the word when you add a prefix before a proper noun or a numeral.
   Examples: un-American, pre-1980, post-war …
2) Hyphenate the word when you add the prefix *ex* meaning former.
   Example: ex-president, ex-wife, ex-husband …
   (Do not use a hyphen if *ex* means out of or away from, as in expel.)

3) Hyphenate after the prefix *self*.

Examples: self-respect, self-assured, self-control, self-study, self-made …

4) Hyphenate to separate two *a's*, two *i's*, or other letter combinations that might cause misreading or mispronunciation.

Examples: ultra-ambitious, anti-intellectual, co-worker

5) A hyphen may be used to separate two *e's* or two *o's* to improve readability or prevent mispronunciation.

Examples: co-opt and co-owner vs. coordinate; de-emphasize vs. reenter

(Note that many words with double *e's* used to be hyphenated as a general rule, as in re-elect, re-establish and pre-existing. However, current style manuals and dictionaries now tend toward "closing" the word except in cases where readability is affected. Both versions are currently accepted and listed in most dictionaries.)

6) A hyphen is sometimes used after the prefix *re* to prevent misreading or confusion with another word.

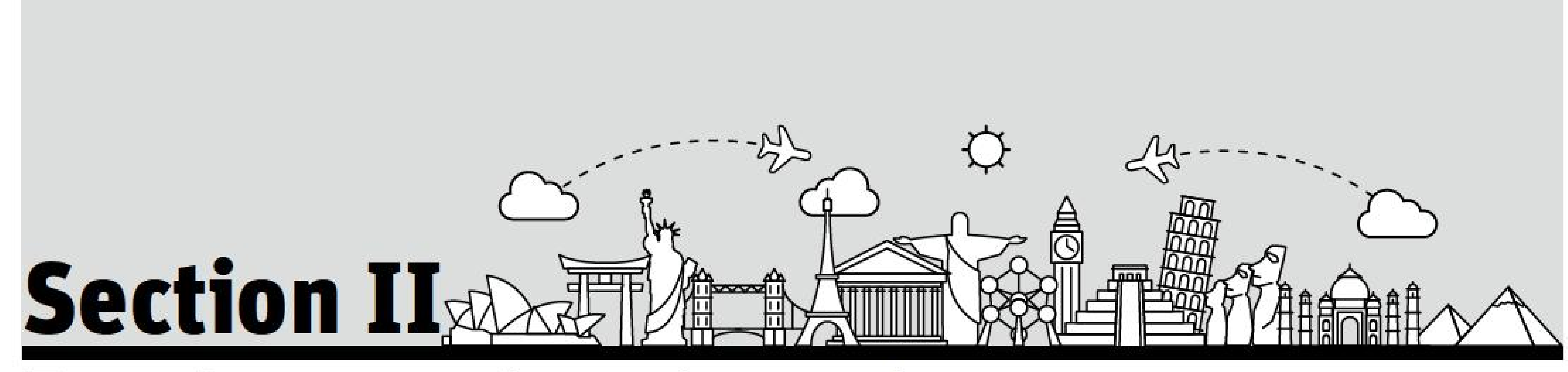
Examples: re-cover vs. recover, as in Re-cover the boat when you recover from the flu; re-lay vs. relay, as in Please relay the message that they will re-lay the tiles.

Just introduce some common prefixes here and try to be familiar with them first.

Prefixes	Meanings	Examples
inter-	between; among	interact, interchange, inter-personal, interdisciplinary, intercept, interim, international
infra-	below	infrared, infrastructure
out-	surpassing, exceeding	outperform
	external, away from	outbuilding, outboard
under-	beneath, below	underarm, undercarriage
	lower in rank	undersecretary
	not enough	underdeveloped, undergraduate
sub-	at a lower position	submarine, subsoil
	lower in rank	sub-lieutenant
	nearly, approximately	sub-tropical
trans-	across, beyond	transnational, transatlantic
	into a different state	translate, transplant, transcribe
ultra-	beyond	ultraviolet, ultrasonic
	extreme	ultramicroscopic
hyper-	beyond, more than normal	hypersonic, hyperactive

In the following units, we will give you more examples about prefixes. Possessing knowledge of prefixes will help you to guess the meanings of unknown words, which is quite useful in your reading process.

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/prefixes-and-suffixes. html and https: //en. wikipedia. org/wiki/Prefix and https: //www. englishclub. com/vocabulary/prefixes. htm and https: //blog. allaboutlearningpress. com/prefixes/)



Section II

Text A: How Diversity Makes Us Smarter

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **acknowledge** [ək'nɒlɪdʒ] ***vt.*** **(acknowledged/acknowledged/acknowledging)**

to admit or accept that something is true or that a situation exists; to publicly announce that you are grateful for the help that someone has given you

synonym	recognize; accept; agree; grant
antonym	deny; repudiate
word family	acknowledged; acknowledgement
related phrase	acknowledge receipt; it is acknowledged that

Example 1 He acknowledges that when he's tired he gets bad-tempered and brooks no criticism.

Example 2 The film festival is acknowledged as an event of international importance.

② **assault** [ə'sɔːlt; ə'sɒlt] ***n./vt.*** **(assaulted/assaulted/assaulting)**

to attack someone in a violent way; to strongly criticize someone's ideas, plans, etc.; An assault on a person is a physical attack on them; To assault someone means to physically attack them.

synonym	attack; attempt; hit
antonym	defend; protect
word family	assaultive; assaulter
related phrase	sexual assault; under assault

Example 1 His project has been assaulted by corporations, governments and the intelligence services.

Example 2 Police said other people in the house were assaulted on the second storey of the house and they will further ascertain the matter.

③ **conduct** [kən'dʌkt] ***vt.*** **(conducted/conducted/conducting)**

to carry out a particular activity or process, especially in order to get information or prove facts; to behave in a particular way, especially in a situation where people judge you by the way you behave

synonym	manage; run; enforce; implement
word family	conductive; conductor

related phrase conduct oneself; conduct a survey

Example 1 It was the first time that I had conducted mash business in Brazil.

Example 2 In answering questions, one solution is to conduct risk assessment at the outset of the life cycle.

④ **interact** [ˌɪntər'ækt] ***vi./vt.*** **(interacted/interacted/interacting)**

If people interact with each other, they talk to each other, work together, etc.; If one thing interacts with another, or if they interact, they affect each other.

synonym interplay; interwork

word family interactive; interaction

related phrase interact with; interact on

Example 1 With this data in the application, you simply need to display it and interact with it.

Example 2 No matter what kind of business you have, the importance of understanding your customers and how they interact with your software cannot be overstated.

⑤ **participate** [pɑː'tɪsɪpeɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(participated/participated/participating)**

to take part in an activity or event; If you participate in an activity, you take part in it.

synonym attend

word family participation; participant

related phrase participate in

Example 1 The only thing these activities have in common is that they somehow invite people to participate.

Example 2 Like many parents you likely find yourself on the hunt for inexpensive activities in which you children can participate.

⑥ **perspective** [pə'spektɪv] ***n.***

a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences; a sensible way of judging and comparing situations so that you do not imagine that something is more serious than it really is

synonym viewpoint; outlook; standpoint

related phrase in perspective; historical perspective; from sb.'s perspective

Example 1 In fact, if you start thinking more about the world from this perspective, the world we live in is crazy.

Example 2 When we look at design we naturally often look at it from our own perspective or from the team we represent in our business.

⑦ **racial** ['reɪʃ(ə)l] ***adj.***

relating to the relationships between different races of people who now live in the same country or area; relating to the various races that humans can be divided into

synonym ethnic; tribal

word family race; racist; racism

related phrase racial difference; racial discrimination

Example 1 She showed no inclination to draw public attention to specific acts of racial discrimination.

Example 2 Some racial and ethnic groups in this province are at higher risk of developing Type 2 diabetes.

⑧ **supreme** [suː'priːm] ***adj.***

having the highest position of power, importance, or influence; the greatest possible; You use supreme to emphasize that a quality or thing is very great.

synonym highest, principal; maximum

word family supremely; supremacy

related phrase supreme court; supreme commander

Example 1 The ability to write is a supreme test of linguistic competence.

Example 2 The case of bribery was up for the final decision in the Supreme Court.

⑨ **collaborate** [kə'læbəreɪt] ***vi.*** **(collaborated/collaborated/collaborating)**

to work together with a person or group in order to achieve something, especially in science or art; When one person or group collaborates with another, they work together, especially on a book or on some research.

synonym cooperate; team

word family collaborative; collaboration

related phrase collaborate with; collaborate business

Example 1 Darling, will you collaborate with me to finish the project?

Example 2 We can provide more opportunity to collaborate in class work and research with schools and organizations around the world.

⑩ **correlate** ['kɒrəleɪt; -rɪ-] ***vi./vt.*** **(correlated/correlated/correlating)**

If two or more facts, ideas, etc. correlate or if you correlate them, they are closely connected to each other or one causes the other; If you correlate things, you work out the way in which they are connected or the way they influence each other.

synonym associate; relate

word family correlated; correlation; correlative

related phrase correlate with; correlate strongly

Example 1 In the next paper, the authors will demonstrate how to receive the events and correlate them.

Example 2 This brings up the question of how you correlate a response to its respective request.

⑪ **disrespect** [ˌdɪsrɪ'spekt] ***n./vt.*** **(disrespected/disrespected/disrespecting)**

to lack of respect for someone or something; to say or do things that show a lack of respect for someone; If someone shows disrespect, they speak or behave in a way that shows lack of respect for a person, law, or custom.

synonym impudence; discourtesy
antonym respect; esteem
word family disrespectful; disrespectfully
related phrase with disrespect; no disrespect to

Example 1 I don't go to try and disrespect some special rules or cease any kind of war.

Example 2 You'll have a better chance of getting what you want if you disagree without disrespect.

⑫ **hinder** ['hɪndə] ***vt.*** **(hindered/hindered/hindering)**

to make it difficult for something to develop or succeed; If something hinders you, it makes it more difficult for you to do something or make progress; If something hinders your movement, it makes it difficult for you to move forward or move around.

synonym impede; slow, snooker
antonym promote; accelerate; assist
word family hindrance; hindermost
related phrase hinder development; hinder from

Example 1 These are irrelevant and do not hinder or snooker the performance of the module of this application

Example 2 Development is a natural phenomenon that you can assist or hinder, not something you plant or create.

⑬ **innovate** ['ɪnəveɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(innovated/innovated/innovating)**

to start to use new ideas, methods, or inventions; To innovate means to introduce changes and new ideas in the way something is done or made.

synonym reform; create
word family innovation; innovative
related phrase innovate education; innovate in

Example 1 The company has successfully innovated new products and services with a new logo.

Example 2 In general, we design components where we believe we can innovate for the tropics.

⑭ **predominant** [prɪ'dɒmɪnənt] ***adj.***

more powerful, more common, or more easily noticed than others; If something is predominant, it is more important or noticeable than anything else in a set of people or things.

synonym prominent; major; primary; dominant

word family predominance; predominantly

related phrase predominant partner; predominant position

Example 1 In this painting about the seep, the predominant color is green.

Example 2 There are several factors, but the predominant one is climate change.

⑮ **provoke** [prə'vəʊk] ***vt.*** **(provoked/provoked/provoking)**

to cause a reaction or feeling, especially a sudden one; to make someone angry, especially deliberately; If you provoke someone, you deliberately annoy them and try to make them behave aggressively; If something provokes a reaction, it causes it.

synonym fan; annoy

word family provoking; provoked

related phrase provoke sb. into doing; provoke debate/discussion

Example 1 They have only to provoke an enemy into an attack instead of insulating him.

Example 2 If you try to enforce a culture on others you may provoke internal protests, which will hound you for a while.

⑯ **induce** [ɪn'dju:s] ***vt.*** **(induced/induced/inducing)**

to persuade someone to do something, especially something that does not seem wise; to make a woman give birth to her baby by giving her a special drug; to cause a particular physical condition

synonym attract; produce; cause

word family inductive; induction

related phrase environmental induce; induce tolerance

Example 1 Political pressures will induce politicians to open Medicaid to more and more uninsured people and offer them some coupons.

Example 2 This past August Microsoft began using security to induce more customers to opt for Software Assurance.

⑰ **compel** [kəm'pel] ***vt.*** **(compelled/compelled/compelling)**

to force someone to do something; to make people have a particular feeling or attitude; If a situation, a rule, or a person compels you to do something, they force you to do it.

synonym pressure; force; enforce

word family compelled; compelling

related phrase compel from; compel sb. to do sth.

Example 1 Should they compel obedience from us through flogging?

Example 2 Nothing can compel me to do such a thing and I will never succumb.

⑱ **explicit** [ɪk'splɪsɪt] ***adj.***

expressed in a way that is very clear and direct; Something that is explicit is expressed or shown clearly and openly, without any attempt to hide anything; Language or pictures that are explicit describe or show sex or violence very clearly.

synonym	precise; decided
antonym	blurry; vague; obscure; ambiguous
word family	explicitly; explicitness
related phrase	explicit expression; explicit knowledge

Example 1 He avoided the explicit answer to us and his blinking eyes betrayed him.

Example 2 Peter gives two explicit answers in verse 38 to what they need—what we need.

⑲ **preclude** [prɪ'kluːd] ***vt.*** **(precluded/precluded/precluding)**

to prevent something or make something impossible; If something precludes an event or action, it prevents the event or action from happening; If something precludes you from doing something or going somewhere, it prevents you from doing it or going there.

synonym	eliminate; dispute; stem; block
antonym	include; embrace
word family	preclusion; preclusive
related phrase	preclude from; preclude misunderstanding

Example 1 It would be folly to limit, let alone effectively preclude, available options to do so.

Example 2 Another reason is that friendship with India does not preclude warmth for a peaceable Pakistan.

⑳ **reap** [riːp] ***vi./vt.*** **(reaped/reaped/reaping)**

to get something, especially something good, as a result of what you have done; you reap what you sow; to cut and collect a crop of grain

synonym	acquire; crop; harvest; gain
antonym	lose; miss
word family	reaper
related phrase	reap the benefits/reward/profits of

Example 1 With the compost, the peasants leaned down to reap the wheat.

Example 2 We do not yet reap rewards equal to those of men, which rocked us a lot.

㉑ on average

based on a calculation about how many times something usually happens, how much money someone usually gets, how often people usually do something, etc.

synonym in general; as a rule

related phrase on an average

Example 1 We might not have the best scores on average, but our institutions have some of the brightest minds in the world.

Example 2 On average, the industry shuts down its furnaces for four months every six years to reline them.

㉒ wishful thinking

the illusion that what you wish for is actually true; when you believe that what you want to happen will happen, when in fact it is not possible

Example 1 I think wishful thinking caused us to put up the site an hour or two before it was ready.

Example 2 If a thought comes while awake, it can be consciously dismissed as wishful thinking.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

administrator	anxiety	asset	California	credible
database	dialogue	ethnic	executive	expertise
gender	graduate	innovation	journal	jury
managerial	participant	presence	professor	ratio
republic	scenario	sociology	task	virtue
vocabulary	web	woo	offhand	refuge
friction	stimulate	solidarity		

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Will diversity makes one smarter?

2. What other factors do you think can make people stand out?

How Diversity Makes Us Smarter

Decades of research by organizational scientists, psychologists, sociologists, economists and demographers show that socially diverse groups, that is, those with a diversity of race, ethnicity, gender and sexual orientation, are more creative than groups who are similar to us.

It seems evident that a group of people with diverse individual expertise would be better than

an identical group at solving complex, non-routine problems. It is less obvious that social diversity should work in the same way. This is not only because people with different backgrounds bring new information. Simply interacting with individuals who are different compels group members to prepare better, to anticipate alternative opinions and to expect that reaching common view will take efforts.

The first thing to acknowledge about diversity is that it can be difficult. In the U.S., where the dialogue of inclusion is relatively advanced, even the mention of the vocabulary "diversity" can lead to anxieties, disputes and friction. Supreme Court justices disagree on the virtues of diversity and the means for achieving it. Corporations spend billions of dollars to attract and manage diversity both internally and externally, yet they still face discrimination charges, and the leadership ranks of the business world remain predominantly white and male.

It is reasonable to ask what good diversity does us. Diversity of expertise brings benefits that are obvious—you would not think of building a new car without engineers, designers and quality-control experts—but what about social diversity? What good comes from diversity of race, ethnicity, gender and sexual orientation? Research has shown that social diversity in a group can cause discomfort, rougher interactions, a lack of trust, greater perceived inter-personal conflict, lower communication and solidarity, more concern about disrespect and other problems. So what is the upside?

One credible fact is that if you want to build teams or organizations capable of innovating, you need diversity. Diversity enhances creativity. It stimulates the search for novel information and perspectives, leading to better decision making and problem solving. Diversity can improve the bottom line of companies and lead to free discoveries and top innovations. Even simply being exposed to diversity can change the way you think. This is not just wishful thinking: it is the conclusion I draw from decades of research.

The key to understanding the positive influence of diversity is the concept of informational diversity. When people are brought together to resolve problems in groups, they bring different information, opinions and perspectives. The same logic applies to social diversity. People who differ from one another in race, gender and other dimensions bring novel information and experiences to bear on the task at hand. A male and a female engineer might have perspectives as different from one another as an engineer and a physicist—and that is a good thing.

Research on large, creative organizations has shown repeatedly that this is the case. For example, business professors once studied the effect of gender diversity on the top firms in Standard & Poor's 500 Index[1] list, a group designed to reflect the overall U.S. equity market. First, they examined the size and gender composition of firms' top management teams from 1992 through 2006. Then they looked at the financial performance of the firms. In their words, they found that, on average, "female representation in top management leads to an increase of $42 million in firm value." They also measured the firms' "innovation intensity" through the ratio of research and development expenses to assets. They found that companies that emphasize on innovation saw greater financial gains when women were part of the top leadership ranks.

Racial diversity can reap the same kinds of benefits. In a study conducted in 2003, Orlando Richard, a professor of management and his colleagues surveyed executives at 177 national banks in the U.S., then erected a database comparing financial performance, racial diversity and the emphasis the bank presidents put on innovation. For innovation-focused banks, increases in racial diversity were explicitly related to enhanced financial performance.

Evidence for the benefits of diversity can be found well beyond the U.S.. In August 2012, a team of researchers at the Credit Suisse Research Institute[2] issued a report in a journal in which they examined 2,360 companies globally from 2005 to 2011, looking for a relationship between gender diversity on corporate managerial boards and financial performance. Sure enough, the researchers found that companies with one or more women on the board delivered higher average returns on equity, lower debt-to-assets ratio and better average growth.

Large data-set studies have an obvious limitation: they only show that diversity is correlated with better performance, not that it causes better performance. How diversity provokes thought? Research on racial diversity in small groups, however, makes it viable to draw some offhand conclusions. Again, the findings are clear: for groups that value innovation and new ideas, diversity helps.

In 2006 Margaret Neale, Gregory Northcraft and I set out to examine the impact of racial diversity on small decision-making groups in an experiment where sharing information was a requirement for success. Our subjects were college students taking business courses at the University of Illinois. We put together three-person groups—some consisting of all white members, others with two whites and one nonwhite member—and had them implement a murder mystery exercise. We made sure that all group members shared a common set of information, but we also gave each member important clues that only he or she knew. To find out who committed the murder, the group members would have to share all the information they collectively possessed during discussion. The groups with racial diversity significantly outperformed the groups with no racial diversity. Being with similar others induces us to think we all hold the same information and share the same perspective. This perspective, which precluded the all-white groups from effectively processing the information, is what hinders creativity and innovation.

Other researchers have found similar results. In 2004 Anthony Lising Antonio, a professor at the Stanford Graduate School of Education, collaborated with five colleagues from the University of California, Los Angeles and other institutions to examine the influence of racial and opinion composition in small group discussions. More than 350 students from three universities participated in the study. Group members were asked to discuss a heated social issue for 15 minutes. The researchers wrote negative opinions and had both black and white members deliver them to their groups. When a black person presented an opposed perspective to a group of whites, the perspective was perceived as more novel and led to broader thinking and consideration of alternatives than when a white person introduced that same negative perspective. The lesson: when we hear different voices from someone who is different from us, it provokes more thought than when it comes from someone who looks like us.

This effect is not limited to race. For example, last year three professors of management and I asked 186 people whether they identified as a Democrat or a Republican, then had them read a murder mystery and decide who they thought committed the crime. Next, we asked the subjects to prepare for a meeting with another group member by writing an essay communicating their perspectives. More important, in all cases, we told the participants that their partner disagreed with their opinions but that they would need to come to an accord with the other person. Everyone was told to prepare to woo their meeting partner to come around to their side; half of the subjects, however, were told to prepare to make their case to a member of the opposing political party, and half were told to make their case to a member of their own party.

The result: Democrats who were told that a fellow Democrat disagreed with them prepared

less well for the discussion than Democrats who were told that a Republican disagreed with them. Republicans showed the same pattern. When disagreement comes from a socially different person, we are stimulated to work harder. Diversity compels us into perceived action in ways that identity simply does not.

For this reason, diversity appears to lead to higher-quality scientific research. This year Richard Freeman, an economics professor at Harvard University, along with Wei Huang, a Harvard economics Ph.D. candidate, examined the ethnic identity of the authors of 1.5 million scientific papers written between 1985 and 2008 using Thomson Reuters' Web of Science[3], a comprehensive database of published research. They found that papers written by diverse groups receive more citations and have higher impact factors than papers written by people from the same ethnic group.

Diversity is not only about bringing different perspectives to the table. Simply adding social diversity to a group makes people believe that differences of perspectives might exist among them and that belief makes people change their behaviors.

Members of an identical group rest somewhat assured that they will agree with one another; that they will understand one another's perspectives and notions; that they will be able to easily come to a common ground. But when members of a group notice that they are socially different from one another, they change their expectations. They anticipate differences of opinions and perspectives. They assume they will need to work harder to come to an agreed idea. This logic helps to explain both the upside and downside of social diversity: people work harder in diverse environments both intelligently and socially. Hence, being around people who are different from us makes us more creative and hard-working.

Consider the following scenario: In a study of jury decision-making, racially diverse groups exchanged a wider range of information during consideration about a sexual assault case than all-white groups did. Maybe this is how diversity works.

(Adapted from "How Diversity Works", *Scientific American*, written by Katherine W. Phillips)

Notes

① Standard & Poor's 500 Index

Standard & Poor's 500 Index is an index of 500 stocks seen as a leading indicator of U.S. equities and a reflection of the performance of the large cap universe, made up of companies selected by economists. The S&P 500 is a market value weighted index and one of the common benchmarks for the U.S. stock market. Investment products based on the S&P 500 include index funds and exchange-traded funds are available to investors.

② Credit Suisse Research Institute

The Institute was established after the 2008 financial crisis with the objective to study long-term economic developments, which have—or promise to have—a global impact. The Credit Suisse Research Institute identifies and provides insights on global themes and trends. The objective of the Research Institute is to provide our clients with leading-edge insights by leveraging internal and external expertise, thus reinforcing our integrated global bank approach. Working with some of the world's most distinguished experts, academics, institutions and Credit Suisse's global network of 400 analysts, the Institute makes this information available throughout the

bank for the business units to create innovative products, solutions and services for Credit Suisse's clients. Clients increasingly require global reach, local expertise and competitive products and services from the financial services industry.

③ Web of Science

It is an online subscription-based scientific citation indexing service originally produced by the Institute for Scientific Information (ISI), now maintained by Clarivate Analytics (previously the Intellectual Property and Science business of Thomson Reuters), that provides a comprehensive citation search. It gives access to multiple databases that reference cross-disciplinary research, which allows for in-depth exploration of specialized sub-fields within an academic or scientific discipline.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. (   ) People with diversified race, ethnicity, gender and sexual orientation are more creative than groups who are similar to us.
2. (   ) Interacting with individuals who are similar to us compels group members to prepare better.
3. (   ) Corporations still face discrimination charges although they have taken enough measures.
4. (   ) Research has shown that social diversity in a group can relieve discomfort, rougher interactions, a lack of trust, greater perceived inter-personal conflict.
5. (   ) Diversity stimulates the search for novel information and perspectives.
6. (   ) A male and a female engineer might have different perspectives, which is not good.
7. (   ) Companies that emphasize on innovation saw greater financial gains when women were part of the top leadership ranks.
8. (   ) Evidence for the benefits of diversity can only be found within the U.S..
9. (   ) The case of University of Illinois students proves the benefit of diversity.
10. (   ) Different races and beliefs also contribute to creative thinking.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. Decades of research by organizational scientists, ________, sociologists, economists and demographers show that socially ________ groups, that is, those with a diversity of race, ________, gender and sexual ________, are more creative than groups who are similar ________ us.
2. Simply ________ with individuals who are different ________ group members to prepare better, to ________ alternative opinions and to ________ that reaching common view will take efforts.
3. In the U.S., where the ________ of inclusion is ________ advanced, even the ________ of the vocabulary "diversity" can lead to anxieties, disputes and ________.
4. When people are brought together to ________ problems in groups, they bring different information, opinions and ________. The same logic ________ to social ________.
5. People who differ ________ one another in race, gender and other ________ bring ________ information and experiences to ________ on the task at hand.
6. This perspective, which ________ the all-white groups from ________ processing the information, is what ________ creativity and innovation.
7. More important, in all ________, we told the ________ that their partner ________ with their opinions but that they would need to come to an ________ with the other person.
8. Everyone was told to prepare to ________ their meeting partner to come around ________ their side; half of the subjects, however, were told to prepare to make their case to a member of the ________ political party, and half were told to make their case to a member of their own party.
9. They found that papers written by ________ groups receive more ________ and have higher ________ factors than papers written by people from the same ________ group.
10. This ________ helps to explain both the ________ and downside of social diversity: people work harder in diverse environments both ________ and socially.

VI. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 to 5. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VII. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

assault	perspective	correlate	predominant	credible
conduct	collaborate	provoke	induce	preclude

VIII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. There is much that might be said about friendships. They allow us to see ourselves from the perspective of another. (　　)

   A. standard　　B. factor　　C. viewpoint　　D. spout

2. Snow falling on the mountain sides is compressed into ice. (　　)

   A. stoked　　B. carved　　C. slabbed　　D. condensed

3. They also examined whether behavior changed over time, and whether there were racial or gender differences in behavior patterns and outcomes. (　　)

   A. character　　B. national　　C. ethnic　　D. native

4. Land is a major social and political issue, very explosive and very much inclined to provoke a lot of conflict in different parts of the country. (　　)

   A. ignite　　B. flit　　C. plank　　D. hinge

5. This prospect doesn't please fans, who fear too much debt could hinder the team's competitiveness. (　　)

   A. promote　　B. elevate　　C. obstruct　　D. stimulate

6. Donors can also check out where their peers are giving, and possibly collaborate for greater impact. (　　)

   A. gather　　B. gallop　　C. circulate　　D. cooperate

7. England, Scotland and Wales compose the island of Great Britain. (　　)

   A. form　　B. grate　　C. destroy　　D. plead

8. There is nothing trivial or domestic about the sexual assault or rape of children. (　　)

   A. attack　　B. interaction　　C. transaction　　D. radiation

9. For example, offering quantity discounts can induce consumers to purchase more fruit and vegetables. (　　)

   A. attract　　B. thump　　C. forge　　D. extort

10. If insurance guidelines compel people to take greater safety measures, all of the society will benefit. (　　)

    A. fluctuate　　B. harrow　　C. force　　D. notify

IX. Word Formation

Directions: Do you know the meanings of the following prefixes? Can you list more words with these prefixes? Come on!

1. under-—underground; ________; ________
2. inter-—interact; ________; ________
3. out-—outnumber; ________; ________
4. sub-—subconscious; ________; ________
5. trans-—transnational; ________; ________

X. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Decades of research by organizational scientists, psychologists, sociologists, economists and demographers show that socially diverse groups, that is, those with a diversity of race, ethnicity, gender and sexual orientation, are more creative than groups who are similar to us.
2. Simply interacting with individuals who are different compels group members to prepare better, to anticipate alternative opinions and to expect that reaching common view will take efforts.
3. People who differ from one another in race, gender and other dimensions bring novel information and experiences to bear on the task at hand.
4. Simply adding social diversity to a group makes people believe that differences of perspectives might exist among them and that belief makes people change their behaviors.
5. Members of an identical group rest somewhat assured that they will agree with one another; that they will understand one another's perspectives and notions; that they will be able to easily come to a common ground.

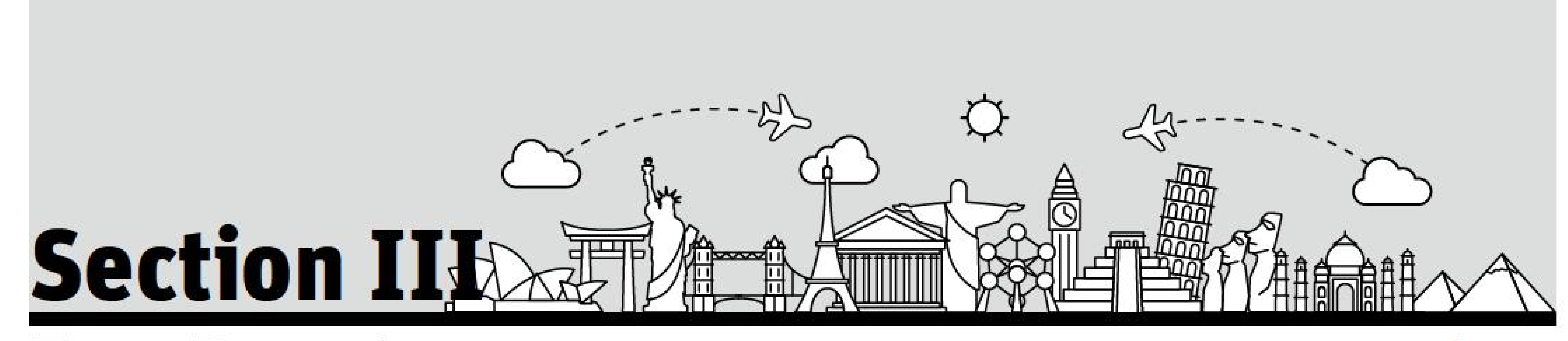
XI. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. guitar flute wax amp violin (　　) ______________
2. sterling ounce tuppence shilling euro tenner (　　) ______________
3. billion centimeter fiver mileage acre volt (　　) ______________
4. ale toast brandy champagne cider (　　) ______________
5. stomachache tumor pneumonia tobacco diabetes hernia nettle (　　) ______________



Section III

Text B: Why So Many Young Doctors Work Such Awful Hours

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **arise** [ə'raɪz] ***vi.*** **(arose/arisen/arising)**

If a problem or difficult situation arises, it begins to happen; If something arises from or out of a situation, event, etc., it is caused or started by that situation, etc..

synonym occur; raise; offer

word family arising; arose

related phrase arise from; arise out of

Example 1 More problems like those at the nuclear power plant are certain to arise.

Example 2 It is also helpful in knowing each other's plans about money for the present and the future, to help erase any financial obstacles and misunderstandings that might arise.

② **attribute** [(for *n.*) ˌætrɪbjuːt; (for *v.*) ə'trɪbjuːt] ***n./vt.*** **(attributed/attributed/attributing)**

to believe or say that a situation or event is caused by something; If people in general attribute a particular statement, painting, piece of music, etc. to someone, they believe that person said it, painted it, etc.; a quality or feature, especially one that is considered to be good or useful

synonym ascribe; owe to

word family attributive; attribution

related phrase attribute to; product attribute

Example 1 The fall in the number of deaths from heart disease is generally attributed to improvements in diet.

Example 2 She attributes her great age to carefully planned diet.

③ **compulsory** [kəm'pʌlsərɪ] ***adj.***

If something is compulsory, you must do it or accept it, because it is the law or because someone in a position of authority says you must.

synonym required; obligatory

antonym optional; voluntary

word family compulsive; compulsively; compulsion

related phrase compulsory education; compulsory course

Example 1 It was settled by compulsory arbitration.

Example 2 The Arab government said its policy of no compulsory redundancy and pay restraint was working.

④ **dismiss** [dɪs'mɪs] ***vt.*** **(dismissed/dismissed/dismissing)**

to remove someone from their job; to refuse to consider someone's idea, opinion. etc., because you think it is not serious, true, or important

synonym remove; disband; fire

antonym employ; hire

word family dismissible; dismissive; dismission

related phrase dismiss from; dismiss sb. for sth.

Example 1 At first Domino threatened to dismiss me, but later she changed her idea.

Example 2 Based on that representation, the district judge denied a motion to dismiss the new complaint.

⑤ **forbid** [fə'bɪd] ***vt.*** **(forbade/forbidden/forbidding)**

to tell someone that they are not allowed to do something, or that something is not allowed; If you forbid someone to do something, or if you forbid an activity, you order that it must not be done.

synonym prohibit; ban; bar; stem; block

antonym permit; allow; enable

word family forbidden; forbade; forbidding

related phrase forbid from doing sth.; forbid to do

Example 1 If it comes to pass, it would forbid all imports of elephant products.

Example 2 Otherwise, Apple might decide to forbid certain types of speech all on its own.

⑥ **grumble** ['grʌmb(ə)l] ***vi.*** **(grumbled/grumbled/grumbling)**

to keep complaining in an unhappy way; to make a low continuous sound; If someone grumbles, they complain about something in a bad-tempered way.

synonym complain; mumble

word family grumpy; grumbler

related phrase grumble over/about; grumble at

Example 1 I shouldn't grumble about Mum—she's lovely really.

Example 2 For myself I do not grumble, for I am one of the lucky ones.

⑦ **implement** [(for *n.*) 'ɪmplɪmənt; (for *v.*) 'ɪmplɪment] ***n./vt.*** **(implemented/implemented/implementing)**

to take action or make changes that you have officially decided should happen; a tool, especially one used for outdoor physical work

synonym	accomplish; instrument; facility
word family	implementation
related phrase	implement a plan/policy/decision

Example 1 How do you implement this tatting equipment?

Example 2 We must implement strong laws that hold exploiters accountable and provide protection to victims.

⑧ **legislate** ['ledʒɪsleɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(legislated/legislated/legislating)**

to make a law about something; When a government or state legislates, it passes a new law.

synonym	pass laws; enact
word family	legislative
related phrase	legislate for sth.; legislate progress

Example 1 We must legislate for equal pay.

Example 2 This movement to legislate distracted walking has a purpose: Pedestrian tolls are on the rise.

⑨ **outline** ['aʊtlaɪn] ***n./vt.*** **(outlined/outlined/outlining)**

the main ideas or facts about something, without the details; to describe something in a general way, giving the main points but not the details

synonym	draft; framework
antonym	detail; elaborate
word family	outliner; outlining
related phrase	in outline; general outline; outline plan

Example 1 The lyric may be briefly summarized in the following outline.

Example 2 The new president outlined plans to deal with crime, drugs and education.

⑩ **breach** [briːtʃ] ***n./vt.*** **(breached/breached/breaching)**

If you breach an agreement, a law, or a promise, you break it; A breach in a relationship is a serious disagreement which often results in the relationship ending; an action that breaks a law, rule, or agreement; a serious disagreement between people, groups, or countries

synonym	break; violate; destroy
antonym	obey; observe
word family	breacher; breaching
related phrase	breach of contract; breach of trust; breach clause

Example 1 Define the consequences of any breach of any of these issues.

Example 2 The World Trade Organization (WTO) last year declared the loop hole in breach of international copyright law.

⑪ **comply** [kəm'plaɪ] ***vi.*** **(complied/complied/complying)**

to do what you have to do or are asked to do; If someone or something complies with an order or set of rules, they do what is required or expected.

synonym	engage; obey; observe
antonym	disobey; reject
related phrase	comply with

Example 1 It is your choice as to whether you choose to comply.

Example 2 When one states that an entity must leave, it must comply.

⑫ **compress** [(for *n.*) 'kɒmpres; (for *v.*) kəm'pres] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(compressed/compressed/compressing)**

to press something or make it smaller so that it takes up less space, or to become smaller; When you compress something or when it compresses, it is pressed or squeezed so that it takes up less space.

synonym	impact; pack
antonym	expand; spread
word family	compression; compressed
related phrase	compress sth. into sth.; compress pictures/files

Example 1 Can you compress your speech into five minutes?

Example 2 You do it so quickly that the heat flow between the inside of the bicycle pump and the outside is too slow compared to the speed at which you compress.

⑬ **eliminate** [ɪ'lɪmɪneɪt] ***vt.*** **(eliminated/eliminated/eliminating)**

to completely get rid of something that is unnecessary or unwanted; To eliminate something, especially something you do not want or need, means to remove it completely.

synonym	avoid; exclude
antonym	add; increase
word family	elimination; eliminating
related phrase	eliminate poverty; eliminate illiteracy

Example 1 Coffee will refill your energy and eliminate your hunger immediately.

Example 2 We now turn our attention to these topics, the associated threats, and how to eliminate the threats.

⑭ **endure** [ɪn'djʊə] ***vi./vt.*** **(endured/endured/enduring)**

to be in a difficult or painful situation for a long time without complaining; to remain alive or continue to exist for a long time; If you endure a painful or difficult situation, you experience it and do not avoid it or give up, usually because you cannot.

synonym resist; abide

antonym avoid; escape

word family endurable

related phrase enduring doing; endure pain

Example 1 Rather than being cheated, I would endure anything.

Example 2 Mary expressed sympathy for her ability to endure her time on the stand.

⑮ **parallel** ['pærəlel] ***n./adj./vt.*** **(paralleled/paralleled/paralleling)**

Two lines, paths, etc. that are parallel to each other are the same distance apart along their whole length; a relationship or similarity between two things, especially things that exist or happen in different places or at different times; to be as good as something else; to be similar to something else

synonym same; alike

antonym contradictory; contrasting

word family parallelism

related phrase in parallel with sb./sth.; without parallel

Example 1 The current from these parallel generators will add up to make a total flow of 500 amperes.

Example 2 Development of both the client and server side can then begin in parallel.

⑯ **erode** [ɪ'rəʊd] ***vi./vt.*** **(eroded/eroded/eroding)**

to gradually reduce something such as someone's power or confidence; If the weather erodes rock or soil, or if rock or soil erodes, its surface is gradually destroyed.

synonym corrode; disintegrate

word family eroded; eroding

related phrase eroded soil; eroded land

Example 1 The rain will erode the deeds of his life.

Example 2 If competition would erode profits, firms would find no incentive for strategic investments.

⑰ **curb** [kɜːb] ***vt.*** **(curbed/curbed/curbing)**

to control or limit something in order to prevent it from having a harmful effect; If you curb something, you control it and keep it within limits.

synonym control; restrain

word family curbing; curbed

related phrase curb inflation; curb on sth.

Example 1 We should increase input in agriculture, develop advanced technologies, curb market speculation, increase food assistance and intensify cooperation in agriculture and food.

Example 2 We must curb the spread and use of these weapons and rifles.

⑱ inflate [ɪn'fleɪt] *vi./vt.* (inflated/inflated/inflating)

to fill something with air or gas so it becomes larger, or to become filled with air or gas; to make something seem more important or impressive than it really is; to increase in price, or make something increase in price

synonym fill

word family inflatable; inflation; inflationary

related phrase inflated value; be hugely inflated

Example 1 When they are found, doctors pass a tube with a balloon into the narrowed area and inflate the balloon to compress plaque deposits against the side of the artery.

Example 2 If it fails to inflate, or you need to top up the air, blow into this tube.

⑲ immune [ɪ'mjuːn] *adj./n.*

Someone who is immune to a particular disease cannot catch it; the reaction of the body's immune system to something that is harmful; not affected by something that happens or is done; Someone or something that is immune from a particular process or situation is able to escape it.

synonym exonerative; exempt

word family immunized; immunization

related phrase be immune to; immune body; immune response

Example 1 None of us is immune to the heartaches and sorrows that inhabit this world.

Example 2 If stress affects immune responses, then it should also affect how well the body heals itself.

⑳ restrain [rɪ'streɪn] *vt.* (restrained/restrained/restraining)

to stop someone from doing something, often by using physical force; to control your own emotions or behavior; to control or limit something that is increasing too much

synonym possess; regulate; contain; manage

antonym unrestrain; indulge

word family restrained; restrainer; restraint

related phrase restrain oneself (from)

Example 1 They couldn't restrain their excitement.

Example 2 She was so angry that she could hardly restrain herself.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

administer	adverse	allot	brute	chaos
congress	decrease	enforce	enterprise	fag
gauge	gulf	harsh	modest	notion
overwhelm	peer	presently	president	profession

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Why do American doctors work longer hours?
2. What measures can help address this problem of overworking?

Why So Many Young Doctors Work Such Awful Hours

Residents[1] in America are expected to spend up to 80 hours a week in the hospital and endure single shifts that routinely last up to 28 hours—with such workdays required about four times a month on average. Overall, residents typically work more than twice as many hours annually as their peers in other white-collar professions, such as lawyers in corporate law firms—an exhausting schedule that potentially puts both caretakers and patients at risk. In Europe, by contrast, residents are subject to a maximum work week of 48 hours, without apparent detriment to patient care or the educational component of residencies.

Part of the reason medical training is so demanding in the United States is that hospitals control the labor market for residents by assigning spots based on a centralized matching system rather than an ordinary, competitive market. While such kind of arrangements are generally forbidden by the nation's anti-trust laws[2], employer-controlled labor markets are not uncommon. The sole avenue to being a fully licensed medical doctor in the United States is by submitting to what is known as "the match".

Considered on its own terms, the match seems fair. It gives principal consideration to medical students' stated preferences, and is governed by a mathematical rule so efficient that its designers won a Nobel Prize in Economics. "The match was created in 1952 to eliminate the pressure that was being placed on medical students to accept offers earlier and earlier during medical school, and typically before the students knew what other offers might be available," explains Mona Signer, the president and CEO of the National Resident Matching Program (NRMP[3]), which administers the match. Signer therefore dismisses the notion that the match harms residents. Instead, she says, it "creates order out of chaos", to the benefit of both institutions and the residents they employ.

But creating order out of the chaos of a free labor market also contributes to industry norms of punishing hours and low pay, by restricting competition among employers that could result in better wages and working conditions. For this reason, a group of residents brought an action in 2002 challenging the match as an illegal "contract or plot, in restraint of trade or commerce" in

violation of the federal anti-trust laws. However, it is hard to argue with this general description of the match. If, say, fast-food workers or stock-market analysts were subject to a similar arrangement, most would view it as a clear offense to free enterprise and workers' rights. Under lobbying from Association of American Medical Colleges (AAMC[4]), among others, Congress disagreed. After a federal district court initially ruled that the match might be an illegal restraint on trade, Congress immediately issued legislation immunizing medical training programs from anti-trust liability.

While residency-program administrators no doubt take their educational obligations seriously, residents are also a cheap source of skilled labor that can fill gaps in coverage. They are paid a fixed, modest salary that, on an hourly basis, is on par with that paid to hospital cleaning staff—and even, on an absolute basis, about half of what nurses typically earn, while working more than twice as many hours. After adjusting for inflation, residents' salaries have remained essentially unchanged for the last 40 years.

However, the evidence is mixed as to whether the match is responsible for depressing residents' salaries. In ranking programs, as Signer points out, most medical students are mainly concerned with reputation and the quality of training, not money. One 2015 study showed, for example, that even without the match, residents would still earn far less than their true market value—which is estimated to be about double what they presently earn—because they, in effect, accept a pay cut for high-quality medical training and a prestigious residency placement. Similar preferences are observed in other labor markets for professional training—for example, law clerks working under judges—in which the long-term career benefits are beyond any temporary earnings hit. Accordingly, it is not clear whether the free market would necessarily yield better resident pay.

Working conditions, though, are another matter. Residents work exceptionally long hours and are subject to unparalleled physical and psychological demands. And it used to be worse. In 2003, the governing body for medical-training programs, ACGME[5], introduced "duty hour" restrictions that, among other things, capped the average number of hospital hours per week at 80 and limited single shifts to 30 hours. The ACGME established further restrictions in 2011 which, among other things, reduced the maximum shift lengths to 16 hours for first-year residents and 28 hours for more experienced residents. These reforms appeared to substantially relax the extreme nature of medical training. Before, it was routine for residents to spend 100 or even 120 hours a week in the hospital with single shifts stretching to 48 hours and beyond. Grumbling by the old guard aside, most in the profession agreed this system was abusive, out of date, and in need of replacement.

But looking closely at the effects of the new rules, it is unclear how much residents' working lives have really changed. Averaging 80-hour work weeks and regularly putting in 28-hour shifts is still brutal by any gauge. In fact, the evidence is mixed as to whether duty-hour reform did much of anything to reduce the number of hours residents actually work. ACGME-sponsored research indicates that the 2003 reforms led to large reported decreases in the average number of hours worked by residents. However, other surveys found that the 2003 reforms led to no change in overall work or sleep hours, and that the 2011 reforms actually made residents less satisfied with their work schedules.

How could it be possible for limits on work hours not to lead to less work? Most fundamentally, duty-hour restrictions did nothing to reduce the overall work amount of residents, meaning the reforms simply require residents to do the same amount of work in less time. Or "ACGME requirements outline the local institutions' 'minimum' responsibilities" to residents,

but ultimately "resident pay, benefits, and working conditions are the responsibility of the local institution".

This problem of "work compression" arose independent of the ACGME's reforms, as medical staffing has generally not kept pace with the rising burden on the nation's health-care regime. For example, the number of patients admitted at teaching hospitals rose 46 percent from 1990 to 2010, a period during which the number of residency spots increased only 13 percent. Accordingly, as the doctors and researchers have noted, "by the time ACGME restrictions were implemented, residents were already doing much more, in less time and for more and sicker patients, than were previous generations" of doctors.

It is therefore no wonder that duty-hour restrictions are often honored in the breach. Residents are regularly expected to work beyond their allotted shifts, with up to 83 percent of them saying that they are either unable or unwilling to comply fully with the rules. Non-compliance is so widespread that medical experts openly feel annoyed that duty-hour restrictions may be "promoting a culture of dishonesty" among doctors, given that large majorities of surveyed residents admit they falsely under-report their hours to their programs and the ACGME.

Less obvious is that the hourly caps only related to time spent physically in the hospital or clinic—meaning they do not account for the many responsibilities residents must now often complete on their own time. These tasks, which can add up to several hours or more during daytime, include taking notes on patient visits, filing reports on patient deaths and other adverse events, conducting independent research to aid in treatment, preparing for patient visits and unfamiliar clinical rotations, complying with training and academic-research obligations, and assisting remotely with patient-specific issues that arise after one's shift. Combined with technological advances that have boosted working from home, it seems the new rules merely transferred much of a resident's work from the hospital to the living room. The only way to become a fully-fledged medical doctor is to set aside complaints, sign the contract, and move on. There is little incentive to invest time, money, and energy in organizing when the end is near.

In addition, it seems unbelievable that residents would engage in a sustained work stoppage to force the issue. Most doctors are in medicine for the right reason—to help people. So this leaves government action. In response to the uncountable studies confirming that fagging overtime without enough sleep erodes virtually every aspect of people's work performance, the federal government has established detailed regulations limiting the work hours of professionals entrusted with responsibility for public safety, such as pilots and nuclear-plant operators. Duty-hour restrictions were, in large part, an attempt to avoid federal regulation of this sort for medical residents. Not coincidentally, the ACGME announced the restrictions just a few months after legislation was introduced in Congress to impose strict, federal limits on residents' hours, to be enforced by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Given the limited impact duty-hour reform has had in curbing the excesses of medical training, perhaps government supervision is in order. Regulation need not be on the federal level. In 1984, in the wake of the high-profile death of an 18-year-old college student in a Manhattan emergency room staffed by residents who worked over time, New York State instituted the nation's first compulsory duty-hour restrictions. And even since the 2003 reforms, several states have considered, though not issued, more strict rules.

Medicine enjoys the status of being the most prestigious profession in America, yet the harsh terms of medical training remains unduly excessive. The American public overwhelmingly supports

restrictions on residents' working hours. A recent poll conducted by an independent public-opinion survey firm found that nearly 90 percent of Americans believe residents' shifts should be 16 hours or less, and over 80 percent of those surveyed said that they would request a new doctor if they knew their resident was on the tail end of a 24-hour shift.

Much of this gulf can be attributed to a legal structure that promotes an employer-controlled labor market for residents. But of course that legal structure can be changed. As the medical profession displayed in adopting the initial round of duty-hour restrictions in 2003, the best way to prevent government-imposed reform of an unfair system is to resolve the problem voluntarily. As it becomes increasingly clear that the ACGME's reforms have been largely ineffective, the profession would do well to remember this lesson.

(Adapted from https: //www. theatlantic. com/business/archive/2017/02/doctors-long-hours-schedules/516639/)

Notes

① Residents

A resident or a resident doctor is a doctor who is receiving a period of specialized training in a hospital after completing his or her internship.

② Anti-trust laws

Anti-trust law is a collection of federal and state government laws that regulates the conduct and organization of business corporations, generally to promote fair competition for the benefit of consumers. (The concept is called competition law in other English-speaking countries.) The main statutes are the Sherman Act of 1890, the Clayton Act of 1914 and the Federal Trade Commission Act of 1914. These Acts, first, restrict the formation of cartels and prohibit other collusive practices regarded as being in restraint of trade. Second, they restrict the mergers and acquisitions of organizations that could substantially lessen competition. Third, they prohibit the creation of a monopoly and the abuse of monopoly power.

③ NRMP

National Resident Matching Program, also called The Match, is a United States-based private non-profit non-governmental organization created in 1952 to place U.S. medical school students into residency training programs located in United States teaching hospitals. Its mission has since expanded to include the placement of U.S. citizen and non-U.S. citizen international medical school students and graduates into residency and fellowship training programs. In addition to the annual Main Residency Match that encompasses more than 43,000 applicants and 31,000 positions, the NRMP conducts Fellowship Matches for more than 60 subspecialties through its Specialties Matching Service (SMS). The NRMP is sponsored by a Board of Directors that includes medical school deans, teaching hospital executives, graduate medical education program directors, medical students and residents, and one public member.

④ AAMC

The Association of American Medical Colleges (AAMC) is a not-for-profit organization based in Washington, D.C. and established in 1876. It administers the Medical College Admission

Test (MCAT). The AAMC operates the American Medical College Application Service and the Electronic Residency Application Service which facilitate students applying to medical schools and residency programs, respectively.

⑤ ACGME

The Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) is the body responsible for accrediting the majority of graduate medical training programs (i.e., internships, residencies and fellowships, a.k.a. subspecialty residencies) for physicians in the United States. It is a non-profit private council that evaluates and accredits medical residency and internship programs. The ACGME was founded in 1981 and was preceded by the Liaison Committee for Graduate Medical Education, which was established in 1972. The ACGME currently oversees the post-graduate education and training for all MD and the majority of DO physicians in the United States. Plans call for the ACGME to oversee the Unified Accreditation System for all MDs and DOs in 2015. The ACGME's member organizations are the American Board of Medical Specialties, American Hospital Association, American Medical Association, Association of American Medical Colleges and the Council of Medical Specialty Societies, each of whom appoints four members to the ACGME's board of directors.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and choose the best answer to each of the following questions according to Text B.

1. The main idea of the first paragraph is that ________.

A. U.S. residents worked extremely overtime compared to other country and profession

B. European residents work very little time

C. white-collar workers have an exhausting schedule

D. residents are required 7 hours a month on average

2. Which of the following reason is not mentioned in the passage? ________

A. Hospitals control the labor market for residents.

B. The match was to eliminate the pressure that was being placed on medical students.

C. The long time work is to create order out of the chaos of a free labor market.

D. Residents are a rare source of skilled labor.

3. The phrase "on par with" in Paragraph 5 is closest in meaning to ________.

A. more than B. less than C. equal to D. double

4. From the seventh paragraph, we can infer that ________.

A. ACGME is an impartial governing body

B. the restrictions of the work time are quite effective

C. before the reform, the residents work even 120 hours a week

D. the result of the reform is yet to prove

5. What' the tone of the passage?

A. Positive. B. Worried. C. Neutral. D. Cynical.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. ________ in America are expected to spend ________ to 80 hours a week in the hospital and ________ single shifts that ________ last up to 28 hours—with such workdays required about four times a month ________average.
2. The ________ was created in 1952 to ________ the pressure that was being placed on medical students to accept offers earlier and earlier during medical school, and ________ before the students knew what other offers might be ________.
3. But creating order ________ of the ________ of a free labor market also ________ to industry norms of punishing hours and low pay, by ________ competition among employers that could result ________ better wages and working ________.
4. Most ________, duty-hour restrictions did nothing to ________ the overall work amount of residents, meaning the ________ simply ________ residents to do the same amount of work in less time.
5. Residents are ________ expected to work beyond their ________ shifts, with up to 83 percent of them saying that they are either unable or ________ to comply fully ________ the rules.

VI. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VII. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

erode	curb	restrain	legislate	compulsory
compress	forbid	outline	attribute	immune

VIII. Word Formation

Directions: Identify the words with the following prefixes and try to guess the meanings of them.

1. anti-—________
2. in-—________
3. un-—________
4. dis-—________
5. il-—________

IX. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Overall, residents typically work more than twice as many hours annually as their peers in other white-collar professions, such as lawyers in corporate law firms—an exhausting schedule that potentially puts both caretakers and patients at risk.
2. Part of the reason medical training is so demanding in the United States is that hospitals control the labor market for residents by assigning spots based on a centralized matching system rather than an ordinary, competitive market.
3. The match was created in 1952 to eliminate the pressure that was being placed on medical students to accept offers earlier and earlier during medical school, and typically before the students knew what other offers might be available ...
4. Medicine enjoys the status of being the most prestigious profession in America, yet the harsh terms of medical training remains unduly excessive.
5. Much of this gulf can be attributed to a legal structure that promotes an employer-controlled labor market for residents.

X. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of every word first. Work with your partners.

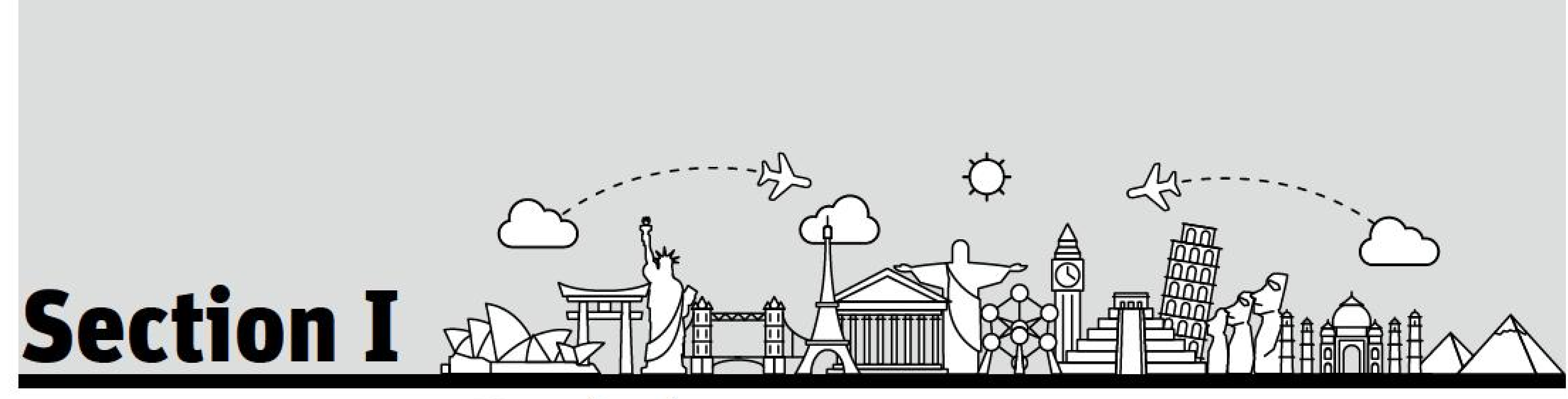
e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. coconut peanut reed rice lemon scone ( ) ______________
2. priest knight midwife trustee Mohammed reverend prostitute ( ) ______________
3. chalk gel massage invoice kite rod scissors scoop apron ( ) ______________
4. batch blob legion eternity brigade squad wad hunk regiment ( ) ______________
5. housekeeping handbag keyboard umbrella handkerchief scissors ( ) ______________



Unit 3
Media and Sports



Section I

Focus on Prefix (II)

Why Is Learning Affixes Important?

Prefixes and suffixes are the mark of an interested lingual. When you learn prefixes and suffixes, you get a sense of the construction of a word. The word can be analyzed into its root parts, including any prefixes of suffixes. Many words are constructed with such roots. It gives you an improvement when you read literature, coming upon unknown words. It also helps you concisely say or write something. You just add a prefix or suffix and eliminate the extra prepositions or sentences needed to convey the meaning.

Teaching prefixes and suffixes is an important part of building better readers. Whether in the early years or advancing through college, all students can learn prefixes and use that knowledge to become more proficient in language arts. Prefixes, suffixes, and roots are the essential building blocks of all words. Teaching prefixes and suffixes help students understand the meaning behind different vocabulary words and students that learn prefixes have the capabilities of breaking down unfamiliar words into segments that are easily understood; learning new words becomes simpler. It is important to understand that prefixes come at the beginning of a word while suffixes are added at the end.

Prefixes, suffixes, and roots are one of the most essential strategies for unlocking the meaning of new words available to students. By understanding different prefixes' and suffixes' meanings, students often have the tools needed for decoding difficult words. Teaching prefixes and suffixes provides students with skills that will last them throughout their school years and beyond. Students should learn prefixes in order to demystify the process of spelling and reading.

Handy Tips for Adding Prefixes

1) The spelling of the base word never changes. Simply add the prefix to the beginning of the base word, as in the word "unhappy".

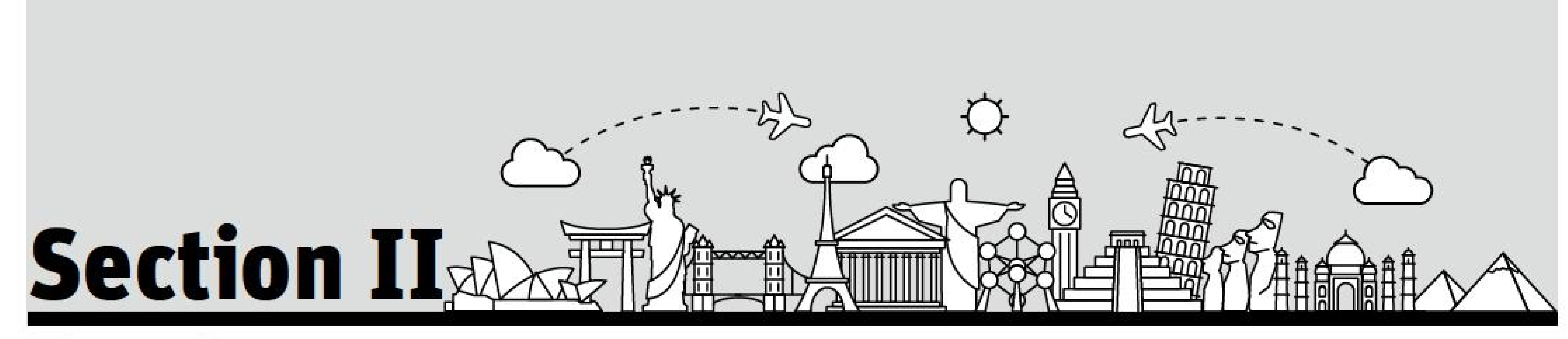
2) Be aware that double letters can occur. If you add the prefix "un-" to natural, both the prefix and the base word retain their original spelling. The result is "unnatural". Take a look at these other words where double letters occur: il + logical = illogical; im + mature = immature; il + legal = illegal; un + necessary = unnecessary. Other examples: unnoticeable, illiteracy, immaterial, immeasurable, immigrant, immobile, immoral, dissatisfy, disservice, dissimilar, dissolve, irreconcilable, irredeemable, irreducible, irregular, irrelevant, irreparable, irresistible, irresponsible, misspoke, misspell, misstep.

3) Watch out for prefix look-alikes. Some words contain the same string of letters as a prefix, but upon closer examination you'll find that they are not prefixes. The "re-" in "real" is not a prefix. Other examples include: uncle, pretty, press, interest, reach, irony, dish and antique.

A prefix is placed at the beginning of a word to modify or change its meaning. This is a list of the most common prefixes in English, together with their basic meaning and some examples. You can find more detail or precision for each prefix in any good dictionary. The originals of words are extremely complicated. You should use this list as a guide only, to help you understand possible meanings. But be very careful, because often what appears to be a prefix is not a prefix at all. Note also that this list does not include elements like "auto-" or " bio-", because these are "combining forms", not prefixes.

Prefixes	Meanings	Examples
a-	to, towards	aside, aboard, aback
	not, without	abort, abortion
ab-	away, from	abdicate, abstract, abolish
ex-	out	exit, exclude, expand
	upward	exalt, extol
	completely	exasperate, extort
	previous	ex-wife
extra-	outside, beyond	extracurricular
over-	excessively, completely	overconfident, overburdened, overjoyed
	upper, outer, over, above	overcoat, overcast, overflow
anti-	opposing, against, the opposite	anti-aircraft, antibiotic, anticlimax
counter-	opposition, opposite direction	counter-attack, counteract
ob-(o-)	blocking, against, concealing	obstruct, offend, oppose
en-	put into or on	engulf, enmesh, enclose, endorse
	bring into the condition of	enlighten
	intensification	entangle, enrage, envisage

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/prefixes-and-suffixes. html and https: //en. wikipedia. org/wiki/Prefix and https: //www. englishclub. com/vocabulary/prefixes. htm and http: // www. edu-nova. com/articles/roots-prefixes-suffixes/ and https: //blog. allaboutlearningpress. com/ prefixes/)



Text A: Chinese-style Origins Give Life to Domestic Animation

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **conscientious** [ˌkɒnʃɪ'enʃəs] ***adj.***

careful to do everything that it is your job or duty to do; Someone who is conscientious is very careful to do their work properly.

synonym	serious; earnest; responsible
antonym	irresponsible; feckless
word family	conscience; conscienceless; conscientiousness
related phrase	conscientious attitude; be conscientious about

Example 1 To give the devil his due, he is quite a conscientious worker.

Example 2 To get real results we need to engage conscientious, hard-working people in the effort.

② **endow** [ɪn'daʊ] ***vt.*** **(endowed/endowed/endowing)**

You say that someone is endowed with a particularly desirable ability, characteristic, or possession when they have it by chance or by birth; to give a college, hospital, etc. a large sum of money that provides it with an income

synonym	gift; donate; give
word family	endowment; endowed
related phrase	be endowed with; endow insurance

Example 1 You are endowed with good instinct, health and a humble nature.

Example 2 The ambassador has endowed a $1 million public-service fellowships program.

③ **integrate** ['ɪntɪgreɪt] ***adj./vi./vt.*** **(integrated/integrated/integrating)**

If two or more things integrate, or if you integrate them, they combine or work together in a way that makes something more effective; to become part of a group or society and be accepted by them, or to help someone do this

synonym	complete; absolute
word family	integral; integrated; integrative

related phrase integrate with; integrate into

Example 1 Transport planning should be integrated with energy policy.

Example 2 How should we integrate that kind of novel with novels that have more formal ambitions?

④ **accord** [ə'kɔːd] ***n./vt.*** **(accorded/accorded/according)**

a situation in which two people, ideas, or statements agree with each other; If you do something of your own accord, you do it because you want to, without being asked or forced.

synonym agreement; unity

word family according; accordance

related phrase (in) accord with; with one accord

Example 1 His behavior does not accord with his principles.

Example 2 The teachers commended him with one accord.

⑤ **publicize** ['pʌblɪsaɪz] ***vt.*** **(publicized/publicized/publicizing)**

to give information about something to the public, so that they know about it; If you publicize a fact or event, you make it widely known to the public.

synonym post; publish

word family public; publicity

related phrase well/widely/highly publicized

Example 1 If you make us your agent in China, we will try our best to push and publicize your products.

Example 2 Many fast food restaurants publicize this change, but you can ask what kind of frying oil is used in any restaurant.

⑥ **sentiment** ['sentɪmənt] ***n.***

an opinion or feeling you have about something; feelings of pity, love, sadness, etc. that are often considered to be too strong or not suitable for a particular situation

synonym mood; emotion; affection

word family sentimental; sentimentally

related phrase public sentiment; moral sentiment

Example 1 He has illustrated this sentiment thoroughly in a pantomime.

Example 2 This kind of sentiment is a very interesting combination of superiority and inferiority.

⑦ **diversify** [daɪ'vɜːsɪfaɪ] ***vt.*** **(diversified/diversified/diversifying)**

If a business, company, country, etc. diversifies, it increases the range of goods or services it produces; to change something or to make it change so that there is more variety

synonym vary; variegate

antonym simplify; singularize

word family diverse; diversified; diversity; diversification

related phrase diversify management; diversify into

Example 1 The company is planning to diversify into other activities for fear of going bankrupt.

Example 2 We need to diversify the circus and add some clowns.

⑧ reinforce [ˌriːɪn'fɔːs] *vt.* (reinforced/reinforced/reinforcing)

to give support to an opinion, idea, or feeling, and make it stronger; to make part of a building, structure, piece of clothing, etc. stronger; To reinforce an army or a police force means to make it stronger by increasing its size or providing it with more weapons; To reinforce a position or place means to make it stronger by sending more soldiers or weapons.

synonym enhance; cement

word family reinforced; reinforcement

related phrase reinforce the management; reinforce an idea

Example 1 The film reinforces the orthodox idea that women should be pretty and dumb.

Example 2 If we reinforce the traffic security education gravely and more people comply with traffic regulations, I believe one day traffic accidents can be avoided.

⑨ inherent [ɪn'hɪərənt; -'herənt] *adj.*

A quality that is inherent in something is a natural part of it and cannot be separated from it; The inherent qualities of something are the necessary and natural parts of it.

synonym internal; native; intrinsic

word family inherently; inherence

related phrase inherent value; inherent law

Example 1 You should be able to support accurate planning and scheduling with the help of the architecture by analyzing the complexity and risk factors inherent in the components.

Example 2 I do sincerely believe that we all have some inherent good in us, but sometimes it's difficult to keep that good in us when bad things happen.

⑩ render ['rendə] *vt.* (rendered/rendered/rendering)

to give something to someone or do something, because it is your duty or because someone expects you to; to cause someone or something to be in a particular condition; to express or present something in a particular way

synonym introduce; present

word family rendering

related phrase render services; render sth. as

Example 1 Juries nearly always render verdicts with which I agree.

Example 2 Lesson six shows you how to render the final report on the catering business model.

⑪ **derive** [dɪ'raɪv] ***vi./vt.*** **(derived/derived/deriving)**

to get something, especially an advantage or a pleasant feeling, from something; to develop or come from something else

synonym originate; stem

word family derived; derivation

related phrase derive from; derive pleasure/enjoyment

Example 1 From this, you can derive the general scope and understanding of the business requirements.

Example 2 We should be judged by the quality of our products and the value investors derive from them.

⑫ **implant** [ɪm'plɑːnt] ***vt.*** **(implanted/implanted/implanting)**

to strongly fix an idea, feeling, attitude, etc. in someone's mind or character; to put something into someone's body by performing a medical operation

synonym plant; grow

word family implantation

related phrase implant sth. in/into sth.

Example 1 A good teacher should implant high ideals in children.

Example 2 The police are also encouraging zoos to implant tiny electronic homing devices under the skin of all valuable animals in their collections.

⑬ **withstand** [wɪð'stænd] ***vt.*** **(withstood/withstood/withstanding)**

to be strong enough to remain unharmed by something such as great heat, cold, pressure, etc.; to defend yourself successfully against people who attack, criticize, or oppose you

word family withstood; withstanding

related phrase withstand test; withstand criticism

Example 1 Don't get me wrong: I adore any romance that can withstand the test of time.

Example 2 The Soviet government has appealed for international help, saying it may not have sufficient resources to withstand another berserk gale.

⑭ **conclude** [kən'kluːd] ***vi./vt.*** **(concluded/concluded/concluding)**

to decide that something is true after considering all the information you have; to complete something you have been doing, especially for a long time

synonym complete; finish

word family conclusive; concluding

related phrase conclude an agreement; conclude with

Example 1 What can we conclude from the conversation about the genesis of buffet?

Example 2 As you conclude the discussion, ask about the next steps in the hiring process to fill up the vacancy.

⑮ **apprehensive** [ˌæprɪ'hensɪv] ***adj.***

worried or nervous about something that you are going to do, or about the future; Someone who is apprehensive is afraid that something bad may happen.

synonym	troubled; worried; uncomfortable
word family	apprehend; apprehensively
related phrase	apprehensive awareness; be apprehensive about

Example 1 Still, people living in the area appear to be growing increasingly apprehensive as the storm approaches.

Example 2 But, also, as if he were apprehensive that his proposal might get him punished.

⑯ **import** [(for *v.*) ɪm'pɔːt; (for *n.*) 'ɪm-] ***n./vt.*** **(imported/imported/importing)**

a product that is brought from one country into another so that it can be sold there, or the business of doing this; importance or meaning; to bring a product from one country into another so that it can be sold there; to introduce something new or different in a place where it did not previously exist; to move information from one computer to another

synonym	input; inlet
antonym	export
word family	importation; important; importance
related phrase	import and export; import license; import from

Example 1 You can export this profile so that other users can simply import the profile.

Example 2 Just barely behind in import is one of the world's great music events: Jazz and Disco Gala.

⑰ **innocent** ['ɪnəs(ə)nt] ***adj.***

not guilty of a crime; done or said without intending to harm or offend anyone; If someone is innocent, they did not commit a crime that they have been accused of.

synonym	simple; clear; pure
antonym	guilty; sinful; convicted
word family	innocence; innocently
related phrase	innocent of; innocent love

Example 1 She exclaimed that she was innocent and not a hypocrite.

Example 2 Now, you just killed an innocent civilian, but it could have also been a car bomber.

⑱ **dwell** [dwel] ***vi.*** **(dwelled/dwelled/dwelling)**

to live in a particular place; If you dwell on something, especially something unpleasant, you think,

speak, or write about it a lot or for quite a long time.

synonym live; reside in

word family dwelled

related phrase dwell in; dwell upon

Example 1 We dwell in the country but work in the city.

Example 2 People dwell in the villas made of durable material.

⑲ **unanimous** [juːˈnænɪməs] ***adj.***

A unanimous decision, vote, agreement, etc. is one in which all the people involved agree; agreeing completely about something

synonym undisputed; unobjectionable

antonym disputed

word family unanimously

related phrase unanimous agreement/approval; unanimous in (doing) sth.

Example 1 The view was unanimous and adamant: we must finish the job.

Example 2 People were unanimous in support of the peace effort.

⑳ **imitate** [ˈɪmɪteɪt] ***vt.*** **(imitated/imitated/imitating)**

to copy the way someone behaves, speaks, moves, etc., especially in order to make people laugh; to copy something because you think it is good

synonym copy; simulate

word family imitation; imitator; imitative

related phrase imitate system; imitate sounds

Example 1 Some parrots can imitate vocal sounds and repeat words and sentences.

Example 2 You need not to pretend and imitate others for whatever reasons.

㉑ **integrity** [ɪnˈtegrɪtɪ] ***n.***

the quality of being honest and strong about what you believe to be right; the state of being united as one complete thing

synonym honesty; completeness

word family integral; integrally

related phrase territorial integrity; moral integrity

Example 1 Anyone can read the syllabus, but you can check the integrity of the content.

Example 2 How do you do this and still maintain a high level of data integrity and consistency?

㉒ **dedicate** [ˈdedɪkeɪt] ***vt.*** **(dedicated/dedicated/dedicating)**

to give all your attention and effort to one particular thing; If you say that someone has dedicated

themselves to something, you approve of the fact that they have decided to give a lot of time and effort to it because they think that it is important.

synonym devote; sacrifice

word family dedicated; dedication

related phrase dedicate to; dedicate oneself to

Example 1 To her I dedicate this myth book on messiah.

Example 2 She told herself that she would dedicate her life to scientific studies.

㉓ **differ** ['dɪfə] ***vi./vt.*** **(differed/differed/differing)**

to be different from something in some way; If two people or groups differ about something, they have opposite opinions.

synonym divide; differentiate

antonym assimilate; unify

word family difference; different

related phrase differ from; differ in; differ with

Example 1 These two regions differ greatly in climate and moisture.

Example 2 We differ with them on this point.

㉔ **portray** [pɔː'treɪ] ***vt.*** **(portrayed/portrayed/portraying)**

to describe or represent something or someone; to act the part of a character in a play, film, or television program

synonym describe; represent

word family portrayal; portrayer

related phrase portray sb./sth. as sth.

Example 1 His most famous painting portrayed the death of Satan.

Example 2 She portrays a hostage in the hit film.

㉕ **cram** [kræm] ***vi./vt.*** **(crammed/crammed/cramming)**

to force something into a small space; to do a lot of activities in a short period of time; If you are cramming for an examination, you are learning as much as possible in a short time just before you take the examination.

synonym stuff

word family crammer

related phrase cram for; cram sth. into

Example 1 High school students are frequently enrolled in extra-curricular classes to cram for the English component of the university entrance exam.

Example 2 She told us not to cram for exams, and to pay more attention to communicating than memorizing.

㉖ all of a sudden

happening unexpectedly; without warning

synonym suddenly; all at once; abruptly

Example 1 All of a sudden, I was a child again, watching my grandfather with his silver-white hair and twinkling blue eyes.

Example 2 Foreign companies buy shares in European companies and all of a sudden you lose your job.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

agony	ample	assert	boast	cartoon
cheerful	choir	compose	concession	consent
consist	eager	episode	esteem	fabulous
fame	furious	glamor	hail	Hamlet
handsome	importance	jealous	likewise	media
mega	mode	pea	poet	prior
prop	recite	regime	rigid	romance
romantic	schoolboy	Shakespeare	stereotype	strive
subconscious	theme	tolerance	transit	universe
vivid	weep	whoa		

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Why animations go popular on the network?
2. What are the features of Chinese animation?

Chinese-style Origins Give Life to Domestic Animation

"There are a thousand Hamlets in a thousand people's eyes."—Shakespeare

From the Disney-made *Zootopia*[1] to the recent Shinkai-style animation feature *Your Name*[2], it is pretty common to see one or two animations arose a heated discussion among viewers every year, and 2016 was no exception. *Your Name* portrays the magical yet romantic story between two young people. Mitsuha, the leading female role, is a high school girl dwelling in the town of Itomori. She is fed up with her life in the countryside and aspires to be a handsome Tokyo boy in her next life. Taki, the leading male character, is also a schoolboy from high school but living in Tokyo. One day,

he wakes up and realizes that he is Mitsuha. Later, Taki and Mitsuha realize they have been transited into each other's bodies. They start communicating with each other by leaving notes on paper or leaving messages in each other's phones. As time passes, they become used to the body swap and start stepping into each other's lives. *Your Name* has been praised both at home and abroad. The movie also attains a high score of 8.7 points on Douban[3], the Chinese version of IMDb, for the fantastic drawing style, interesting and moving story plots, as well as provoking strong emotions among viewers about innocent romance.

These mega hit animations may shape several vivid characters with fascinating animation effects or boast an interesting yet rigid story line. However, they are seldom made in China. But that trend could be in the past. China never lacks access to quality animation productions. The obstacle consists in how to translate them successfully and launch them into the market, but young Chinese animation creators are on the move.

At the beginning of 2017, a nine-minute short animation episode titled *Love Sick* swept the network and caused sensation. Whoa! Since its initial release on December 23, the animation has already reached 100 million hits within ten days on Chinese social media platforms, including Vmovie. com[4], Miaopai. com[5] and Bilibili[6]. In addition to its enormous popularity on the network, *Love Sick* has been unanimously well-received among movie-goers. It has scored a high grade of 8.8 points on Douban Movie. Regarded by quite a few net citizens as the first touching animation in 2017 to bring you into tears, *Love Sick* has swept a wave of Chinese style for domestic animation productions.

Originating from "Love Pea[7]", a noted poem written by poet Wang Wei[8], as the creation inspiration, overall *Love Sick* tells a sentimental love story between a notable figure from the Qing Dynasty called Wang Chutong and his childhood girlfriend Liu Niang. In the animation, they fall in love with each other but Liu Niang's family forces her to marry a wealthy man, resulting in a failed marriage. After many ups and downs, Wang and Liu meet again and decide to take care of each other in the future as a brother-and-sister relationship, not as lovers, which causes viewers to weep over their affection.

Actually, *Love Sick* is just part of the anticipated Chinese animation project "Jiading 800 Anniversary". Jiading once was a county in ancient China and got the name in 1218 during the Song Dynasty. In ancient history, Jiading is home to many men of letters.

To promote traditional Chinese culture, the program picked 16 stories that happened here and adapted them into their own animations. Some stories may derive from local stories while others from poems.

"The idea of implanting Chinese poems into animations is fabulous. When I was a child, I was forced to recite many poems for struggling with the cramming examination-oriented education regime. I couldn't understand the complicated feelings hidden behind the lines. However, when I grew up and saw the animation, I, all of a sudden, taste the strong Chinese sentiments behind the poems, and I think it is a new way to broadcast traditional fine culture," one Chinese journalist Jasmine said.

"For modern people, social media including WeChat, Weibo and apps have become major information channels. People like to watch news and videos on these platforms. To some degree, traditional education on fine culture from books has been replaced already. Perhaps *Love Sick* has imported a new mode to publicize our fine culture," said Professor Xu Zhaoshou from Northwest Normal University.

How does such a short animation go widespread on the network?

The animation *Love Sick* is made by a group of young animation creators with profound insights and outstanding abilities.

"To be honest, it is quality. I am confident to say everything in the animation withstands the test of history," Peng Qingzheng, director of the animation answered.

"Upon making up my mind to do the program, I have tried my best to render the viewers a sense of reality," Peng told.

"From the background props to every word spoken by the characters, I have done a lot of studies to make them conform to the historical facts. I also invited historian Xu Zhengwei, who is familiar with Jiading history and culture, as my consulter," said Peng.

Furthermore, Chinese mountain-and-water painting skills and Chinese-style music have added glamor to the success of the animation.

"Frankly speaking, I am not a master of Chinese brush paintings. At the preparation stage, I bought ample related books for studying. At the creation stage, I cooperated with my team members to integrate the Chinese brush painting style into many scenes. For instance, the speed and sound of raindrops may vary from time to time to reflect on the mood of the leading characters," Peng said.

"Also, it is worthwhile to notice that the background music, created by Yi Fenglin, is an essential part of the animation. The theme song is turning the *Love Pea* poem into a rhythm and having a child choir constantly sing it. Meanwhile, our team invited the musician Wei Zhuocheng to compose six partitas on the basis of theme songs. When the characters are happy, excited, cheerful, sad, apprehensive, desperate or jealous or even furious, we play different rhythm to reinforce the feelings, and it works well," Peng added.

As a matter of fact, the director did not plan to release the second part of the animation at first. "People may get used to a happy ending from some Disney movies. But not every story should end in this way, as life is not that perfect. Sometimes, a story with a little regret and agony can really touch the deep heart of viewers," Peng said.

However, given the enormous popularity of *Love Sick* and the enlarged expectation from animation-lovers, the director has to reconsider his idea.

According to Peng, in comparison with the first part of the story told from the perspective of Wang Chutong, the second part will try what differs from the stereotype and follow the story line of Liu Niang, from the perspective of a female.

With regard to the specific content of the story, the director said that he had not reached an accord with the screenwriter and made no concession. Peng was eager to endow the roles with more character attributes and interpret the Chinese-style elements in more diversified ways. Therefore, it will still take time to conclude the final story.

Many movie-goers have hailed Peng as the next Shinkai, but he did not consent with this. "It is my honor to be referred to in that way, but I am who I am. Every animation creator has his own style that cannot be copied by others, and I do not want to imitate others likewise," the director said. "Hayao Miyazaki is skillful in discussing the human-nature relationship through animations while Makoto Shinkai is known as the 'Father of Wallpaper' for his conscientious efforts in scenery drawing. I am still in the process of exploring, striving to shape my own style one day."

In response to his growing fame, Peng said he sometimes feels stressed but usually finds happiness through his work.

"Animation is my dedicated career and my deepest interest, and it will not change, I am pretty sure," the director said. "There is still a long way to go prior to reaching my goals. For example, I hope my works can hit the big screen in the future," Peng added.

One net citizen named Tenith asserted that China needs to translate Chinese virtues and notions into animation and at the same time make these animations easily recognizable to the whole world. One element is that parallel identification is needed, meaning, e.g. that when audiences from the English world watch the Chinese cartoon, they can identify common values and philosophy that they want to share with the Chinese, or as they recognize Chinese values or elements, they can appreciate that they all comply with good human values, like liberty, integrity, courtesy, tolerance and esteem. When values are universal, acceptance is there. Hence to be marketable, it is of vital importance that Chinese notions and virtues exhibit their inherent universal values. It's essential to influence the world subconsciously towards this attribute. Following this, there must be powerful marketing tactic that comes with publicity.

(Adapted from http: //www. chinadaily. com. cn/culture/2017-01/12/content_27933171. htm)

Notes

① *Zootopia*

Zootopia is a 2016 American 3D computer-animated buddy comedy-adventure film produced by Walt Disney Animation Studios and released by Walt Disney Pictures. It is the 55th Disney animated feature film. The film details the unlikely partnership between a rabbit police officer and a red fox con artist as they uncover a conspiracy involving the disappearance of savage predator inhabitants of a mammalian metropolis. *Zootopia* premiered at the Brussels Animation Film Festival in Belgium on February 13, 2016, and went into general theatrical release in conventional 2D, Disney Digital 3D, RealD 3D and IMAX 3D formats in the United States on March 4. The film received favorable reviews. It opened to a record-breaking box office success in several countries and earned a worldwide gross of over $1 billion, making it the fourth highest-grossing film of 2016 and the 28th highest-grossing film of all time. The film was chosen by the American Film Institute as one of the top ten films of 2016, and won the Academy Award, Golden Globe, Critics' Choice Movie Award and Annie Award for Best Animated Feature Film, as well as receiving a nomination for the BAFTA Award for Best Animated Film.

② *Your Name*

Your Name is a 2016 Japanese anime film written and directed by Makoto Shinkai. Based on his novel of the same name published a month before the film's premiere, *Your Name* tells the story of a high school girl in rural Japan and a high school boy in Tokyo who swap bodies. *Your Name* was animated by CoMix Wave Films, and distributed by Toho. It premiered at the Anime Expo 2016 convention in Los Angeles, California on July 3, 2016, and in Japan on August 26, 2016. It received critical acclaim for its animation and emotional impact, and was also a major commercial success, becoming the fourth highest-grossing film of all time in Japan, the eighth

highest-grossing traditionally animated film and the highest-grossing anime film worldwide, with a total gross of more than $353 million.

③ Douban

Douban. com, launched on March 6, 2005, is a Chinese social networking service website allowing registered users to record information and create content related to films, books, music, recent events and activities in Chinese cities. It can be seen as one of the most influential web 2.0 websites in China. Douban also owns an Internet radio station, which ranks No. 1 in iOS App Store in 2012. Unlike Facebook and Renren, Douban is open to both registered and unregistered users. For registered users, the site recommends potentially interesting books, movies and music to them in addition to serving as a social network website and record keeper; for unregistered users, the site is a place to find ratings and reviews of said media. It was described as a dominator in the area of music sites in China by the *New York Times*. Douban has about 200 million registered users in 2013. The site serves pan-Chinese users, and its contents are in Chinese. It covers works and media in Chinese and in foreign languages. Some Chinese authors and critics register their official personal pages on the site.

④ Vmovie. com

It's the largest movie and video sharing platform.

⑤ Miaopai. com

Miaopai is a Chinese video sharing and live streaming service with 70 million daily active users.

⑥ Bilibili

Bilibili is a video sharing website themed around animation, comic, and game based in China, where users can submit, view, and add commentary subtitles on videos. It is a domain having. com extension. This website uses Adobe Flash and HTML5 technology to display user submitted videos hosted by third-party sources, while featuring a real-time overlaying subtitle system for interactive playback experience. With the fast growing number of visitors on Bilibili, Bilibili decided to expand their functions. Besides the dominant themes, now Bilibili offers videos about music, dancing, science, entertainment, movie, drama, and fashion. Also Bilibili provides live broadcasting rooms where the host of the room is able to broadcast live and viewers are able to interact with the host.

⑦ Love Pea

Red bean, also love pea, is characterized by its hard texture and bloody a beating heart, red and shiny; it will never fade. It is a token of love in Chinese traditional culture.

⑧ Wang Wei

He was a Tang Dynasty Chinese poet, musician, painter and statesman. He was one of the most famous men of arts and letters of his time. Many of his poems are preserved, and twenty-nine were included in the highly influential 18th-century anthology *Three Hundred Tang Poems*. Wang Wei was a "very great master" of the *jueju*: many of his quatrains depict quiet scenes of water and mist, with few details and little human presence.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) *Your Name* has become a hit among the animations.
2. ( ) China lacks access to quality animation productions.
3. ( ) *Love Sick* has already reached 1,000 million hits within eight days on Chinese social media platforms.
4. ( ) "Love Pea" is a poem by Wang Wei in the Tang Dynasty.
5. ( ) Traditional education on fine culture from books has been replaced by social media already.
6. ( ) The producer cooperated with a lot of professional people to make the movie.
7. ( ) The producer thinks that a story with regret and agony can really touch the deep heart of viewers.
8. ( ) Finally, the producer follows a stereotype to finish the second part.
9. ( ) Many people adore the movie and appraise the producer greatly.
10. ( ) One net citizen disapproves the practice of the producer.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. The movie also ________ a high score of 8.7 points on Douban, the Chinese version of IMDb, for the ________ drawing style, interesting and ________ story plots, as well as ________ strong emotions among viewers about ________ romance.
2. The obstacle ________ in how to translate them successfully and ________ them into the market, but young Chinese animation creators are ________ the move.
3. After many ups and ________, Wang and Liu meet again and decide to take care of each other in the

future as a brother-and-sister ________, not as lovers, which causes viewers to ________ over their ________.

4. However, when I grew up and saw the animation, I, all ________ a sudden, taste the strong Chinese ________ behind the poems, and I think it is a new way to ________ traditional fine culture.
5. When the characters are happy, excited, cheerful, sad, apprehensive, desperate or jealous or even ________, we play different ________ to ________ the feelings, and it works well.
6. According to Peng, in ________ with the first part of the story told from the ________ of Wang Chutong, the second part will try what ________ from the ________ and follow the story line of Liu Niang, from the perspective of a female.
7. Peng was eager to ________ the roles with more character ________ and interpret the Chinese-style elements in more ________ ways. Therefore, it will still take time to ________ the final story.
8. It is my honor to be ________ to in that way, but I am who I am. Every animation creator has his own style that cannot be ________ by others, and I do not want to ________ others ________.
9. Hayao Miyazaki is ________ in discussing the human-nature relationship through ________ while Makoto Shinkai is known as the "Father of Wallpaper" for his ________ efforts in scenery drawing.
10. It's ________ to influence the world ________ towards this attribute. Following this, there must be powerful marketing ________ that comes with ________.

VI. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VII. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

differ	import	dwell	inherent	withstand
apprehensive	implant	derive	conclude	

VIII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. She never has to <u>cram</u> for tests because she prepares ahead of time. (   )

   A. mug up B. carefully prepare C. attend D. escape

2. A deep sense of patriotism had been <u>implanted</u> in him by his father. (   )

   A. invested B. welded C. darted D. rusted

3. To get real results we need to engage <u>conscientious</u>, hard-working people in the effort. (   )

   A. sulphur B. responsible C. excellent D. serial

4. Human nature seems to endow people with the ability to size up everybody in the world but themselves. (   )

   A. inundate   B. donate   C. equip   D. integrate

5. It is unlikely that the court will render an opinion before November 5. (   )

   A. offer   B. assert   C. pleat   D. conform

6. This story should be considered a case by case analysis and not a stereotype of a whole nation. (   )

   A. solution   B. convention   C. trend   D. hump

7. These lines, or circles, are parallel—meaning that they are equally distant from each other at any point around the world. (   )

   A. horizontal   B. interacted   C. uniform   D. squat

8. He has a sense of humor plus tolerance and patience. (   )

   A. virtue   B. carefulness   C. kindness   D. endurance

9. I am prepared to make some concession on minor details, but I cannot compromise on fundamentals. (   )

   A. coming to terms   B. revision   C. sponge   D. importance

10. The diverse representation at the event gave a fascinating insight into different global cinema cultures. (   )

   A. prop   B. patrol   C. perception   D. stump

IX. Word Formation

Directions: Do you know the meanings of the following prefixes? Can you list more words with these prefixes? Come on!

1. ex-—exclude; ________; ________
2. anti-—antismoking; ________; ________
3. ab-—abstract; ________; ________
4. over-—overwork; ________; ________
5. counter-—counterattack; ________; ________

X. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. From the Disney-made *Zootopia* to the recent Shinkai-style animation feature *Your Name*, it is pretty common to see one or two animations arose a heated discussion among viewers every year, and 2016 was no exception.
2. The obstacle consists in how to translate them successfully and launch them into the market, but young Chinese animation creators are on the move.
3. Regarded by quite a few net citizens as the first touching animation in 2017 to bring you into tears, *Love Sick* has swept a wave of Chinese style for domestic animation productions.
4. Originating from "Love Pea", a noted poem written by poet Wang Wei, as the creation

inspiration, overall *Love Sick* tells a sentimental love story between a notable figure from the Qing Dynasty called Wang Chutong and his childhood girlfriend Liu Niang.

5. With regard to the specific content of the story, the director said that he had not reached an accord with the screenwriter and made no concession.

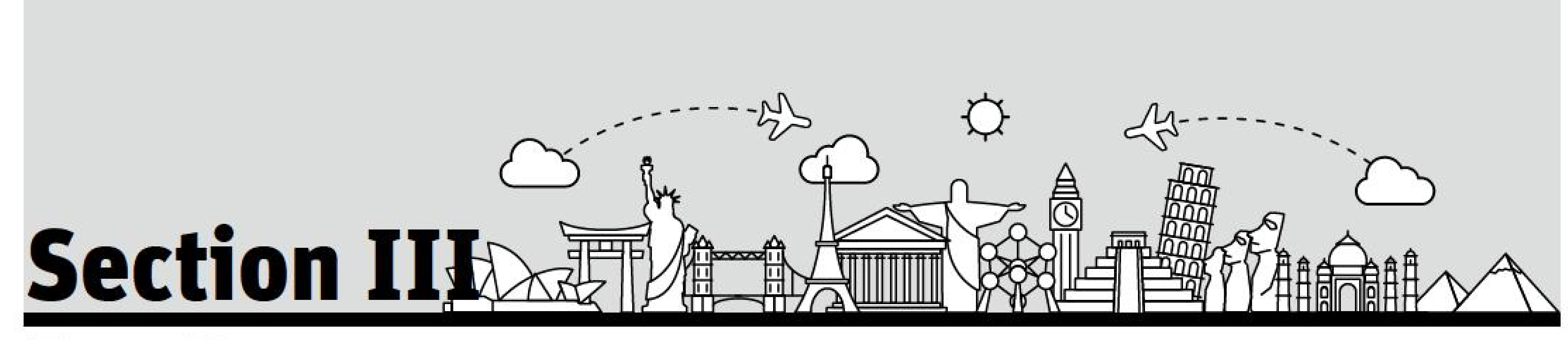
XI. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of every word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

<u>Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.</u>

1. bee eagle spider lark owl sparrow ( ) ______________
2. crayon locomotive minibus automobile tanker ( ) ______________
3. Ethiopia Korea Pakistan Vietnam Wellington ( ) ______________
4. cocktail lager sherry gin cola ( ) ______________
5. walkman tradesman salesman postman milkman fireman ( ) ______________



Section III

Text B: Olympic Games: Paris and LA “Only Want 2024 Games”

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **abandon** [ə'bændən] ***n./vt.*** **(abandoned/abandoned/abandoning)**

If you abandon a place, thing, or person, you leave the place, thing, or person permanently or for a long time, especially when you should not do so; If you abandon an activity or piece of work, you stop doing it before it is finished; If you abandon an idea or way of thinking, you stop having that idea or thinking in that way.

synonym	disregard; taboo; desert; quit
word family	abandoned; abandonment
related phrase	abandoned children; with abandon

Example 1 He claimed that his parents had abandoned him when he was 6 years old.

Example 2 Only they will not abandon me; only they will not betray.

② **alternate** ['ɔːltəneɪt] ***vt.*** **(alternated/alternated/alternating)**

When you alternate two things, you keep using one then the other; When one thing alternates with another, the first regularly occurs after the other.

synonym	intersperse; interchange; exchange; swap
word family	alternation; alternately
related phrase	alternate reality gaming

Example 1 Her aggressive moods alternated with gentle or more cooperative states.

Example 2 The band alternated romantic love songs with bouncy dance numbers.

③ **immigrate** ['ɪmɪgreɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(immigrated/immigrated/immigrating)**

to come into a country in order to live there permanently; If someone immigrates to a particular country, they come to live or work in that country, after leaving the country where they were born.

synonym	migrate
word family	immigration; immigrant
related phrase	immigrate into; immigrate from

Example 1 The stunning lack of such constitutional guarantees is just one reason why many of China's entrepreneurial elite seek to immigrate to the U.S., Canada or Australia.

Example 2 However, I oppose illegal immigration because it corrupts the whole immigration system, and it is unfair to the millions of persons who wait for years to immigrate to this country legally.

④ chill [tʃɪl] *n./vt.* (chilled/chilled/chilling)

When you chill something or when it chills, you lower its temperature so that it becomes colder but does not freeze; to relax completely instead of feeling angry, tired, or nervous; a feeling of coldness; a sudden feeling of fear or worry, especially because of something cruel or violent

synonym cold; refrigerate; freeze

antonym heated; warm

word family chillness; chilling

related phrase chilled food; chilling effect; morning chill

Example 1 Chill the fruit salad until serving time.

Example 2 A glass of chilled champagne was served to table 3 just now.

⑤ degenerate [dɪ'dʒenəreɪt] *vt.* (degenerated/degenerated/degenerating)

to become worse; If you say that someone or something degenerates, you mean that they become worse in some way, for example, weaker, lower in quality, or more dangerous.

synonym degrade; weaken; exasperate

antonym better; improve

word family degeneration; degenerative

related phrase degenerate distribution; degenerate into

Example 1 When media organs fail fulfilling their basic responsibilities, they degenerate quickly into democracy's undertaker.

Example 2 Many aspects of the classic development process cause stakeholder relationships to degenerate into mutual distrust.

⑥ competent ['kɒmpɪtənt] *adj.*

Someone who is competent is efficient and effective; having enough skill or knowledge to do something to a satisfactory standard

synonym capable; proficient; sufficient

word family competence; competency

related phrase a competent governor; competent in

Example 1 Donald was respected by people in the town, since he was a loyal, distinguished and very competent civil servant.

Example 2 People believe you're competent when they think you know what to do and how to do it.

⑦ **construct** [kən'strʌkt] ***vt.*** **(constructed/constructed/constructing)**

If you construct something such as a building, road, or machine, you build it or make it; to build something such as a house, bridge, road, etc.

synonym build; make; form; create

word family constructable; construction; constructive

related phrase language construct; construct validity

Example 1 The French constructed a series of fortresses from Dunkirk on the Channel coast to Douai.

Example 2 The boxes should be constructed from rough-sawn timber.

⑧ **consign** [kən'saɪn] ***vt.*** **(consigned/consigned/consigning)**

to send something somewhere, especially in order to sell it; To consign something or someone to a place where they will be forgotten about, or to an unpleasant situation or place, means to put them there.

synonym put away; commit; deposit; relegate

word family consignable; consignation

related phrase be consigned to history; consign sb./sth. to sth.

Example 1 With better economic condition, the old route without a signpost in this village is consigned to history.

Example 2 The far-reaching pact has also made sure the Cold War is consigned to history with a joint peace declaration.

⑨ **contemplate** ['kɒntəmpleɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(contemplated/contemplated/contemplating)**

to think about something that you might do in the future; If you contemplate an action, you think about whether to do it or not.

synonym consider; plan; propose

word family contemplator; contemplation; contemplative

related phrase contemplate a career as ...; contemplate doing sth.

Example 1 For a time he contemplated a career as an army medical doctor.

Example 2 She contemplates leaving for the sake of the kids.

⑩ **contradict** [ˌkɒntrə'dɪkt] ***vt.*** **(contradicted/contradicted/contradicting)**

to disagree with something, especially by saying that the opposite is true; If you contradict someone, you say that what they have just said is wrong, or suggest that it is wrong by saying something different.

synonym differ; deny

word family contradiction; contradictory

related phrase contradict oneself

Example 1 Her version contradicted the Government's claim that they were shot after being challenged.

Example 2 Her words contradicted with the claim early that month, which caused a controversy among the public.

⑪ **corrupt** [kə'rʌpt] ***adj./vi.*** **(corrupted/corrupted/corrupting)**

using your power in a dishonest or illegal way in order to get an advantage for yourself; Someone who is corrupt behaves in a way that is morally wrong, especially by doing dishonest or illegal things in return for money or power.

synonym deprave; pervert

antonym honest; incorruptible; cleanhanded

word family corruptness; corruption

related phrase a corrupt government; corrupt officials

Example 1 There were fears that some documents could be stolen and sold on by corrupt officials.

Example 2 They warned him about corrupt cops, drunken army commanders and vicious drug traffickers.

⑫ **criticize** ['krɪtɪsaɪz] ***vi./vt.*** **(criticized/criticized/criticizing)**

If you criticize someone or something, you express your disapproval of them by saying what you think is wrong with them.

synonym find fault with; censure

word family criticism; critique; critic; critical

related phrase criticize sb./sth. for (doing) sth.; criticize sb./sth. as sth.

Example 1 Criticizing children too much may jeopardize their self-esteem.

Example 2 The minister criticized the police for failing to come up with any leads.

⑬ **redeem** [rɪ'di:m] ***vt.*** **(redeemed/redeemed/redeeming)**

to make something less bad; If you redeem yourself or your reputation, you do something that makes people have a good opinion of you again after you have behaved or performed badly.

synonym restore; repair

word family redeemable; redeeming

related phrase redeem points; redeem yourself

Example 1 Customers can then redeem the points they collect for cash or gift cards or even electronics.

Example 2 All you have to do is to collect and accumulate enough points to redeem the attractive bonus gifts.

⑭ **sanction** ['sæŋkʃ(ə)n] ***n./vt.*** **(sanctioned/sanctioned/sanctioning)**

official orders or laws stopping trade, communication, etc. with another country, as a way of forcing its leaders to make political changes; If someone in authority sanctions an action or practice, they officially approve of it and allow it to be done.

synonym approval; penalty

word family sanctified; sanctify

related phrase legal sanction; economic sanction; sanction against

Example 1 The continued abuse of human rights has now led the United States to impose sanctions against the regime.

Example 2 This is so even though the armed forces operate in an ethos of institutional change oriented toward occupational equality and under the federal sanction of equal pay for equal work.

⑮ **spiral** ['spaɪrəl] ***vi./vt.*** **(spiraled/spiraled/spiraling)**

to move in a continuous curve that gets nearer to or further from its central point as it goes round; If a situation spirals, it gets worse, more violent, etc. in a way that cannot be controlled; If debt or the cost of something spirals, it increases quickly in a way that cannot be controlled.

synonym screw; spin

word family spirally; spire

related phrase spiral flow; spiral around

Example 1 I built a test tool to measure the spiral pattern of different species of trees.

Example 2 Unemployment rose and the city went into a spiral of decline.

⑯ **chaos** ['keɪɒs] ***n.***

a situation in which everything is happening in a confused way and nothing is organized or arranged in order; the state of the universe before there was any order

synonym disorder; confusion

antonym order; sequence

related phrase in chaos; economic chaos

Example 1 That is the age of political chaos.

Example 2 The city has restored order out of chaos.

⑰ **postpone** [pəʊs'pəʊn] ***vi./vt.*** **(postponed/postponed/postponing)**

to change the date or time of a planned event or action to a later one; If you postpone an event, you delay it or arrange for it to take place at a later time than was originally planned.

synonym delay

word family postponement

related phrase postpone retirement; postpone doing sth.

Example 1 Financial constraints cause many to skip antenatal care or postpone treatment for minor ailments.

Example 2 During a downturn, analysts most often encourage companies to reduce operating costs, postpone capital expenditures, and focus on gaining or recovering market share.

⑱ **regenerate** [rɪ'dʒenəreɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(regenerated/regenerated/regenerating)**

to make something develop and grow strong again; to grow again, or make something grow again; To regenerate something means to develop and improve it to make it more active, successful, or important, especially after a period when it has been getting worse.

synonym reform; revivify; innovate

word family regeneration; regenerative

related phrase regenerate economy; regenerate health

Example 1 If we can regenerate the brain, that would be interesting.

Example 2 There are creatures that can regenerate heart tissue without any help from human scientists.

⑲ **distract** [dɪ'strækt] ***vt.*** **(distracted/distracted/distracting)**

to take someone's attention away from something by making them look at or listen to something else

synonym shift; divert from

antonym concentrate; absorb; immerse

word family distraction; distracted; distractedly

related phrase distract from; distract attention from

Example 1 Coverage of the war was used to distract attention from other matters.

Example 2 Tom admits that playing video games sometimes distracts him from his homework.

⑳ **tackle** ['tæk(ə)l] ***vt.*** **(tackled/tackled/tackling)**

to try to deal with a difficult problem; to talk to someone in order to deal with a difficult problem; If you tackle someone, you attack them and fight them.

synonym dispose

word family tackling; tackler

related phrase tackle the problem; tackle sb. about sth.

Example 1 The first reason to tackle these problems is to save children's lives.

Example 2 I tackled him about how anyone could live amidst so much poverty.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

digital	Euro	flex	generator	generate
Hungary	loyal	optimist	reign	resent
Brazil	congress	crossroads	crow	dilemma
jeopardy	journalist	Olympic	relay	venue

Part 2　Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Are Paris and Los Angeles interested in holding 2028 Olympics? Why or why not?
2. Bach, president of International Olympic Committee, mentioned the Olympic movement needed evolution. Why did he say so?

Olympic Games: Paris and LA "Only Want 2024 Games"

Paris and Los Angeles say they are only interested in hosting the 2024 Olympics and Paralympics—and not the 2028 Games.

There have been suggestions that the International Olympic Committee may award both the 2024 and 2028 Games in September.

"2024 is now or never for us," ex-French athlete and co-chair Tony Estanguet told BBC Sport. The LA 2024 committee later issued a statement saying their bid represents "the right city at this critical time". The American city's statement added: "With all permanent venues already built and 88% public support, only LA 2024 offers the lowest-risk and truly sustainable solution for the future of the Olympic movement in 2024 and beyond."

The 2024 Games are scheduled to be awarded at September's IOC[1] summit in Lima[2], Peru, with Paris the favorite to win. "We believe we have the strongest offer but it is only available for 2024," added Estanguet. "We can't host the Games in 2028 because we don't have the project available for 2028."

"We have the guarantees, we have the public support, we have the political support, we have 95% of existing venues. This is the fourth bid from Paris and 2024 is the centenary of the Games in Paris." There have been reports that the losers of the 2024 bid could be awarded the following Games in 2028. "All options are on the table, and this includes also the 2024-2028 procedure and vote," said IOC president Thomas Bach[3] last week.

Estanguet, a three-time Olympic canoeing champion, says the bid committee has been in discussions with the IOC since the beginning of the bidding process. He added that the bid committee has talked through the issue of 2028 with the IOC on several occasions.

Earlier this week, Eric Garcetti, the mayor of LA, warned the Americans won't be distracted of winning the right to host the 2024 Games. "We are competing for 2024 and we are competent," he told inside the games. "Full stop. We have never contemplated anything else."

Withdrawal of Budapest's Bid to Stage the 2024 Olympics

(interview extract by Dan Roan, BBC sports editor)

The newly elected International Olympic Committee president confidently told me that after a successful reign by his predecessor Jacques Rogge, the Olympic movement needed mere evolution. But as we approach four years of Bach's leadership—and with fresh hosting, doping and corruption controversies affecting confidence in his organization—the demands for an Olympic revolution are growing louder by the day.

The recent withdrawal of Budapest's bid to stage the 2024 Games—the fourth city to pull out of the race—is highly embarrassing for the IOC and seems to have left the Olympics at a crossroads, in desperate need of a new vision.

And the knock-on effects of this latest blow to Bach could be extremely significant: a possible double announcement of hosts for both the 2024 and 2028 Games; and perhaps making it more likely that the IOC takes the unprecedented step of banning Russia from the next Winter Olympics, if that is deemed necessary to restore credibility at this critical time.

Last Two Standing

Despite reported opposition from within the IOC, it seems increasingly likely that when its members meet in Lima in September to decide which of the two remaining bidders, Los Angeles or Paris, is awarded the Games, the loser will be told it can host the following edition four years later. This assumes the runner-up for 2024 will actually want to play host in 2028 of course—or indeed be able to. Neither is certain. Plans and partnerships for both bids are based on the cities hosting the event in 2024, and postponing these by another four years may not be possible. But with the IOC now admitting that without recent reforms it could have suffered the ignominy of having no bidders, it seems sensible to try to strike some kind of two-Games deal.

So, why are potential host cities turning their backs on the Games, and how much jeopardy is the Olympics really now in?

In 2014, after six cities had decided not to bid for the 2022 Winter Games—leaving just Almaty[4] and Beijing to choose from—Bach hailed his Agenda 2020 reforms as the answer, designed to encourage flexible and cheaper bids from more potential hosts. Yet three years on, here we are again, with just two bidders left for the 2024 Summer Games. Earlier this month, a referendum in the Swiss canton of Graubuenden, which contains the cities of Davos[5] and St. Moritz[6], ensured there would be no bid for the 2026 Winter Olympics.

The recent chilling images of Rio[7]'s abandoned and crumbling Olympic venues already falling into disrepair, just a few months after they hosted the city's iconic but chaotic Games, have reinforced fears that the size and cost of the global mega-event is out of control and places too great a burden on host cities. At the same time, in London, an investigation is now under way into the spiralling costs of the 2012 Olympic stadium, now approaching £800m.

Meanwhile, in Tokyo, there are renewed concerns that the budget for the 2020 Games could leap to £21bn, four times the initial estimate, despite recent effort to rein in costs, with the city's governor, Yuriko Koike, admitting she had no idea how much money will eventually be spent on the event. No wonder, perhaps, that Boston, Hamburg, Rome and now Budapest have all rejected the chance to stage the 2024 Games. The IOC has blamed local politics for the withdrawal of the

Hungarian capital, although Bach will hope to turn it to his advantage and use it to strengthen his case for more reforms.

The IOC's Fascinating Dilemma

Bach's latest idea is a change to the rules to allow cities bidding for the second time to pay less than those making their first attempt. Bach told German magazine *Stuttgart Nachrichten* that it was unfair to judge Rio's Olympic legacy so soon, and urged critics not to underestimate the transport and environmental benefits the Games had left the Brazilian city, while also reminding them of the regeneration of east London in recent years.

So as they enter the final crucial few months of campaigning, which of the two remaining candidate cities are most likely to benefit from Budapest's withdrawal and get to run the first leg of a possible 2024/2028 relay?

Some observers believe it has merely strengthened Paris' status as a favorite. Given just how hard it clearly now is to attract bidders from Europe, sponsorship expert Tim Crow argues that it is easy to see why the IOC would be unpleasant to risk further alienating more potential candidates by rejecting the iconic capital for a third continuous time—especially for 2024, which will mark 100 years since Paris last hosted the Games.

Add to this the obvious unease caused in some Olympic circles by U.S. President Donald Trump's anti-immigrant rhetoric—and his recent travel ban—and Paris seems a logical choice. Others disagree, however. Journalist Alan Abrahamson argues that the IOC must now turn away from government-backed bids based on large infrastructure or regeneration projects, where taxpayers often end up paying the price when budgets spiral out of control, and instead go for privately funded alternatives.

And that, he insists, means Los Angeles. Unlike in Paris, where 1.5bn euros of public investment is being spent on the construction of an athletes' village and a new aquatics centre, 97% of the American city's major facilities are already built, the kind of sustainability that Bach's Agenda 2020 is meant to be encouraging more of.

It has also not escaped attention that Etienne Thobois, the head of the Paris 2024 bid, was a key consultant for Tokyo 2020—a bid whose original cost estimates now appear wildly optimistic. And at a time when the IOC is desperate to tackle ageing audiences, become more relevant among younger sports fans, and reboot the troubled Olympic brand, California's global reputation for digital technology and enterprise could make sense. It would also please the IOC's most lucrative broadcast partner, NBC and its sponsors, most of which are based in the U.S..

In what is becoming a fascinating dilemma for the IOC, there are various other factors at play. There is the possibility of anti-American resentment from some in the Olympic community at the U.S. Anti-Doping Agency's (USADA[8]) criticism of the IOC's failure to ban Russia from the Rio Games for state-sponsored doping. USADA is now one of the leading voices pushing for an overhaul of the anti-doping system, demanding a better resourced and independent World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA[9]) with real sanctioning powers. A U.S. congressional hearing recently questioned the IOC's medical and scientific director Richard Budgett on anti-doping, with some wondering if the scrutiny could harm Los Angeles' chances.

(Adapted from "Olympic Games: Paris and LA 'Only Want 2024 Games'" of March 2017 BBC)

Notes

① IOC

The International Olympic Committee (IOC; French: Comité International Olympique, CIO) is the supreme authority of the worldwide Olympic movement. It is an international, non-profit, non-governmental organization based in Lausanne, Switzerland. Its mission is enshrined in the Olympic Charter: to support the development of competitive sport by ethical and environmentally sustainable means.

② Lima

Lima (['liːmə]) is the capital and the largest city of Peru. It is located in the valleys of the Chillón, Rímac and Lurín rivers, in the central coastal part of the country, overlooking the Pacific Ocean. Together with the seaport of Callao, it forms a contiguous urban area known as the Lima Metropolitan Area. With a population of more than 10 million, Lima is the most populous metropolitan area of Peru and the second-largest city in the Americas, behind São Paulo. Lima was founded by Spanish conquistador Francisco Pizarro on January 18, 1535, as Ciudad de los Reyes. It became the capital and most important city in the Spanish Viceroyalty of Peru. Following the Peruvian War of Independence, it became the capital of the Republic of Peru. Around one-third of the national population lives in the metropolitan area. Lima is home to one of the oldest higher-learning institutions in the New World.

③ Thomas Bach

Thomas Bach (born on 29 December 1953 in Würzburg, West Germany) is a German lawyer and former Olympic fencer. Bach is the ninth and current President of the International Olympic Committee, and a former member of the German Olympic Sports Confederation Executive Board.

④ Almaty

Almaty (['ælmətɪ]), formerly known as Alma-Ata ([ˌælməˌə'tɑː]), is the largest city in Kazakhstan, with a population of 1,797,431 people, containing 8% of the country's total population. It served as capital of the Kazakh state in its various forms from 1929 to 1997, under the influence of the then Soviet Union and its appointees. Alma-Ata was the host city for a 1978 international conference on Primary Health Care where the Alma Ata Declaration was adopted, marking a paradigm shift in global public health. In 1997, the government relocated the capital to Astana in the north of the country. Almaty continues as the major commercial and cultural center of Kazakhstan, as well as its biggest population center. The city is located in the mountainous area of southern Kazakhstan in the foothills of the Trans-Ili Alatau at an elevation of 2,300–3,000 feet (700–900 m), where the Large and Small Almatinka rivers run into the plain.

⑤ Davos

Davos is an Alpine town, and a municipality in the Prättigau/Davos Region in the canton of Graubünden, Switzerland. It has a permanent population of 11,060 (2016). Davos is located on

the river Landwasser, in the Rhaetian Alps, between the Plessur and Albula Range. The former Alpine resort village consists of two parts: Davos Dorf (Village) to the north-east towards Klosters and further down through the Prättigau to Landquart, and Davos Platz (Place) to the south-west, which opens into the valley of the Landwasser (lit.: country water) and eventually leads to Filisur. During summer season, the Flüela Pass leads south-east into the Lower Engadine. Davos is host to the World Economic Forum (WEF), an annual meeting of global political and business elites and the home of one of Switzerland's biggest ski resorts. At the end of every year it serves as the site of the annual Spengler Cup ice hockey tournament, hosted by the HC Davos local hockey team.

⑥ St. Moritz

St. Moritz is a high Alpine resort in the Engadine in Switzerland, at an elevation of about 1,800 metres (5,910 ft) above sea level. It is Upper Engadine's major village and a municipality in the district of Maloja in the Swiss canton of Graubünden. St. Moritz lies on the southern slopes of the Albula Alps below the Piz Nair (3,056 m or 10,026 ft) overlooking the flat and wide glaciated valley of the Upper Engadine and eponymous lake: Lej da San Murezzan (Romansh for Lake of St. Moritz). It hosted the Winter Olympics in 1928 and 1948.

⑦ Rio

Rio de Janeiro (['riːəu də ʒə'nɛərəu]), or simply Rio, is the second-most populous municipality in Brazil and the sixth-most populous in the Americas. The metropolis is anchor to the Rio de Janeiro metropolitan area, the second-most populous metropolitan area in Brazil and sixth-most populous in the Americas. Rio de Janeiro is the capital of the state of Rio de Janeiro, Brazil's third-most populous state. Part of the city has been designated as a World Heritage Site, named "Rio de Janeiro: Carioca Landscapes between the Mountain and the Sea", by UNESCO on July 1, 2012 as a Cultural Landscape.

⑧ USADA

The United States Anti-Doping Agency is a non-profit, non-governmental organization and the national anti-doping organization (NADO) for the United States. To protect clean competition and the integrity of sport, USADA provides education, leads scientific initiatives, conducts testing, and oversees the results management process. Headquartered in Colorado Springs, Colorado, USADA is a signatory to the World Anti-Doping Code, which harmonizes anti-doping practices around the world and is widely considered the basis for the strongest and strictest anti-doping programs in sports. In 2001, USADA was recognized by the U.S. Congress as "the official anti-doping agency for Olympic, Pan American and Paralympic sport in the United States". The United States has also ratified the UNESCO International Convention against Doping in Sport, the first global international treaty against doping in sport, and largely relies on USADA to carry out this commitment.

⑨ WADA

The World Anti-Doping Agency is a foundation initiated by the International Olympic Committee based in Canada to promote, coordinate and monitor the fight against drugs in sports. The agency's key activities include scientific research, education, development of anti-doping capacities, and monitoring of the World Anti-Doping Code, whose provisions are

enforced by the UNESCO International Convention against Doping in Sport. The aims of the Council of Europe Anti-Doping Convention are also closely aligned with those of WADA.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read through the text and scan for specific details. Circle out the words and phrases you will scan for and put the following events in a chronological order.

1. An iconic but chaotic Olympic game staged by Brazil.
2. Cities like Boston, Budapest, Paris and LA, etc. are competing to stage 2024 Olympics.
3. Budapest stated not to bid for 2024 Olympics.
4. Paris and LA become the last two bidders standing.
5. U.S. President Donald Trump's anti-immigrant policy seemed to make Paris an ideal choice for the 2024 Olympics.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

degenerate	abandon	redeem	spiral
immigrate	competent	postpone	sanction

VII. Word Puzzle

Directions: Read the following sentences from the text and make the right choice.

1. Earlier this week, Eric Garcetti, the mayor of LA, warned the Americans won't be distracted of winning the right to host the 2024 Games. "We are competing for 2024 and we are

competent," ... "distract" here means ________.

A. to concentrate on
B. to draw your attention away
C. to value
D. to devalue

2. The recent chilling images of Rio's abandoned and crumbling Olympic venues already falling into disrepair, ... "disrepair" here means ________.

A. a perfect condition
B. a worn-out condition
C. happiness
D. depression

VIII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. The recent chilling images of Rio's abandoned and crumbling Olympic venues already falling into disrepair, just a few months after they hosted the city's iconic but chaotic Games, have reinforced fears that the size and cost of the global mega-event is out of control and places too great a burden on host cities.
2. Some observers believe it has merely strengthened Paris' status as a favourite. Given just how hard it clearly now is to attract bidders from Europe, sponsorship expert Tim Crow argues that it is easy to see why the IOC would be unpleasant to risk further alienating more potential candidates by rejecting the iconic capital for a third continuous time—especially for 2024, which will mark 100 years since Paris last hosted the Games.

IX. Word Formation

Directions: Match the following words with proper explanations. Consider how to understand the words started with "pro-" in Chinese.

probation provision (provisional *adj.*) prosecute proposition

1. ________ is a period of time during which someone is judging your character and ability before you become a formal employee, in order to see if you are suitable for that type of work.
2. ________ is an offer or a suggestion that someone makes to you before you make a decision.
3. Before a lawyer tries to prove that the person who is on trial is guilty, he or she needs to ________ a case.
4. If you make ________ for something that might happen, you make arrangements before dealing with it.

X. Definition Match

Directions: A prefix is placed at the beginning of a word to modify or change its meaning. "Dis-" is one of these common prefixes. In this part, you will understand the possible meanings of words with this prefix. Read the following sentences and find out proper definitions from A to F for the underlined words.

1. He stopped smoking, discarded cigarette butts and walked into the room immediately.
2. As a professor in Edinburgh, Mr. Thornbury discharged many duties in the university.

3. Representatives should have the power to dismiss civil servants who refuse to work.
4. Lack of sleep disrupts people's abilities to handle stress.
5. If the media distorted reality, it would become a disaster.
6. Tom admits that playing video games sometimes distracts him from his homework.

Definitions

A. To tell employees that they are no longer needed to do the job that they have been doing.

B. You present a report in an untrue way.

C. You get rid of something because you no longer want it or need it.

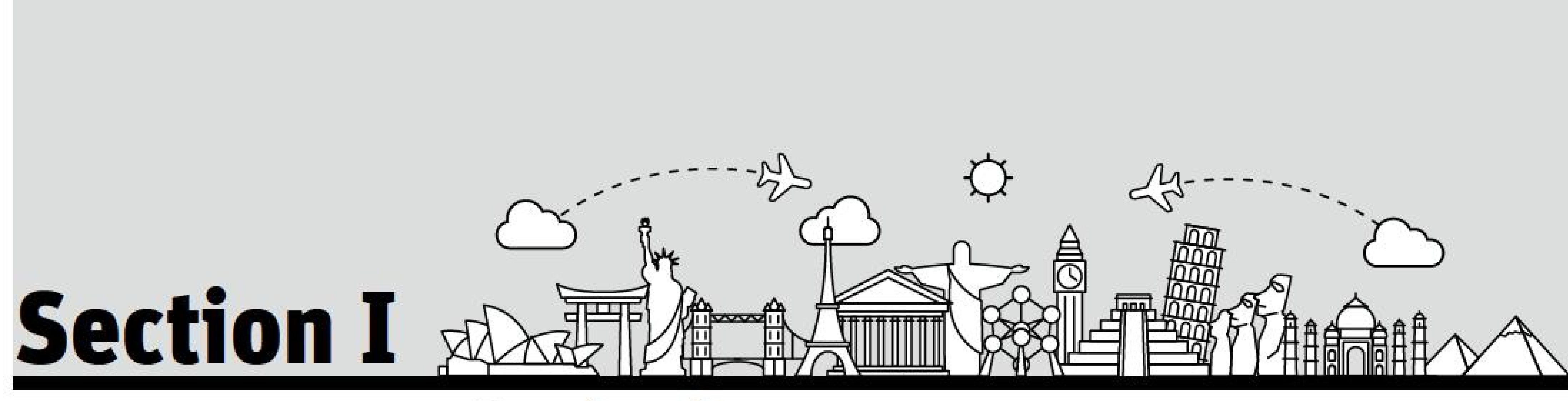
D. They do everything that needs to be done in order to complete them.

E. They cause difficulties that prevent the machines from continuing in a normal way.

F. Something takes your attention away from what you are doing now.

Tips: The prefix "dis-" usually relates to negation and removal of a word, however, there are several exceptions, e.g. "discharge your duty" means to complete your duty other than abandoning your duty. Hence only use the content above as a general guideline while understanding meanings of words.


Unit 4
Law and Morality



Section I

Focus on Prefix (III)

Prefixes' and suffixes' meanings vary and it is important for students to have a thorough understanding of those that are most frequently used. There are many common prefixes and suffixes that may be memorized through the use of lists. Prefixes and suffixes may also be taught through flash card drills, as this is often an effective teaching tool. By studying the most common prefixes and suffixes, students will master the skills needed to become more efficient readers. Not only does an understanding of prefixes' and suffixes' meanings improve reading skills, but it also boosts comprehension. Understanding various prefixes and suffixes is an effective method for boosting test scores as students who excel in this area often become comfortable with the language portion of many exams.

Sources of Prefixes and Their Usages

Many common prefixes and suffixes are based upon Latin or Greek words. Once you understand prefixes' and suffixes' meanings, you will discover your comprehension for many subjects improve. Science-based words, medical terms, historic or archaic words, and terms used in the arts or music field are easy to decipher once you have an understanding of prefixes and suffixes.

Many of the languages spoken worldwide have their origins in Latin or Greece. By understanding the Latin roots of words, many students can decipher words in multiple languages. There are many prefixes, suffixes and roots in both Latin and Greece used in much of the world's most popular languages. Languages derived from the Latin roots of words include Italian, French, Portuguese and Spanish. In addition to these dialects, many Latin roots of words found their way into the English language as well.

Greek roots of words are frequently used in biology and other scientific terms. By studying roots of words, those interested in careers in medicine, or other sciences can remove much of the frustration and study time associated with advanced fields. Students will find that by understanding various prefixes and suffixes they can ensure that many of their classes will flow smoothly as they will have greater comprehension of the language used. As many terms in multiple languages share the same roots of words, recognizing these terms easily can reduce the amount of time spent studying. By understanding the Greek roots of words, students can experience greater ease in studying some of life's most difficult subjects. Those who want a career in medicine or science will find great benefit from memorizing the Greek roots of words early in life. By having a rich vocabulary that is based upon various roots of words, students can enjoy greater collegiate success.

A prefix is an affix which is placed before the stem of a word. Adding it to the beginning of one word changes it into another word. For example, when the prefix "un-" is added to the word "happy", it creates the word "unhappy". A prefix alters the form of the words to which it is affixed. If prefix "en-" or suffix "-en" is added to an adjective, it can be converted to a verb.

e.g. large *adj.*—*en*large *v.*   able *adj.*—*en*able *v.*

sharp *adj.*—sharp*en v.*　　loose *adj.*—loos*en v.*

light *adj./n.*—*en*light*en v.*　live *adj.*—*en*liv*en v.*

Prefixes	Meanings	Examples
pre-	before in time, place, order or importance	precaution, prelude, precondition, predominant, preliminary
pro-	favoring, in support of	pro-African
	acting for	proconsul, projector
	motion forwards or away	propulsion, prolong
	before in time, place or order	prologue
re-	again	regain, repaint, reappraise, reawaken, rewind, rebate, rearrange
post-	after in time or order	postpone
semi-	half, partly	semicircle, semi-conscious
hemi-	half	hemisphere
homo-	same	homosexual
fro-	backwards	fro

Practice by Yourself: Prefixes Crossword

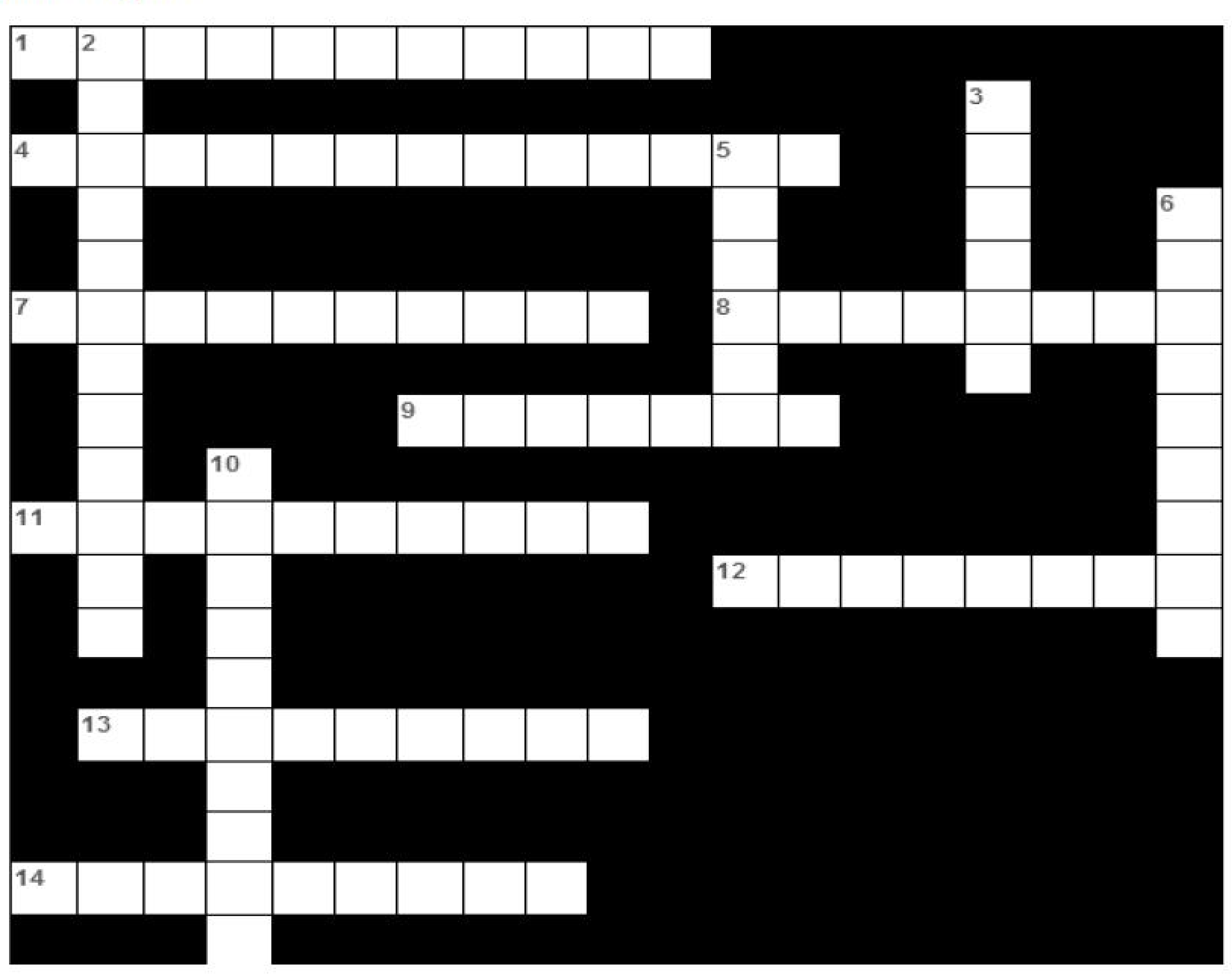
Aim:

This exercise aims to give you more practice in using prefixes to form new words. By the end of this exercise, you can first try to form the antonym of a word by changing the prefix.

Instructions:

Check the clue for that number. The answer is the antonym for that word.

e.g. import→export



Hints:

Across 1: important

Down 2: peacelessness

Down 3: export

Across 4: pro-American

Down 5: descend

Down 6: easy to be read

Across 7: encourage

Across 8: internal

Across 9: include

Down 10: a person who smokes

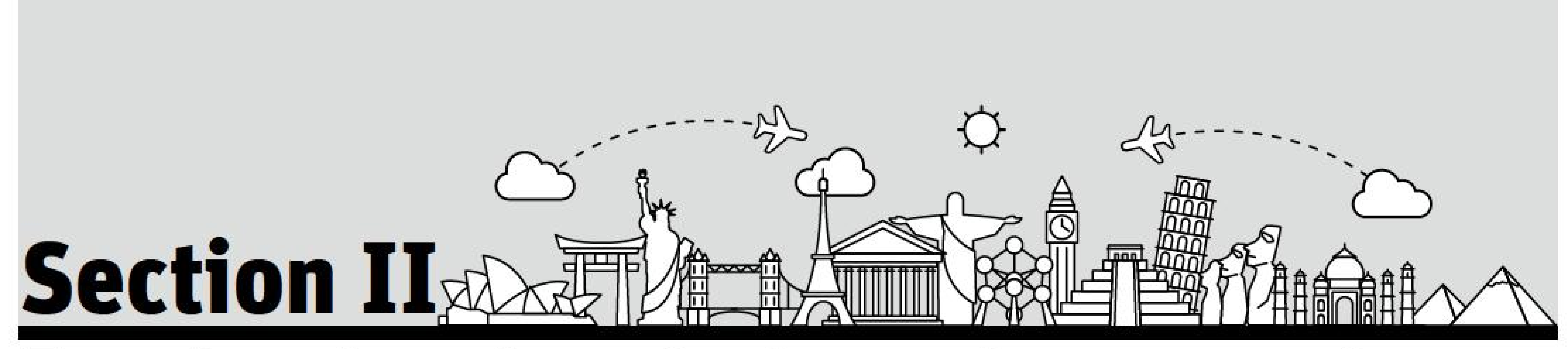
Across 11: finished

Across 12: to spell a word correctly

Across 13: emigrant

Across 14: regular

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/prefixes-and-suffixes. html and https: //en. wikipedia. org/wiki/Prefix and https: //www. englishclub. com/vocabulary/prefixes. htm and http: //www. edu-nova. com/articles/roots-prefixes-suffixes/ and http: //www2. elc. polyu. edu. hk/cill/ eap/2004/pg14prefixcrossword. htm)



Section II

Text A: The Historical Development of International Human Rights

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **resolution** [ˌrezəˈluːʃ(ə)n] ***n.***

a formal decision or statement agreed on by a group of people, especially after a vote; A resolution is a formal decision made at a meeting by means of a vote; If you make a resolution, you decide to try very hard to do something.

synonym decision; determination

word family resolve; resolved

related phrase dispute resolution; high resolution

Example 1 He thought of the resolution of the synod carefully and sent it to the chairman.

Example 2 This is the logic of intervention, but it is not in line with the UN resolution.

② **fundamental** [ˌfʌndəˈmentl] ***adj.***

relating to the most basic and important parts of something; very necessary and important; You use fundamental to describe things, activities and principles that are very important or essential; They affect the basic nature of other things or are the most important element upon which other things depend.

synonym primary; essential

word family fundament; fundamentalist

related phrase fundamental principle; fundamental change

Example 1 According to some analysts, the fundamental pillars of the economy are being eroded.

Example 2 Social successful people will do well to identify ways to help their causes in fundamental ways.

③ **complement** [(for *n.*) ˈkɒmplɪmənt; (for *v.*) ˈkɒmplɪment] ***n./vt.* (complemented/complemented/complementing)**

to make a good combination with someone or something else; If people or things complement each other, they are different or do something different, which makes them a good combination.

synonym supplement; replenish

word family complementary; complemental

related phrase complement each other's advantages

Example 1 You should know about the company's style to complement its drawbacks.

Example 2 The aim of this section is to consolidate and complement the earlier discussions.

④ **provision** [prə'vɪʒ(ə)n] ***n.***

a condition in an agreement or law; The provision of something is the act of giving it or making it available to people who need or want it; A provision in a law or an agreement is an arrangement which is included in it; If you make provision for someone, you support them financially and make sure that they have the things that they need.

synonym arrangement; preparation

word family provide; provisional

related phrase special provision; make provision for

Example 1 This provision is meant to protect investors in the event of a down round.

Example 2 Each measure corresponds to at least one provision of the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control.

⑤ **tolerate** ['tɒləreɪt] ***vt.*** **(tolerated/tolerated/tolerating)**

to allow people to do, say, or believe something without criticizing or punishing them; to be able to accept something unpleasant or difficult, even though you do not like it

synonym bear; stand

word family tolerant; tolerance; toleration

related phrase tolerate standard; tolerate error

Example 1 We can't tolerate his mistakes.

Example 2 I cannot tolerate to suffer the loss of 1% of the profit.

⑥ **abolish** [ə'bɒlɪʃ] ***vt.*** **(abolished/abolished/abolishing)**

to officially end a law, system, etc., especially one that has existed for a long time; If someone in authority abolishes a system or practice, they formally put an end to it.

synonym ban; forbid

word family abolisher; abolitionism; abolitionist

related phrase abolish treaties; abolish a tax

Example 1 The most profound implication, however, is that it would abolish the ability to lie.

Example 2 He wants to abolish the armed forces and spend their budget improving state schools.

⑦ **combat** ['kɒmbæt] ***vt.*** **(combated/combated/combating)/*n.***

to try to stop something bad from happening or getting worse—used especially in news reports; If

people in authority combat something, they try to stop it from happening; A combat is a battle, or a fight.

synonym	fight; oppose
word family	combatant; combative
related phrase	combat with; combat corruption

Example 1 A reporter interviewed the combat hero.

Example 2 More than a quarter (27 percent) of drivers questioned want an explicit "slow lane" on roads to combat slow drivers.

⑧ **ongoing** ['ɒnˌɡəʊɪŋ] ***adj.***

continuing, or continuing to develop; An ongoing situation has been happening for quite a long time and seems likely to continue for some time in the future.

synonym	uninterrupted; consistent; advancing
antonym	finished; past
related phrase	ongoing process; ongoing task

Example 1 What do you think about this ongoing controversy?

Example 2 This should be an ongoing process since there are many local, national and worldwide corpus.

⑨ **federal** ['fed(ə)rəl] ***adj.***

A federal country or system of government consists of a group of states which control their own affairs, but which are also controlled by a single national government which makes decisions on foreign affairs, defence, etc.; relating to the central government of a country such as the U.S., rather than the government of one of its states

synonym	confederal
word family	federate; federalist
related phrase	federal government; federal reserve

Example 1 He urged the automakers to "go down to Washington and fight with us" for federal benefits.

Example 2 And he says it can all be done without adding to the federal budget deficit.

⑩ **plight** [plaɪt] ***n.***

a very bad situation that someone is in; If you refer to someone's plight, you mean that they are in a difficult or distressing situation that is full of problems.

synonym	difficulty; dilemma
related phrase	employment plight; economic plight

Example 1 Some wages are so low that workers are committing suicide to draw attention to their plight.

Example 2 Not because I was feeling his plight but because I'd become cautious of him.

⑪ **distinguish** [dɪ'stɪŋgwɪʃ] ***vi./vt.*** **(distinguished/distinguished/distinguishing)**

to recognize and understand the difference between two or more things or people; to be the thing that makes someone or something different or special

synonym	differentiate
word family	distinct; distinguishable
related phrase	distinguish between; distinguish from

Example 1 In spite of the fog the crew can distinguish the correct direction fairly well.

Example 2 We can distinguish one kind of substance from another by its properties.

⑫ **proposition** [ˌprɒpə'zɪʃ(ə)n] ***n.***

a suggestion, or something that is suggested or considered as a possible thing to do; a statement that consists of a carefully considered opinion or judgment

synonym	suggestion; statement
word family	propositional; propose
related phrase	value proposition; make a proposition

Example 1 Do you favor her proposition?

Example 2 Economics makes that a very simple proposition, just as politics makes it difficult.

⑬ **statutory** ['stætʃʊt(ə)rɪ] ***adj.***

fixed or controlled by law; Statutory means relating to rules or laws which have been formally written down.

synonym	lawful; legal
word family	statutorily; statute
related phrase	statutory body; statutory law

Example 1 If not, then the President must rely on some statutory authority granted by Congress.

Example 2 As a result, most Western countries have voluntary or statutory regulation intended to address such anxieties.

⑭ **sovereign** ['sɒvrɪn] ***n./adj.***

a king or queen who has the highest power in a country; A sovereign state or country is independent and not under the authority of any other country; Sovereign is used to describe the person or institution that has the highest power in a country.

synonym	emperor; king
word family	sovereignty
related phrase	sovereign state; sovereign debt

Example 1 In England, the sovereign reigns but does not rule.

Example 2 Independence and sovereign equality among states is a fundamental principle of international law.

⑮ **furthermore** [ˌfɜːðəˈmɔː] ***adv.***

in addition to what has already been said

synonym moreover; besides; again; meanwhile; additionally; also

Example 1 Furthermore, most of these investors were sitting on very large gains in the stock.

Example 2 Furthermore, this technology can even be applied to the various applications developed by both parties.

⑯ **condemn** [kənˈdem] ***vt.*** **(condemned/condemned/condemning)**

to say very strongly that you do not approve of something or someone, especially because you think it is morally wrong; to give someone a severe punishment after deciding they are guilty of a crime; If a particular situation condemns someone to something, it forces them to live in an unpleasant way or to do something unpleasant.

synonym denounce; criticize; blame

antonym praise; commend

word family condemning; condemnatory; condemnation

related phrase openly condemn; condemn sb. to do sth.

Example 1 She knew that society would condemn her for leaving her children.

Example 2 His occupation condemned him to spend long periods of time away from his family.

⑰ **defeat** [dɪˈfiːt] ***n./vt.*** **(defeated/defeated/defeating)**

failure to win or succeed; to win a victory over someone in a war, competition, game, etc.; If you defeat someone, you win a victory over them in a battle, game, or contest.

synonym failure; beat; conquer

word family defeatist; defeatism

related phrase suffer defeat; admit defeat; a big defeat

Example 1 They credited the defeat to poor planning.

Example 2 It felt like a defeat, but it was the best move of my life.

⑱ **diplomat** [ˈdɪpləmæt] ***n.***

someone who officially represents their government in a foreign country; someone who is good at dealing with people without upsetting them

synonym diplomatist

word family diplomatic; diplomatically

related phrase career diplomat; Chinese diplomat

Example 1 He started his official career as a diplomat.

Example 2 As one Western diplomat recently told *Time* magazine: "You have to be realistic."

⑲ **alliance** [ə'laɪəns] ***n.***

an arrangement in which two or more countries, groups, etc. agree to work together to try to change or achieve something; a group of two or more countries, groups, etc. who work together to achieve something

synonym union; association; combination; unity

word family ally; allied

related phrase strategic alliance; star alliance; in alliance with

Example 1 This is an alliance for offensive and defense.

Example 2 They contracted an alliance with another country.

⑳ **perpetual** [pə'petʃʊəl] ***adj.***

continuing all the time without changing or stopping; A perpetual feeling, state, or quality is one that never ends or changes; A perpetual act, situation, or state is one that happens again and again and so seems never to end.

synonym permanent; ceaseless

word family perpetually

related phrase perpetual motion; perpetual memory

Example 1 This is my perpetual loyalty to my faith.

Example 2 They hoped to live in perpetual happiness.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

Austria	communism	Czechoslovakia	crew	decline
dairy	earthquake	infer	jungle	liberty
managerial	noon	nationality	provisional	pursue
pillar	primitive	personnel	pipeline	prostitute
tobacco	victor			

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. What is the general development course of international human rights according to this text?
2. Could you make a chart with all detailed dates from the text to show exactly what has happened in terms of human rights development?

The Historical Development of International Human Rights

When governments, activists, or United Nations documents refer to "human rights" today, they are almost certainly referring to the human rights recognized in international and national law rather than rights in a moral or philosophical sense. Of course, philosophical debate will continue to state the reasons why we think human rights are important and how to best develop them.

Hersch Lauterpacht's influential book *An International Bill of the Rights of Man*, published in 1945, drew on a range of natural rights thinking and constitutionally protected rights to argue for a written Bill of Rights[1] to be protected through the UN. The key text for us today is the Universal Declaration of Human Rights[2], adopted by the UN General Assembly in 1948. But the list of human rights was not simply frozen by publication in 1948. Since that time dozens of treaties and intergovernmental Declarations have complemented this publication of rights.

The relevant UN resolution, adopted in 1986, suggested that international human rights instruments should: (a) Be consistent with the existing body of international human rights law; (b) Be of fundamental character and derive from the inherent pride and worth of the human person; (c) Be sufficiently precise to give rise to identifiable and practicable rights and obligations; (d) Provide where appropriate, realistic and effective implementation machinery; (e) Attract broad international support. Some may feel that some texts have failed this test, but, overall, the UN's core human rights instruments satisfy these criteria. Let us look in more detail at the development of this human rights catalogue.

The historical development of the international protection of human rights deserves our attention as it tells us much about how and why states use human rights in international relations. The human rights story in the 20th century has multiple layers. At one level, human rights were put forward as a basic principle for fighting the world wars. In 1915, in the context of World War I, Sir Francis Younghusband set up an organization called the Fight for Right movement; one of its declared aims was "To impress upon the country that we are fighting for something more than our own defense, that we are fighting the battle of all humanity and to preserve human rights for generations to come."

At another, rather more academic level, Alejandro Alvarez, the Secretary General of the American Institute of International Law, was promoting in 1917 consideration of international recognition of rights for individual persons and associations. In his 1918 address to Congress, President Wilson spoke of his desire "to create a world dedicated to justice and fair dealing". His ideas were expanded in a proposed "Fourteen Points" program, which included explicit reference to rights to self-determination and statehood for nationalities seeking self-rule.

Wilson's Fourteen Points formed the basis of the Versailles Peace Treaty[3] in 1919, which

established the League of Nations[4] and the International Labor Organization (ILO)[5]. The League was supposed to preserve international peace and security through the collective action of its member states against any state that resorted to war or the threat of war. The Allied Powers and various Eastern European countries entered into a series of minority treaties and declarations for the protection of certain minority rights in Austria, Czechoslovakia, Finland, Greece, Hungary, Lithuania, Poland, Romania, Turkey and Yugoslavia. These conventions signaled the first many-sided efforts to protect the rights of specific groups of people at the international level.

The treaties all contained similar provisions guaranteeing the protection of minority rights in the states party to the treaty, including the right to life and liberty for all residents and civil and political rights for nationals. Yet, despite its important contribution to the protection of minority rights, the human rights protection offered under the League system was obviously limited to certain groups and certain countries. The League of Nations was also active in the protection of workers' rights. The goal of "fair and people-oriented conditions of labor for men, women and children" was stated explicitly in the League Covenant. This goal became central to the work of the International Labor Organization, which continues today as one of the UN's specialized agencies. At the Paris Peace Conference[6] in 1919 various delegates made proposals for the inclusion of respect for equality rights in the Covenant of the League of Nations. The British delegate, Lord Cecil, even proposed that states have a right of "intervention" against other states if these states engaged in forms of religious intolerance that would jeopardize global peace. The delegate of Japan, Baron Makino, the Foreign Minister, specifically proposed the inclusion of a sentence that would have bound the member states to agree as soon as possible to accord equal and just treatment to alien nationals of League member states without distinction based on nationality or race. Neither of these last two proposals was adopted.

With regard to the failure to include a non-discrimination provision in the League Covenant, Antonio Cassese has concluded: the Western great powers neither would nor could accept a principle that would have violated heavily on their discriminatory practices against citizens of other areas of the world, and would have ended up threatening even the similar practices they still tolerated within their own systems. We should briefly mention here the fight to put a ban on the slave trade and to abolish slavery. Efforts to combat slavery had been ongoing in the 19th century. Although strategic and economic forces played a role in the ban on slavery, there was also a genuine sentiment that slavery was inhuman; non-governmental organizations, such as the Anti-Slavery Society[7] lobbied for international action, and the fight against slavery is sometimes seen as the beginning of the human rights movement. The League set up Commissions on slavery, adopted the 1926 Slavery Convention, and developed conventions on the traffic in women and children to control what had been called in a 1910 Convention the "White Slave Traffic".

More recently, these rights have been at the core of the litigation brought in the U.S. Federal Courts by villagers from Myanmar against oil companies accused of collaborating with the military authorities' forcing of the villagers to build pipelines. In 2005, the Unocal company came to an out-of-court settlement with the villagers, and provided an undisclosed sum that is to be used to compensate the villagers and to develop programs "to improve living conditions, health care and education and protect the rights of people from the pipeline region". With the League of Nations we have strategic concern for certain national minorities, attention to the plight of workers and parenting worries about women engaged in prostitution. We do not yet have meaningful

international rights or obligations which protect human beings as human beings.

André Mandelstam, a professor from Russia, developed a text that formed the basis of the eventual Declaration. Importantly, the final Declaration, approved in 1929 at a meeting of the distinguished members of the Institute in New York, did not refer to the rights of citizens but rather indicated rights to life, liberty and property belonging to individual human beings. These rights are to be respected without any discrimination on grounds of nationality, sex, race, language, or religion.

In 1933, the last year of the League of Nations, the delegate of Haiti, Antoine Frangulis, argued that states' obligations should go beyond the category of minorities and be extended through a general convention, to offer the same protection and freedoms to everyone. Almost from the beginning of the Second World War we find human rights being put forward. In 1939, the British author H. G. Wells wrote to the *Times* of London arguing for a discussion of the war aims. He suggested the League of Nations was "a poor and ineffective outcome of that revolutionary proposal to ban armed conflict from the world and open a new life for mankind".

This Declaration was developed into the World Declaration of the Rights of Man, and distributed to over 300 editors in 48 countries, generating worldwide interest. The ten paragraphs covered: discrimination; natural resources; health; education; paid employment; the right to buy and sell personal property; the right to move around the world freely; no imprisonment longer than six days without charge, and then no more than three months before a public trial; access to public records concerning individuals; and a ban on mutilation, sterilization, physical suffering and any bodily punishment. The Declaration was included in Wells's widely distributed 1940 *Penguin Special* entitled "The Rights of Man: Or What Are We Fighting for"?

During the long development course of human rights, some provisional regulations only involve part of it, thanks to the completion of laws, some regulations finally become the framework of law that is perpetual to people.

(Adapted from *Oxford: A Very Short Introduction: Human Rights*)

Notes

① Bill of Rights

The Bill of Rights is an Act of the Parliament of England that deals with constitutional matters and sets out certain basic civil rights. Passed on 16 December 1689, it is a proposition in statutory form of the Declaration of Right, presented by the Convention Parliament to William III and Mary II in February 1689, inviting them to become joint sovereigns of England. The Bill of Rights lays down limits on the powers of the monarch sovereign and sets out the rights of Parliament, including the requirement for regular parliaments, free elections and freedom of speech in Parliament. It sets out certain rights of individuals including the prohibition ban on cruel and unusual punishment and reestablished the right of Protestants to have arms for their defence within the rule of law. Furthermore, the Bill of Rights described and condemned several misdeeds of James II of England.

② The Universal Declaration of Human Rights

The Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) is a declaration adopted by the United Nations General Assembly on 10 December 1948 at the Palais de Chaillot in Paris, France. The Declaration arose directly from the experience of the Second World War and represents the first global expression of what many people believe to be the rights to which all human beings are inherently entitled. The full text is available on the United Nations website.

③ The Versailles Peace Treaty

The Versailles Peace Treaty (French: Traité de Versailles) was the most important of the peace treaties that brought World War I to an end. The Treaty ended the state of war between Germany and the Allied Powers. It was signed on 28 June 1919, exactly five years after the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand. The other Central Powers on the German side of World War I signed separate treaties.

④ The League of Nations

The League of Nations was an intergovernmental organization founded on 10 January 1920 as a result of the Paris Peace Conference that ended the First World War. It was the first international organization whose principal mission was to maintain world peace.

⑤ The International Labor Organization (ILO)

The International Labor Organization (ILO) is a United Nations agency dealing with labor problems, particularly international labor standards, social protection and work opportunities for all. The ILO has 187 member states: 186 of the 193 UN member states plus the Cook Islands are members of the ILO. In 1969, the organization received the Nobel Peace Prize for improving peace among classes, pursuing decent work and justice for workers, and providing technical assistance to other developing nations.

⑥ The Paris Peace Conference

The Paris Peace Conference, also known as Versailles Peace Conference, was the meeting of the Allied victors, following the end of World War I to set the peace terms for the defeated Central Powers following the ceasefire of 1918. It took place in Paris during 1919 and involved diplomats from more than 32 countries and nationalities.

⑦ The Anti-Slavery Society

The American Anti-Slavery Society (AASS) (1833–1870) was an anti-slavery society founded by William Lloyd Garrison and Arthur Tappan. Frederick Douglass, an escaped slave, was a key leader of this society who often spoke at its meetings. William Wells Brown was also a freed slave who often spoke at meetings. By 1838, the society had 1,350 local charters with around 250,000 members.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) When governments, activists, or United Nations documents refer to "human rights" today, they are almost certainly referring to the human rights recognized in local and national law rather than rights in a moral or philosophical sense.
2. ( ) The enumeration of human rights was already frozen by proclamation in 1948.
3. ( ) The human rights story in the 20th century doesn't have multiple layers.
4. ( ) Alejandro Alvarez's ideas were expanded in a proposed "Fourteen Points" program, which included explicit reference to rights to self-determination and statehood for nationalities seeking self-rule.
5. ( ) Luckily, the human rights protection offered under the League system was obviously open to all groups and countries.
6. ( ) We do not yet have meaningful international rights or obligations which protect human beings as human beings.
7. ( ) Efforts to combat slavery had been ongoing in the latter part of the 19th century.
8. ( ) With the League of Nations we have strategic concern for certain national minorities, attention to the plight of workers and parenting worries about women criminals.
9. ( ) André Mandelstam, a professor from Russia, developed a text that formed the basis of the eventual Declaration.
10. ( ) In 1939, the British author H. G. Wells wrote to the *Times* of London arguing for a discussion of the war aims.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and put the following events in a chronological order.

1. Hersch Lauterpacht's influential book *An International Bill of the Rights of Man* was published.
2. The British author H. G. Wells wrote to the *Times* of London arguing for a discussion of the war aims.

3. Importantly, the final Declaration was approved at a meeting of the distinguished members of the Institute in New York.
4. The British delegate, Lord Cecil, even proposed that states have a right of "intervention" against other states if these states engaged in forms of religious intolerance that would jeopardize global peace. Sir Francis Younghusband set up an organization called the Fight for Right movement.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

abolish defeat plight combat

condemn tolerate

VII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. We are fighting the battle of all humanity and to preserve human rights for generations to come. ( )

   A. maintain B. protect C. fling D. refrain

2. These rights are to be respected without any discrimination on grounds of nationality, sex, race, language, or religion. ( )

   A. citizenship B. morality C. statehood D. ethnicity

3. Although strategic and economic forces played a role in the ban on slavery, there was also a genuine sentiment that slavery was inhuman. ( )

   A. opinion B. siren C. mood D. crumb

4. We should briefly mention here the fight to put a ban on the slave trade and to abolish slavery. ( )

   A. eliminate B. penetrate C. support D. wiggle

5. … including the right to life and liberty for all residents and civil and political rights for nationals. ( )

   A. equality B. integrity C. harmony D. freedom

6. His ideas were expanded in a proposed "Fourteen Points" program, which included explicit reference to rights to self-determination and statehood for nationalities seeking self-rule. ( )

   A. precise B. paradox C. blurry D. unclear

7. Some may feel that some texts have failed this test, but, overall, the UN's core human rights instruments satisfy these criteria. ( )

   A. principles B. fever C. requirements D. expressions

8. … the right to buy and sell personal property. ( )

   A. residence B. taxation C. asset D. stock

9. Almost from the beginning of the Second World War we find human rights being put forward. (   )

   A. come forward   B. brought forward   C. moved forward   D. stepped forward

10. André Mandelstam, a professor from Russia, developed a text that formed the basis of the eventual Declaration. (   )

   A. basement   B. fuse   C. foundation   D. streak

VIII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. ... the Western great powers neither would nor could accept a principle that would have violated heavily on their discriminatory practices against citizens of other areas of the world, and would have ended up threatening even the similar practices they still tolerated within their own systems.
2. This Declaration was developed into the World Declaration of the Rights of Man, and distributed to over 300 editors in 48 countries, generating worldwide interest.
3. The ten paragraphs covered: discrimination; natural resources; health; education; paid employment; the right to buy and sell personal property; the right to move around the world freely; no imprisonment longer than six days without charge, and then no more than three months before a public trial; access to public records concerning individuals; and a ban on mutilation, sterilization, physical suffering and any bodily punishment.

IX. Word Formation

Directions: Do you know the meaning of the following prefixes? Can you list more words with these prefixes? Come on!

1. re-—retell; ________; ________
2. post-—postwar; ________; ________
3. pre-—pre-reading; ________; ________
4. pro-—proactive; ________; ________
5. semi-—semicircle; ________; ________

X. Presentation

Directions: Suppose your group is responsible for introducing the development course of human rights and the current condition of human rights surrounding you in your country or even around the whole world in a formal meeting; please prepare your presentation with the help of the following hints.

Hints: the origin of human rights

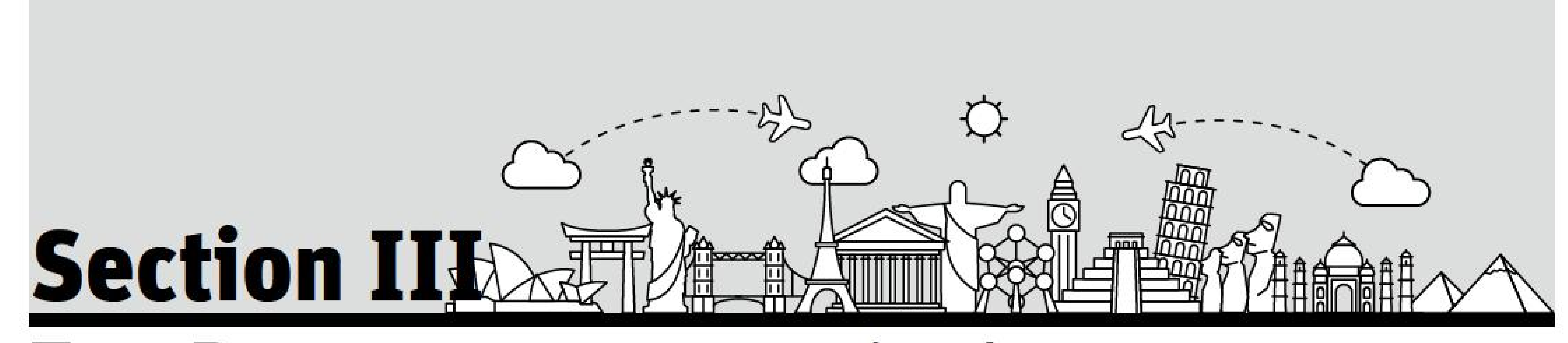
the initiators of human rights

some recorded documents and treaties about human rights

some basic well-known movements about human rights

some big events in history about human rights

different definitions of human rights and its current impacts towards people and their lives



Section III

Text B: "It's Very Scary in the Forest": Should Finland's Wolves Be Killed?

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **wade** [weɪd] ***vi./vt.*** **(waded/waded/wading)**

to walk through water that is not deep; If you wade through something that makes it difficult to walk, usually water or mud, you walk through it; To wade through a lot of documents or pieces of information means to spend a lot of time and effort reading them or dealing with them.

synonym	trudge; slog
word family	wader; wading
related phrase	wade through; wade in

Example 1 The police waded into the crowd swing sticks.

Example 2 I wish you wouldn't always wade in with your opinion.

② **puncture** ['pʌŋktʃə] ***n./vt.*** **(punctured/punctured/puncturing)**

to make a small hole in something; A puncture is a small hole in a car tyre or bicycle tyre that has been made by a sharp object; If a sharp object punctures something, it makes a hole in it.

synonym	break
word family	punctured
related phrase	puncture wound; puncture needle

Example 1 She once visited the emergency room with a puncture wound from a nail in her foot.

Example 2 Mark suffered a puncture that took him three minutes to repair and he took some aspirins.

③ **slaughter** ['slɔːtə] ***n./vt.*** **(slaughtered/slaughtered/slaughtering)**

to kill an animal, especially for its meat; If large numbers of people or animals are slaughtered, they are killed in a way that is cruel or unnecessary; To slaughter animals, such as cows and sheep means to kill them for their meat.

synonym	kill; massacre
word family	slaughterer; slaughterous
related phrase	slaughter house; slaughter tax

Example 1 Only someone not afraid to slaughter sacred cows, they say, can get the job done.

Example 2 Multiple factors could lead to slaughtering innocent people around the whole world.

④ **disrupt** [dɪs'rʌpt] ***vt.*** **(disrupted/disrupted/disrupting)**

to prevent something from continuing in its usual way by causing problems; If someone or something disrupts an event, system, or process, they cause difficulties that prevent it from continuing or operating in a normal way.

synonym destroy; undermine

word family disruption; disrupted

related phrase disrupt the order; disrupt the traffic

Example 1 People went with the flow, and no one let those issues disrupt the class.

Example 2 Climate change could disrupt the agricultural economy.

⑤ **trot** [trɒt] ***vi.*** **(trotted/trotted/trotting)**

to walk or go somewhere, especially fairly quickly; If you trot somewhere, you move fairly fast at a speed between walking and running, taking small quick steps; when an animal such as a horse trots, it moves fairly fast, taking quick small steps; You can also say that the rider of the animal is trotting.

synonym jog; canter

word family trotter; trotted

related phrase trot out; on the trot; fox trot

Example 1 She was walking in haste so that I even had to trot to catch her.

Example 2 He whipped the horse to trot, because he hoped he could visit the temple soon.

⑥ **protest** [(for *v.*) prə'test; (for *n.*) 'prəʊtest] ***n./vt.*** **(protested/protested/protesting)**

something that you do to show publicly that you think that something is wrong and unfair, for example, taking part in big public meetings, refusing to work, or refusing to buy a company's products; words or actions that show that you do not want someone to do something or that you dislike something very much; If you protest something or protest against something, you say or show publicly that you object to it.

synonym declare; oppose

word family protestation

related phrase protest against; under protest

Example 1 So, this new commission can only raise doubt and protest.

Example 2 I understand those who protest that some countries have weapons that others do not.

⑦ **contemporary** [kən'temp(ə)rərɪ] ***adj.***

belonging to the present time; happening or existing in the same period of time

synonym modern

word family contemporarily; contemporize

related phrase contemporary art; the contemporary era

Example 1 If science would assist me, the contemporary human says, I could live as a brain without a body.

Example 2 This drawing shows how a contemporary Chinese family works in daily life.

⑧ blend [blend] *vi./vt.* (blent/blent/blending)

to combine into one; to mix with other elements; If you blend substances together or if they blend, you mix them together so that they become one substance; When colors, sounds, or styles blend, they come together or are combined in a pleasing way.

synonym combine; mix

word family blender; blending

related phrase blend with; blend into

Example 1 Water does not blend with oil.

Example 2 These cigarettes are blended with the best tobaccos.

⑨ sever ['sevə] *vi./vt.* (severed/severed/severing)

to cut off from a whole; to set or keep apart; To sever something means to cut completely through it or to cut it completely off; If you sever a relationship or connection that you have with someone, you end it suddenly and completely.

word family severable; severance; severally

related phrase sever from; sever ties/relations/connections/links, etc. (with/between sb.)

Example 1 We need to find a way to sever the link with our strange neighbor.

Example 2 The beast severed his favorite dog into pieces.

⑩ derelict ['derəlɪkt] *adj./n.*

Some building or place is in very bad condition because it has not been used for a long time; failing in what duty requires; A place or building that is derelict is empty and in a bad state of repair because it has not been used or lived in for a long time.

synonym ownerless; abandoned; forsaken; deserted

word family dereliction

related phrase a derelict forest; derelict land

Example 1 That place is so isolated from the whole city and it looks like derelict.

Example 2 Because of my derelict mistakes, I have caused serious damage to our company.

⑪ **flush** [flʌʃ] ***vt.*** **(flushed/flushed/flushing)**

If you flush, your face gets red because you are hot or ill, or because you are feeling a strong emotion, such as embarrassment or anger; If you flush something down the toilet, you get rid of it by putting it into the toilet bowl and flushing the toilet.

synonym blush; heat

word family flushed; fluster

related phrase flush out; flush with

Example 1 She began to flush with excitement.

Example 2 There was a slight flush on his cheeks.

⑫ **illusion** [ɪ'luːʒ(ə)n] ***n.***

an idea or opinion that is wrong, especially about yourself

synonym hallucination

word family illusive; illusionary; illusional

related phrase visual illusion; optical illusion

Example 1 It created an illusion reality.

Example 2 His mind could no longer distinguish between illusion and reality.

⑬ **lapse** [læps] ***n./vi.*** **(lapsed/lapsed/lapsing)**

to go into some certain state; A lapse is a moment or instance of bad behavior by someone who usually behaves well; A lapse of something, such as concentration or judgment is a temporary lack of that thing, which can often cause you to make a mistake.

synonym error; mistake; blame

word family lapsed

related phrase lapse into sth.; lapse of time

Example 1 He suddenly lapsed into silence.

Example 2 I am just starting to lapse into sleep.

⑭ **profess** [prə'fes] ***vi./vt.*** **(professed/professed/professing)**

to state a personal feeling or belief openly; If you profess to do or have something, you claim that you do it or have it, often when you don't; If you profess a feeling, opinion, belief, you express it.

synonym accept; recognize

word family professed; professor

related phrase profess to do sth.; profess innocence; profess yourself (to be) sth.

Example 1 He professes to be a writer when he graduates.

Example 2 He finally made up his mind to profess his love for her.

⑮ **ramble** ['ræmb(ə)l] ***vi./vt.*** **(rambled/rambled/rambling)**

to wander around; If you say that a person rambles in their speech or writing, you mean they do not make much sense because they keep going off the subject in a confused way.

synonym range

word family rambling; rambler

related phrase ramble about/on; ramble around

Example 1 The couple ramble about in the park every night.

Example 2 He has nothing to do tonight and he rambles into the forest.

⑯ **rave** [reɪv] ***vi./vt.*** **(raved/raved/raving)**

to talk in an angry, uncontrolled, or crazy way; If someone raves, they talk in an excited and uncontrolled way; If you rave about something, you speak or write about it with great enthusiasm.

synonym roar; bark

word family raving; raver

related phrase rave about; rave review

Example 1 The mad man began to rave again.

Example 2 He is raving madly about the government.

⑰ **subscribe** [səb'skraɪb] ***vi./vt.*** **(subscribed/subscribed/subscribing)**

to agree with an idea or a thought; If you subscribe to an opinion or belief, you are one of a number of people who have this opinion or belief; If you subscribe to a magazine or a newspaper, you pay to receive copies of it regularly.

synonym agree; approve; acknowledge

word family subscriber; subscription

related phrase subscribe to/for

Example 1 Whatever he says, I subscribe to his ideas.

Example 2 Do not follow others; you can subscribe to whoever you think are right.

⑱ **swamp** [swɒmp] ***n./vt.*** **(swamped/swamped/swamping)**

land that is always very wet or covered with a layer of water; to suddenly give someone a lot of work, problems, etc. to deal with

synonym trap; embog

word family swampy

related phrase swamp fever; be swamped by/with sth.

Example 1 The fort was located near a swamp.

Example 2 We've been swamped with phone calls since the advert appeared.

⑲ utter ['ʌtə] *adj./vi.* (uttered/uttered/uttering)

to say something; If someone utters sounds or words, they say them; You use utter to emphasize that something is great in extent, degree, or amount.

synonym	voice; release; project; complete; absolute
word family	utterly; utterance
related phrase	utter nonsense; utter a sound

Example 1 It takes two of us to discover truth: one to utter it and one to understand it.

Example 2 He uttered it with despair.

⑳ vicinity [vɪ'sɪnɪtɪ] *n.* (*pl.* vicinities)

in the area around a particular place

synonym	neighborhood; proximity; adjacency
word family	vicinal
related phrase	in the vicinity; vicinity region

Example 1 The stolen car was found in the vicinity of the booth.

Example 2 There used to be a quarry in the vicinity of the arsenal.

㉑ wan [wɒn] *adj./vt.* (wanned/wanned/wanning)

looking pale, weak, or tired; If you describe someone as wan, you mean that they look pale and tired.

synonym	pale; sick
word family	wanly; wanner; wannest

Example 1 He replies with a wan smile to her question.

Example 2 He looked wan and limp when he was ill.

㉒ latch onto

If someone latches onto a person or an idea or latches on, they become very interested in the person or idea, often finding them so useful that they do not want to leave them.

synonym	pay attention to; cling to

Example 1 The child latched onto his mother, unwilling to let her go.

Example 2 The best you could hope for, if you wanted new horizons, was to latch onto a skill or career that could take you out of there.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

acre	agriculture	alpha	ankle	barrow
bastard	beast	berry	bulge	bullet
carpenter	carriageway	cattle	claw	dispute
downhill	fasten	firework	fungus	gloom
goat	graze	gulf	heap	herb
incident	ivy	jerk	kiddy	kilometer
kidnap	mushroom	ocean	paw	pulse
pup	pursuit	ripple	rustle	ski
sling	slope	snake	sparkle	stray
tangle	tenant	territory	truck	undermine
verdict	whiz	woodwork	wrinkle	enclose

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. What kind of relationship should be formed between wild animals and mankind?
2. How to help people cultivate the good awareness of living in coexistence with animals in nature, especially some endangered animals?

"It's Very Scary in the Forest": Should Finland's Wolves Be Killed?

The story of a kill is told in the snow. On the Finnish island of Porosaari, we find the first paw print. "That's a male," says Asko Kettunen, retired border guard, hunter and tracker, with one wounded ankle from one hunting at a steep slope of one local barrow. He even joked that the chance of this incidence was usually low for "an old man" like him.

Five crows rise from dark trees among a heap of moss, flying into the grey sky in the icy silence; we can also see some shreds of herbs and ivies along the downhill; they will feed on anything caught by the wolves. We wade through knee-deep snow. There's a spot of vivid blood and a bunch of deer hair, cleanly cut, which Kettunen makes a conclusion has been ripped from a living animal. He jerked his thumb to the gloom of the jungle we can see. This, he says, is the moment the wolves made contact. First they try to puncture the internal organs; if they succeed, the deer may run on, but the damage is done. I lapse into silence latching onto his story.

We find deer tracks. Kettunen points to wolf prints on either side, to where a second and third wolf joined the chase. There are blood spots and more hair and a tree sapling snapped in two. "The deer strayed into a tree, so it was not that well," Kettunen says with every rustle in the trees catching his attention.

There are spots of blood by every deer print now. Finally, up the hill, is the kill zone. A young

deer has been reduced to two front legs and a skin detached precisely from the body, internal organs that spill like butcher's sausages and a cluster of freshly chewed grass where its stomach once was. He raves on about how awful this is with his muscles rippling under his shirt and without directly looking into his eyes, and I know that his pulse must be racing with rash anger, "those bastards …"

Finland has a wolf problem. Five and a half million humans share the country with an estimated 235 wolves, and that's too many, say rural Finnish, whose animals raised on farms and hunting dogs are being killed. Some parents are scared that wolves will attack their children. "Before, wolves were afraid of people," Kettunen tells me. "Now people are afraid of wolves, especially for some kiddies." For the past three years, the government has assuaged these fears with a wolf slaughter. The local tenants almost subscribed to this hunting idea. Last winter, 43 wolves were killed in a "management hunt", while total fatalities numbered 78, including "problem" wolves shot by police and road casualties.

The slaughter is controversial: the wolf is a protected, endangered species. Critics say Finland is in breach of EU law. A candlelit night watch for slaughtered wolves took place in Helsinki last month, and a wolf hunt saboteur group has sprung up on social media. Hunters say they've been disrupted by fireworks, destroyed trail-cameras and a hunting shelter burned to the ground.

All across Europe, the wolf is on the rise. Driven to wipe out by the middle of the 20th century, it trotted back into France in the 1990s and into Germany in 1998. Wolves are rambling through Denmark, the Netherlands and, late last year, reached the Belgium-Luxembourg border for the first time in 118 years.

Inevitably, there has been a human opposition. Last year, Norway announced plans to kill 70% of its wolf population of just 68, to protect sheep flocks, before outrage prompted the authorities to abandon the plan and propose a slaughter of just 15 wolves by a verdict. Two years before that, Tuscan farmers dumped wolf dead bodies on the carriageways in town centers in protest at their rapid bulge in the population. French farmers have also professed that its authorities should shoot more wolves. The animal may be a symbol of freedom and nature's ability to bounce back, but it also embodies two very contemporary tensions: the gulf between countryside and city, and the chasm between ordinary people and an uncaring political people from the upper class.

Wolves were driven to wipe out in Finland after a fit of attacks on children at the end of the 19th century. Are such fears of wolves making sense, I ask Ilpo Kojola, research professor at the Finnish government's National Resources Institute. "The risk of a wolf attack is really, really tiny nowadays," he utters calmly, explaining that the historic attacks happened in an era when children led cattle into the forests, and when there were no deer for the wolves to eat.

Wolves can kill people—a jogger was killed in Alaska in 2010—but a scientific study in which humans approached wolves 125 times in Scandinavia found no occasions of aggressive behavior: on 123 occasions, the wolves ran away; on the other two, an alpha female exhibited harmless "defensive" behavior near her pups.

Instead, the hostility towards wolves in rural Finland is mostly because they take hunting dogs. Finland has 300,000 amateur hunters, more than 5% of its population. Deer hunting is particularly popular, a pursuit that has evolved over decades, with GPS collar-wearing dogs chasing deer up to 15 km beyond the hunter, who follows it on a screen. "They bark when they stop the deer," explains Kai Tikkunen of the Finnish Hunters' Association, and then "it's like an ice-cream truck calling the wolves."

So the wolf is a rival, killing deer that hunters would like to catch? "The big problem is not

that they eat the deer; the big problem is that they kill the dogs." Hunters are compensated for dogs killed by wolves, but it can take 18 months and does not bring back a pure bred animal they may have spent years training.

The snowbound track sparkles under my automobile lamp as I drive 18 km beyond the nearest shop to meet Ari Määttänen, who lives alone with Minni, his Finnish Spitz in the vicinity of the swamp. This delicate, bird-hunting dog is kept by one rope in his snowy yard, as some dogs are still kept in Finland. "If 10 bears are around this house, that's fine. But one wolf? I do not like it, not at all," he says.

Määttänen's precious previous dog, Kessu, was killed on 22 January last year. His description of the loss sounds like the kidnap of a child. He saw two wolves 30 m from his window in December 2015. "They don't jog for pleasure," he says. "They were looking for food. And after that, the wolves knew I had a dog." The "wolf circle", whereby a pack of five or more wolves look for their 1,000 sq km territory for food, takes two and a half weeks in Määttänen's neighbourhood. "It was 12: 30 pm and I remember Kessu was staring into the forest. He started walking in that direction"—he points to a place where his garden blends into the forest—"and disappeared from sight."

Later that afternoon, a neighbor called to warn him that two wolves had crossed the road nearby. "I went out with a gun but it was too late." He found fighting marks, then wolf tracks. "They had been waiting 100 m away for my dog. They had invited the dog to play and then ..." he pauses. "My dog ran into the wolf's mouth. I hope it was only an illusion." There had been no barking. There was no blood. The wolf was so strong it took Kessu without a sound. How does he know the wolf was big? "Because on Sunday the hunters shot it," he says. Local hunters had quickly obtained a permit to kill this "problem" wolf in this 200-acre wood.

Määttänen slings a hairy object on to the kitchen table. "That's what's left of my beautiful dog, and wolf is not that kind of animal that you'd care to tangle with," he says. It's Kessu's tail. A few days later, hunters found something else in the snow. Määttänen shows me a photo on his phone: Kessu's head, so neatly severed, it looks like a medical operation.

One reason for the wolf's reappearance is rural depopulation. Outside its cities, Finland does not look prosperous: the development of forests with the latest technology has stripped jobs from the countryside and cottages with scenic beauty lie derelict in snowy forests. For those who remain, hunting is a social glue. "We don't have any ice-skating halls here," Turunen says, giving a wan smile. "All my friends and friends' wives hunt. I spend a lot of time in nature, picking mushrooms and berries with the kids. We even load some wood onto our trucks to home. My uncle is a carpenter and he is very good at woodwork. I am a nature conservationist." He wrinkles his eyebrows into concentration.

Hunting a wolf is tightly regulated: only a few permits will be issued for each region, and hunters stand more chance of obtaining one if they identify a "problem" wolf. Wolves can't be chased on snowmobiles, and no more than 50 people can hunt at a time. Usually, a few hunters on skis will move through the forest with dogs, attempting to flush resting wolves towards a circle of waiting guns and people can hear bullets whizzing over their heads during the hunting season.

(Adapted from https: //www. theguardian. com/world/2017/feb/25/europe-wolf-population-finland-culling-protection)

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) Hunting a wolf is tightly regulated: only a few permits will be issued for each region, and hunters stand more chance of obtaining one if they identify any wolf with the help of their dogs.
2. ( ) Turunen claims himself to be a nature conservationist.
3. ( ) The wolf's reappearance has nothing to do with the rural depopulation.
4. ( ) The development of forests with the latest technology has provided more job opportunities for the countryside.
5. ( ) According to Ari Määttänen, he cannot bear even one wolf surrounding him.
6. ( ) Finland has 300,000 people, and more than 5% of its population only live on hunting.
7. ( ) Driven to wipe out by the middle of the 20th century, wolves trotted back into France in the 1990s and into Germany in 1998.
8. ( ) Some Finland parents are scared because wolves often attack their children.
9. ( ) Last winter, 43 wolves were killed in a "management hunt", while total fatalities numbered 76, including "problem" wolves shot by police and road casualties.
10. ( ) French farmers opposed to killing more wolves for protecting the balance of the Mother nature.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and put the following events in a chronological order.

1. Wolves were driven to wipe out in Finland after a fit of attacks on children.
2. 43 wolves were killed in a "management hunt", while total fatalities numbered 78, including "problem" wolves shot by police and road casualties.
3. Driven to wipe out by the middle of the 20th century, it trotted back into France.
4. The author drives beyond the nearest shop to meet Ari Määttänen.

5. Tuscan farmers dumped wolf dead bodies in town centers in protest at their rapidly increasing population.

VI. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. There's a spot of <u>vivid</u> blood and a bunch of deer hair, cleanly cut, which Kettunen makes a conclusion has been ripped from a living animal. (　　)

   A. vague　　B. curve　　C. clear　　D. loom

2. The snowbound track <u>sparkles</u> under my automobile lamp as I drive 18 km beyond the nearest shop to meet Ari Määttänen. (　　)

   A. petitions　　B. pioneers　　C. shines　　D. flickers

3. Määttänen shows me a photo on his phone: Kessu's head, so neatly <u>severed</u> it looks like a medical operation. (　　)

   A. discarded　　B. pierced　　C. cut off　　D. rinsed

4. … the development of forests with the latest technology has stripped jobs from the countryside and cottages with scenic beauty lie <u>derelict</u> in snowy forests. (　　)

   A. abandoned　　B. hobble　　C. leeway　　D. dangle

5. Hunting a wolf is tightly regulated: only a few <u>permits</u> will be issued for each region. (　　)

   A. canvasses　　B. glares　　C. slates　　D. licenses

6. He found fighting <u>marks</u>, then wolf tracks. (　　)

   A. icings　　B. signs　　C. snips　　D. hulls

7. For those who remain, hunting is a social <u>glue</u>. (　　)

   A. unity　　B. gateway　　C. gall　　D. harness

8. Hunters are <u>compensated</u> for dogs killed by wolves, but it can take 18 months and does not bring back a pure bred animal they may have spent years training. (　　)

   A. franchised　　B. heaved　　C. paid　　D. archived

9. "They don't <u>jog</u> for pleasure," he says. (　　)

   A. run　　B. wander　　C. override　　D. redeem

10. Instead, the <u>hostility</u> towards wolves in rural Finland is mostly because they take hunting dogs. (　　)

   A. revenge　　B. hatred　　C. filth　　D. meadow

VII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. We find deer tracks. Kettunen points to wolf prints on either side, to where a second and third wolf joined the chase. There are blood spots and more hair and a tree sapling snapped in two.
2. Hunters say they've been disrupted by fireworks, destroyed trail-cameras and a hunting shelter burned to the ground.

3. The animal may be a symbol of freedom and nature's ability to bounce back, but it also embodies two very contemporary tensions: the gulf between countryside and city, and the chasm between ordinary people and an uncaring political people from the upper class.
4. Deer hunting is particularly popular, a pursuit that has evolved over decades, with GPS collar-wearing dogs chasing deer up to 15 km beyond the hunter, who follows it on a screen.
5. Usually, a few hunters on skis will move through the forest with dogs, attempting to flush resting wolves towards a circle of waiting guns ...

VIII. Presentation

Directions: Have a free debate about whether people should kill animals in their own interests after working with your partner in your class and discussing about the debate topic.

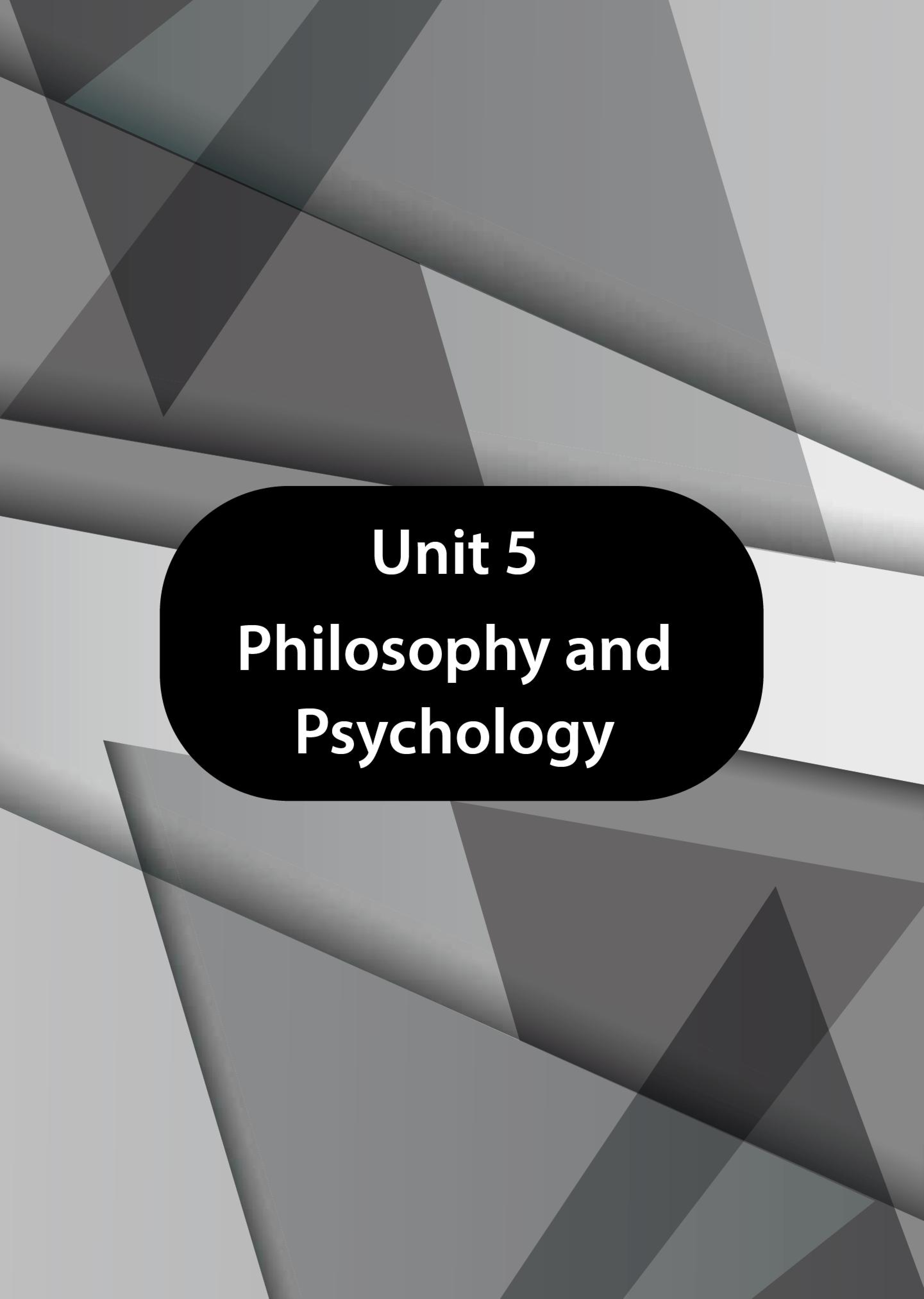
Hints: The opinion for the pros is that people should kill animals in their own interests without government interference.

The opinion for the cons is that people shouldn't kill animals in their own interests and the government should put a ban on the killing action by releasing some relevant regulations and rules.

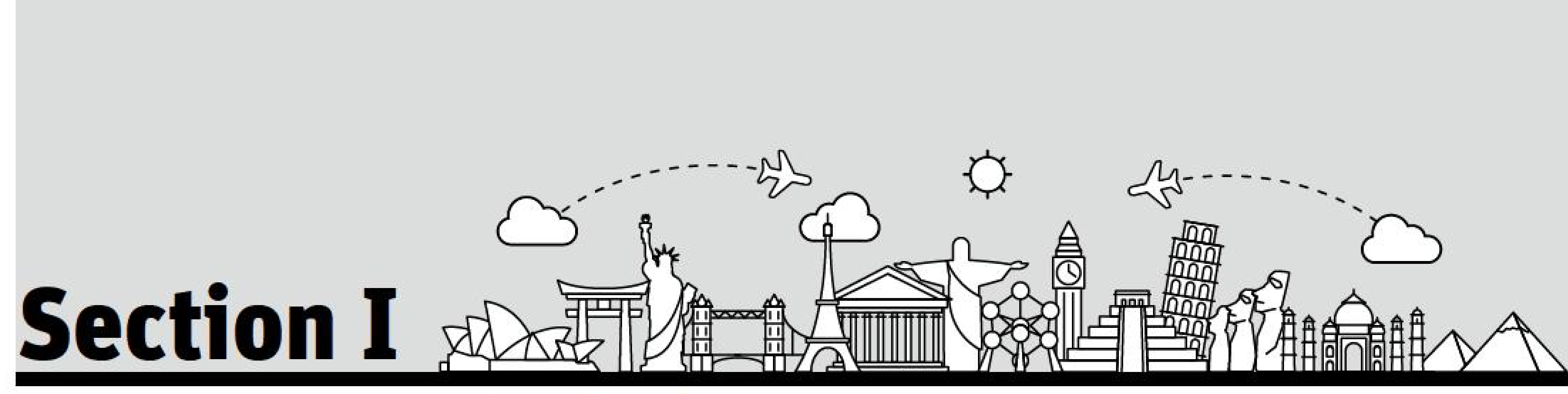
The whole class is divided into two sides: pros and cons.

Four students will be chosen (or voluntarily participate into it) to have a free debate on behalf of their side respectively.

The rest of the students are responsible for brainstorming.



Unit 5
Philosophy and Psychology



Section I

Focus on Prefix (IV)

Top 6 Negative Prefixes

What's the difference between "dis-" and "mis-" or between "un-" and "non-"? This negative prefix list can help you understand the important prefixes at the beginning of each word that can change a word's meaning into its opposite. Here we will explain to you the top 6: de-/dis-/in- (or il-, ir-, im-)/mis-/non-/un-.

1) **de-** is almost always used before a verb, or a word formed from that verb, and means to reverse the verb's action. It has other meanings in addition to making a verb negative. For example, it means "down" in "decline" "decrease" and "depression".

Examples: deactivate, decode, decommission, decompose, deconstruct, decontaminate, decrease, deflate, deflect, deform, derail, detract, demoralize, descend.

2) **dis-** can be used with verbs, nouns, adjectives or adverbs. It also has other meanings besides making words negative.

Examples: disaffected, discourage, disconnect, disclose, disorder, disable/disabled/disability, disagree/disagreeable/disagreement, disbelief, disrespect, dishonor/dishonored/dishonorable, disloyal, displease/displeased/displeasing/displeasure, discrepancy, disillusion, dismantle, discrete, dislocate.

3) **in-/il/ir/im** are usually used for nouns, adjectives, or the adverbs formed from them. They all mean not.

Adjective examples:

il-—illegal, illegible, illiterate, illogical;

im-—immature, impatient, imperfect, impossible, imprecise;

in-—informal, ineffective, inaccessible, inaccurate, inadequate, inappropriate, incapable, incoherent, incompatible, incomplete, inconceivable, inconsistent, incredible, indefinite, inevitable, infinite, inflexible, insecure, insignificant, insubordinate, insufficient, invalid, invariable, invisible, involuntary;

ir-—irrational, irregular, irrelevant, irreparable, irresistible, irresponsible, irreversible.

4) **mis-** is used with verbs (and adjectives and adverbs made from them), as well as nouns. It means bad, wrong, or wrongly.

Examples: misconduct, misinterpret/misinterpreted/misinterpretation, mislead/misled/misleading, misplace/misplaced, misspell/misspelled/misspelling, mistake/mistaken/mistook, mistrust, misunderstand/misunderstood/misunderstanding.

5) **non-** usually means not, but also may mean lack of something.

Noun examples: nonconformity, nonentity, nonexistence, nonintervention, nonsense, etc..

Adjective examples: nonconforming, nonexistent, nonmetallic, nonresident, nonstop.

6) **un-** is the most common negative prefix in English. If in doubt, it's the best one to try. Even many words originally from Latin roots are negated in English with "un".

Adjective examples: unable, unacknowledged, unaffected, unafraid, unaided, unaltered/unalterable, unambiguous, unanticipated, unapproachable, unassigned, unattainable, unavailable, unaware, unceasing, uncertain, unclear, unconventional, uncooperative, uncoordinated, unenforced, unexposed, unfocused, unfriendly, unhelpful, uninformed, unknown, unmodified, unnatural, unpleasant, unpredictable, unprofessional, unrealistic, unrefined, unresolved, unrestricted, unscheduled, unstable, untouched, unwilling, unwise, etc..

Verb examples: unwind; undo; unbutton; unlock; unpack.

The Usage of Negative Prefixes

Negative statements are the opposite of affirmative statements. In English, one way to make negative statements is by adding negative prefixes to nouns, adjectives and verbs. For example: John and James are brothers. John is reliable; you can trust him to do anything you ask. James, on the other hand, is unreliable; you cannot rely on him. By adding "un" to "reliable" we change the meaning of the word to "not reliable".

Use **un-** prefix before words that start with a vowel or consonant.

Use **il-** prefix before words that start with "l": illegal.

Use **im-** prefix before words that start with "b" "m" or "p": imbalanced, immoral, impossible.

Use **ir-** prefix before words that start with "r": irregular.

Use **in-** prefix with words that start with consonants and vowels, but not "i" or "u".

Dis- gives the adjective the opposite meaning. For example: You all agree with the plan, but I still disagree.

Practice by Yourself

Now choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1) They say he has a ________ face.

A. inhonest B. ilhonest C. dishonest

2) I have an ________ fear of mice.

A. irrational B. disrational C. inrational

3) The Joker character in Batman is ________.

A. insane B. irsane C. ilsane

4) In the UK it's ________ to smoke in bars and restaurants.

A. illegal B. inlegal C. imlegal

5) It's ________ that we have to work while they are on holiday.

A. disfair B. infair C. unfair

6) I am too ________ to go fishing.

A. inpatient B. impatient C. unpatient

7) He's so ________ even after all the help we gave him.

A. ingrateful B. ungrateful C. imgrateful

8) He still acts like a child; he's so ________.

A. irmature B. inmature C. immature

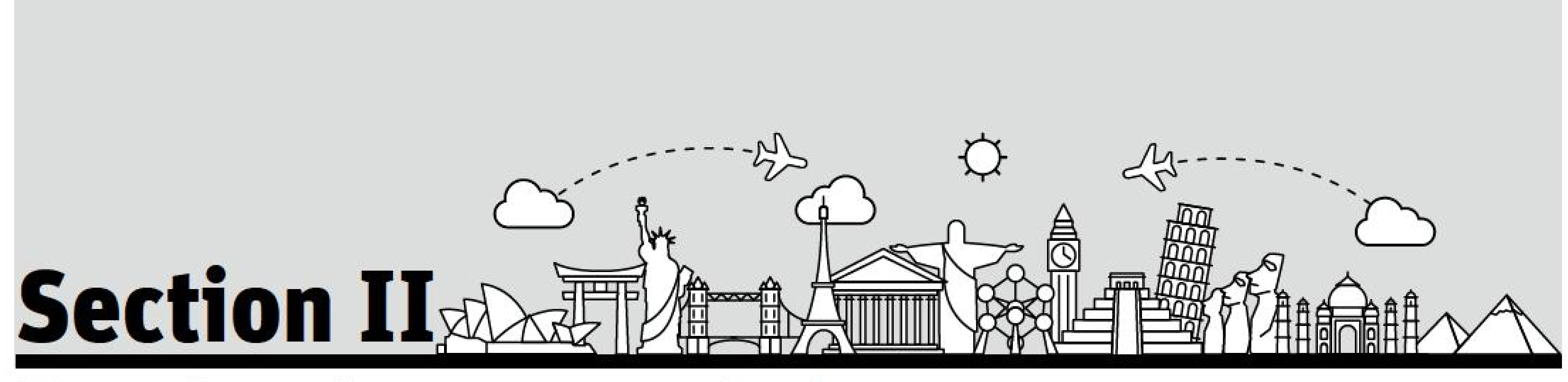
9) I think the information in this report is ________. It doesn't look right.

A. inaccurate B. unaccurate C. iraccurate

10) His attempt to break the world record was ________.

A. insuccessful B. dissuccessful C. unsuccessful

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/prefix-list. html and https: //www. ecenglish. com/learnenglish/lessons/negative-prefixes)



Section II

Text A: What Is Psychology?

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **amateur** ['æmətə(r)] ***adj./n.***

someone who pursues a study or sport as a pastime; engaged in as a pastime; lacking professional skill or expertise

synonym	lover; fan; leisure
antonym	professional
word family	amateurish; amateurism
related phrase	amateur radio; football amateur

Example 1 He's no amateur in farming.

Example 2 A fellow journalist once told me that if you are not writing every day, then you are an amateur.

② **baffle** ['bæf(ə)l] ***n./vt./vi.*** **(baffled/baffled/baffling)**

a flat plate that controls or directs the flow of fluid or energy; to be a mystery or bewildering to; to hinder or prevent (the efforts, plans, or desires) of

synonym	puzzle; confusion; checkboard
word family	baffled; baffling; bafflement
related phrase	baffle plate; baffle sb.

Example 1 Sometimes the decisions baffle and enrage me.

Example 2 The question baffled me completely.

③ **cease** [siːs] ***n./vt./vi.*** **(ceased/ceased/ceasing)**

to stop doing something or stop happening; If something ceases, it stops happening or existing; If you cease to do something, you stop doing it.

synonym	conclude; quit; stop; cessation
word family	ceaseless
related phrase	without cease; cease to do/doing sth.

Example 1 He ceased to be a member of the association.

Example 2 At one o'clock the rain had ceased.

④ **dubious** ['dju:bɪəs] ***adj.***

probably not honest, true, right, etc.; If you describe something as dubious, you mean that you do not consider it to be completely honest, safe, or reliable.

synonym suspicious; doubtful; questionable

word family dubiously; dubiety

related phrase the dubious honor/distinction/pleasure (of doing sth.)

Example 1 The firm was accused of dubious accounting practices.

Example 2 I can see you are dubious; take some time to think about it.

⑤ **entail** [ɪn'teɪl] ***vt.*** **(entailed/entailed/entailing)**

to involve something as a necessary part or result; If one thing entails another, it involves it or causes it.

synonym charge; inflict on

word family entailment

related phrase entail doing sth.

Example 1 A new computer system entails a lot of re-training.

Example 2 The journey will entail changing trains twice.

⑥ **essence** ['es(ə)ns] ***n.***

the most basic and important quality of something; The essence of something is its basic and most important characteristic that gives it its individual identity; You use in essence to emphasize that you are talking about the most important or central aspect of an idea, situation, or event.

synonym substance; truth; entity

word family essential; essentially; essentiality

related phrase in essence

Example 1 In essence, his message was very simple.

Example 2 The two things are the same in outward form but different in essence.

⑦ **intervene** [ˌɪntə'vi:n] ***vi.*** **(intervened/intervened/intervening)**

to become involved in an argument, fight, or other difficult situation in order to change what happens; If you intervene in a situation, you become involved in it and try to change it.

word family intervening; intervention; intervenor

related phrase intervene in; intervene between

Example 1 Jack intervened and told me to stop it.

Example 2 The police don't usually like to intervene in disputes between husbands and wives.

⑧ **invade** [ɪn'veɪd] ***vi./vt.*** **(invaded/invaded/invading)**

to enter a country, town, or area using military force, in order to take control of it; To invade a country means to enter it by force with an army; If you say that people or animals invade a place, you mean that they enter it in large numbers, often in a way that is unpleasant or difficult to deal with.

synonym strike; attack

antonym defend; protect

word family invasive; invasion; invader

related phrase capital invade; be invaded by

Example 1 Germs invade the organism.

Example 2 Every summer the town is invaded by tourists.

⑨ **outright** [(for *adj.*) 'aʊtraɪt; (for *adv.*) aʊt'raɪt] ***adj./adv.***

clear and direct; clearly and directly

synonym overall; heartily; thorough; full; complete; absolute; total

related phrase the outright winner/victor

Example 1 If she asked me outright, I'd tell her.

Example 2 She had failed to win an outright victory.

⑩ **perish** ['perɪʃ] ***vi./vt.*** **(perished/perished/perishing)**

to die, especially in a terrible or sudden way; If people or animals perish, they die as a result of very harsh conditions or as the result of an accident.

synonym destroy; damage; die; flag

word family perishable; perishability; perisher

related phrase perish the thought; perish from

Example 1 Hundreds perished when the ship went down.

Example 2 Most of the butterflies perish in the first frosts of autumn.

⑪ **specify** ['spesɪfaɪ] ***vt.*** **(specified/specified/specifying)**

to state something in an exact and detailed way; If you specify something, you give information about what is required or should happen in a certain situation.

synonym name; appoint; assign

word family specific; specified; specifiable; specification

related phrase client specify; specify that

Example 1 They specified a spacious entrance hall.

Example 2 Regulations specify how long maintenance crews can work.

⑫ **staple** ['steɪp(ə)l] ***adj./n./vt.*** **(stapled/stapled/stapling)**

a small piece of thin wire that is pushed into sheets of paper and bent over to hold them together; a necessary commodity for which demand is constant; to secure or fasten with a staple or staples; necessary foods or commodities

synonym primary; major; main; leading

word family stapler

related phrase staple diet; staple sth. together; staple goods

Example 1 They live on a staple diet of rice and vegetables.

Example 2 Oil is Nigeria's staple export and people who dwell in the country live on it.

⑬ **traumatic** [trɔː'mætɪk] ***adj.***

of or relating to a physical injury or wound to the body; psychologically painful; A traumatic experience is very shocking and upsetting, and may cause psychological damage.

synonym vulnerary; wounded

word family trauma; traumatology; traumatize

related phrase traumatic experience; traumatic events

Example 1 His son's death was the most traumatic event in Stan's life.

Example 2 I suffered a nervous breakdown. It was a traumatic experience.

⑭ **verify** ['verɪfaɪ] ***vt.*** **(verified/verified/verifying)**

to discover whether something is correct or true; If you verify something, you check that it is true by careful examination or investigation.

word family verified; verifiable; verification; verifier

related phrase examine and verify; verify that

Example 1 I looked up the word in a dictionary to verify its spelling.

Example 2 We must verify his figures, which is so ambiguous.

⑮ **abstract** [(for *adj./n.*) 'æbstrækt; (for *v.*) əb'strækt] ***adj./n./vi./vt.*** **(abstracted/abstracted/abstracting)**

a sketchy summary of the main points of an argument or theory; to make off with belongings of others; not representing or imitating external reality or the objects of nature

synonym brief; summary; resume; deep; nonobjective; extract; brief

word family abstracted; abstractly; abstraction

related phrase abstract away from; abstract idea/concept

Example 1 Don't speak in such abstract terms.

Example 2 They can abstract precious medicines from ordinary substances.

⑯ **activate** ['æktɪveɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(activated/activated/activating)**

to make an electrical system or chemical process start working; If a device or process is activated, something causes it to start working.

synonym	stimulate; motivate; needle
antonym	deactivate; invalidate; nullify
word family	active; actively; action; activist; activism
related phrase	activate key; activate an account

Example 1 How do you effectively reach these people and activate them?

Example 2 Video cameras with night vision can be activated by movement.

⑰ **endeavor** [ɪn'devə] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(endeavored/endeavored/endeavoring)**

an attempt to do something new or difficult; If you endeavor to do something, you try very hard to do it; An endeavor is an attempt to do something, especially something new or original.

synonym	effort; struggle; labor; strain
word family	endeavored
related phrase	endeavor to do sth.; scientific endeavor

Example 1 We cannot succeed in this endeavor alone, but we can lead it.

Example 2 They made every endeavor to find the two boys.

⑱ **exert** [ɪg'zɜːt] ***vt.*** **(exerted/exerted/exerting)**

to use your power, influence, etc. in order to make something happen; If someone or something exerts influence, authority, or pressure, they use it in a strong or determined way, especially in order to produce a particular effect.

synonym	handle
word family	exertion
related phrase	exert oneself; exert an influence on

Example 1 He has exerted himself tirelessly on behalf of the charity.

Example 2 They exerted considerable influence within the Ivy universities.

⑲ **grasp** [grɑːsp] ***vi./vt.*** **(grasped/grasped/grasping)**

to take and hold something firmly; to completely understand a fact or an idea, especially a complicated one; If you grasp something, you take it in your hand and hold it very firmly.

synonym	appreciate; strike; scratch
word family	grasping; graspable
related phrase	grasp at sth.

Example 1 They have a good grasp of foreign languages.

Example 2 A short opening paragraph enables the reader to quickly grasp what the article is about.

⑳ **hypothetical** [ˌhaɪpə'θetɪk(ə)l] ***adj.***

based on a situation that is not real, but that might happen; If something is hypothetical, it is based on possible ideas or situations rather than actual ones.

synonym theoretical; if-then
word family hypothetically; hypothesis; hypothesize
related phrase hypothetical reasoning; hypothetical condition

Example 1 Brennan brought up a hypothetical case to make his point.

Example 2 Let's look at a hypothetical situation in which Carol, a recovering alcoholic, gets invited to a party.

㉑ **probe** [prəʊb] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(probed/probed/probing)**

to ask questions in order to find things out, especially things that other people do not want you to know; If you probe into something, you ask questions or try to discover facts about it.

synonym investigation; research; examine; explore
word family probing; probation; probationer
related phrase probe into; a space probe

Example 1 I don't want to probe too deeply into your personal affairs, especially the gossip.

Example 2 Jules probed the mud discreetly with a stick.

㉒ **devise** [dɪ'vaɪz] ***n./vt.*** **(devised/devised/devising)**

to plan or invent a new way of doing something; If you devise a plan, system, or machine, you have the idea for it and design it.

synonym design; engineer; project; legacy; bequest
word family devisal; devisee; deviser
related phrase devise services; teaching devise

Example 1 She devised a method for quicker communications between offices.

Example 2 We devised a scheme to help him streamline the enterprise.

㉓ **amalgamate** [ə'mælgəmeɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(amalgamated/amalgamated/amalgamating)**

to bring or combine together or with something else; When two or more things, especially organizations, amalgamate or are amalgamated, they become one large thing.

synonym merge; compound
word family amalgamative; amalgamation
related phrase amalgamate sth. with/into sth.

Example 1 The company has decided to amalgamate with the parent firm.

Example 2 The editors will amalgamate all the information into one article.

㉔ **modify** ['mɒdɪfaɪ] ***vi./vt.*** **(modified/modified/modifying)**

to make small changes to something in order to improve it and make it more suitable or effective; If you modify something, you change it slightly, usually in order to improve it.

synonym alter; dizen; change; revise

word family modified; modification

related phrase modify sth. to do sth.

Example 1 The seats can be modified to fit other types of vehicle.

Example 2 The regulations can only be modified by a special committee.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

arbitrary	bias	biology	crossword	despair
ego	evaluate	fixture	gauge	inward
id	infer	jigsaw	kitten	manifesto
monkey	objective	philosophy	physics	publication
quit	prejudice	stationary	syndrome	suburb
straightaway	sequence	trauma	terminology	

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. How much do you know about psychology?
2. Have you ever heard about Sigmund Freud's theories?

What Is Psychology?

In 1890, William James, the American philosopher and doctor and one of the founders of modern psychology, defined psychology as "the science of mental life" and this definition provides a good starting point for our understanding even today. We all have a mental life and therefore have some idea about what this means, even though it can be studied in rats, kitten or monkeys as well as in people and the concept remains a complicated one.

Like most psychologists, William James was particularly interested in human psychology, which he thought consisted of certain basic elements: thoughts and feelings, a physical world which exists in time and space, and a way of knowing about these things. For each of us, this knowledge is primarily personal and private. It comes from our own thoughts, feelings and experience of the world, and may or may not be influenced by scientific facts about these things. For this reason, it is easy for us to make judgments about psychological matters using our own experience as a gauge. We behave as amateur psychologists when we offer opinions on abstract psychological phenomena, such as whether brain-washing works, or when we probe as facts our opinions about why other

people behave in the ways that they do: think they are being insulted, feel unhappy, or suddenly quit their jobs. However, problems arise when two people understand these things differently. Formal psychology attempts to provide methods for deciding which explanations are most likely to be correct, or for determining the circumstances under which each applies. The work of psychologists helps us to distinguish between inside information which is arbitrary, and may be biased or dubious, and the facts: between our prejudices and what is "true" in scientific terminology.

Psychology, as defined by William James, is about the mind or brain, but although psychologists do study the brain, we do not understand nearly enough about its workings to be able to understand the part that it exerts in the experience and expression of our hopes, fears, despair and wishes, or in our behavior during experiences as varied as giving birth or watching a football match. Indeed, it is rarely possible to study the brain straightaway. So, psychologists have discovered more by studying our behavior, and by using their observations to derive assumption about what is going on inside us.

Psychology is also about the ways in which organic beings, usually people, use their mental abilities, or minds, to operate in the world around them. The ways in which they do this have changed over time as their environment has changed. Evolutionary theory suggests that if organic beings do not adapt to a changing environment they will perish (hence the sayings "adapt or die" and "survival of the fittest"). The mind has been, and is still being, shaped by adaptive processes. This means that there are evolutionary reasons why our minds work the way that they do—for instance, the reason why we are better at detecting moving objects than stationary ones may be because this ability was useful in helping us to avoid invaders. It is important for psychologists, as well as for those working in other scientific disciplines, such as biology, to be aware of those reasons.

A difficulty inherent in the study of psychology is that scientific facts should be objective and verifiable but the workings of the mind are not observable in the way that those of an engine are. In everyday life they can only be perceived indirectly, and have to be inferred from what can be observed, i.e. behavior. The endeavor of psychology is much like that involved in solving a crossword puzzle or a jigsaw. It involves evaluating and interpreting the available clues, and using what you already know to fill in the gaps. Furthermore, the clues themselves have to be derived from careful observation, based on accurate measurement, analyzed with all possible scientific rigor, and interpreted using logical and reasoned arguments which can entail the public supervision. Much of what we want to know in psychology—how we perceive, learn, remember, think, solve problems, feel, develop, differ from each other, and correlate—has to be measured indirectly, and all these activities are multiply determined: meaning that they are influenced by several factors rather than by a single one. For example, think of all the things that may affect your response to a particular situation (losing your way in a strange suburb). In order to find out which factors are the important ones, a number of other baffling factors have somehow to be excluded.

Complex interactions are the norm rather than the exception in psychology, and understanding them depends on the development of sophisticated techniques and theories. Psychology has the same objectives as any other science: to describe, understand, predict, and learn how to control or modify the processes that it studies. Once these goals have been achieved it can help us to understand the essence of our experience and also be of practical value. For instance, psychological findings have been useful in fields as varied as developing more effective methods of teaching children to read, in devising control panels for machines that reduce the risk of accidents,

and in alleviating the syndrome of people who are emotionally traumatic.

Although psychological questions have been discussed for centuries, they have only been investigated scientifically in the past 150 years. Early psychologists relied on introspection, that is, the reflection on one's own conscious experience, to find answers to psychological questions. These early psychological investigations aimed to identify mental structures. But following the publication by Charles Darwin of *The Origin of Species* in 1859, the scope of psychology expanded to include the functions as well as the structures of consciousness. Mental structures and functions are still of staple interest to psychologists today, but using introspection for studying them has obvious limitations. As Sir Francis Galton pointed out, it leaves one "a helpless onlooker of but a minute fraction of automatic brain work". Attempting to grasp the mind through introspection, according to William James, is like "turning up the gas quickly enough to see how the darkness looks". Contemporary psychologists therefore prefer to base their theories on careful observations of the phenomena in which they are interested, such as the behavior of others rather than on reflections upon their own experience.

In 1913 John Watson published a general behaviorist manifesto for psychology which asserted that, if psychology was to be a science, the data on which it was based must be available for inspection. This focus on observable behavior rather than on inward mental events was linked with a theory of learning and an emphasis on reliable methods of observation and experiment which still influence psychology today. The behaviorist approach suggests that all behavior is the result of conditioning which can be studied by specifying the stimuli and observing the response to them (S-R psychology). What happens in between these two, the intervening variables, was thought petty by the earlier behaviorists, but has since become a prime source of experimental assumption. Testing assumption about these things has enabled psychologists to develop increasingly sophisticated theories about mental structures, functions and processes.

Two other significant influences on the development of psychology early this century came from Gestalt psychology and from spiritual analysis. Gestalt psychologists working in Germany made some interesting observations about the ways in which psychological processes are organized. They showed that our experience differs from what would be expected if it were based solely on the physical properties of external stimuli, and concluded that "the whole is greater than the sum of the parts". For example, when two lights in close vicinity flash in sequence without cease, what we see is one light that moves between the two positions (this is how films work). Recognizing that mental processes contribute in this way to the nature of experience laid the ground work for contemporary developments in cognitive psychology[1], which is the branch of psychology that studies such internal processes.

Sigmund Freud[2]'s theories about the continuing influence of early childhood experiences, and about the theoretical psychological structures he named the ego, id and super ego, drew attention to unconscious processes. These processes, which include unconscious and unacceptable wishes and desires, are inferred, for example, from dreams, slips of the tongue, and tendencies are thought to influence behavior. In particular, unconscious conflicts are hypothesized to be a prime cause of psychological trauma, which spiritual analysts can help to relieve by assisting in their expression, and by using psycho-dynamic theories based on Freud's work to interpret patients' behaviors. The unobservable nature of the mental processes on which Freud's theories are based makes the theories difficult to test scientifically, and for many years the more scientific and the more interpretive

branches of psychology developed independently, along separate routes.

Contemporary psychology is at an exciting stage today partly because these divisions are, in places, breaking down. Psychology is not the only discipline that has had to tackle questions about how we can know about things that we cannot observe outright—think of physics and chemistry. Technological and theoretical advances have activated this process and such developments have changed, and are continuing to change, the nature of psychology as a science. Psychologists can now use sophisticated measuring instruments, electronic equipment and improved statistical methods to analyze multiple variables and huge quantities of data, using computers and all the fixtures involved in information technology. Studying the mind as an information processing system has enabled them to find out more about things that cannot be observed, and the many variables that intervene between stimuli and response, such as those involved in attention, thinking and decision-making. They are now in a position to base their assumption about these things not solely on hypothetical theories arising from inward reflection, as did the early analysts, or solely on observations of behavior, as did early behaviorists, but on amalgamation of these things backed up by more reliable and valid methods of observation and measurement. These developments have produced a revolution in psychology as "the science of mental life", and their continued development means that there is still much that remains to be explored.

(Adapted from *Psychology: A Very Short Introduction*, written by Gillian Butler and Freda McManus)

Notes

① Cognitive psychology

Cognitive psychology is the study of mental processes, such as "attention, language use, memory, perception, problem solving, creativity, and thinking". Much of the work derived from cognitive psychology has been integrated into various other modern disciplines of psychological study, including educational psychology, social psychology, personality psychology, abnormal psychology, developmental psychology and economics. Modern perspectives on cognitive psychology generally address cognition as a dual process theory, introduced by Jonathan Haidt in 2006, and expounded upon by Daniel Kahneman in 2011. Kahneman differentiated the two styles of processing more, calling them intuition and reasoning. Intuition (or system 1), similar to associative reasoning, was determined to be fast and automatic, usually with strong emotional bonds included in the reasoning process. Kahneman said that this kind of reasoning was based on formed habits and was very difficult to change or manipulate. Reasoning (or system 2) was slower and much more volatile, being subject to conscious judgments and attitudes.

② Sigmund Freud

Sigmund Freud (6 May 1856–23 September 1939) was an Austrian neurologist and the founder of psychoanalysis, a clinical method for treating psychopathology through dialogue between a patient and a psychoanalyst. In creating psychoanalysis, Freud developed therapeutic techniques, such as the use of free association and discovered transference, establishing its central role in the analytic process. Freud's redefinition of sexuality to include its infantile forms

led him to formulate the Oedipus complex as the central tenet of psychoanalytical theory. His analysis of dreams as wish-fulfillments provided him with models for the clinical analysis of symptom formation and the underlying mechanisms of repression. On this basis Freud elaborated his theory of the unconscious and went on to develop a model of psychic structure comprising id, ego and super-ego. Freud postulated the existence of libido, an energy with which mental processes and structures are invested and which generates erotic attachments and a death drive, the source of compulsive repetition, hate, aggression and neurotic guilt. In his later work Freud developed a wide-ranging interpretation and critique of religion and culture.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) Psychology is an easy concept to understand, because it can be perceived in animals.
2. ( ) Thoughts and feelings are basic elements of human psychology.
3. ( ) We have understood much better about the workings of human brain.
4. ( ) Evolutionary theory indicates that if organic beings do not adapt to a changing environment, they will be at risk.
5. ( ) The study of psychology is more difficult than that involved in solving a crossword puzzle or a jigsaw.
6. ( ) Psychological findings haven't turned out to be useful in other fields.
7. ( ) Contemporary psychologists prefer to base their theories on their intuition.
8. ( ) Two other significant influences on the development of psychology early this century came from Gestalt psychology and from spiritual analysis.
9. ( ) Mental processes are quite easy to understand, thus makes the theories easier to test scientifically.
10. ( ) Psychology is not the only discipline that has had to tackle questions about how we can know about things.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

exert	activate	specify	outright	staple
devise	abstract	invade	grasp	traumatic

VII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. Sometimes the decisions <u>baffle</u> and enrage me. (   )
   A. bruise B. hardship C. disturb D. prick
2. This commitment does not <u>entail</u> surrendering our total selves to each other; nor does it imply that the relationship is necessarily permanent. (   )
   A. bail B. grub C. require D. lurk
3. That means they're prone to <u>intervene</u> and take positive action when no one else will. (   )
   A. participate B. interfere C. shatter D. enlarge
4. If she asked me <u>outright</u>, I'd tell her. (   )
   A. personally B. consciously C. objectively D. directly
5. They live on a <u>staple</u> diet of rice and vegetables. (   )
   A. ample B. nutritious C. major D. roast
6. A burst of light is seen by two observers: one <u>stationary</u> on a platform, the other moving in a train. (   )
   A. still B. shaking C. incoming D. earnest
7. Don't you get bored living out here in the <u>suburbs</u>? (   )
   A. downtown B. outskirts C. crust D. district
8. The child has the capacity to bounce back from loss, <u>trauma</u>, or abuse. (   )
   A. wound B. amputate C. bully D. obstacle
9. More problems like those at the nuclear power plant are certain to <u>arise</u>. (   )
   A. disappear B. occur C. bundle D. flee
10. Don't <u>evaluate</u> people by their clothes. (   )
    A. assess B. nudge C. perceive D. hinder

VIII. Word Formation

Directions: Add a negative prefix to each group to create words with opposite meaning.

1. ________—legal; logical
2. ________—responsible; respective
3. ________—appear; ability; agree; honest
4. ________—usual; expected; experienced; willing; happy; lucky; fortunately
5. ________—convenient; correct; capable; visible
6. ________—possible; polite; mature
7. ________—stop; smokers
8. ________—understand; take; fortune; lead

Directions: Complete the following sentences by adding a negative prefix to each word.

9. Rose said that it was ________fair if Dad gave me a dictionary but gave her only a diary.
10. The mother ________dressed the baby, and then put him in a basin of warm water.
11. Though he didn't win any medals in the last sports meet, he was not ________couraged.
12. It's ________possible for anyone to finish the work within such a short time.
13. Please don't ________understand what I have said.
14. This cloth would be ________visible to anyone who was ________fit for the office he held.

IX. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. In 1890, William James, the American philosopher and doctor and one of the founders of modern psychology, defined psychology as "the science of mental life" and this definition provides a good starting point for our understanding even today.
2. Like most psychologists, William James was particularly interested in human psychology, which he thought consisted of certain basic elements: thoughts and feelings, a physical world which exists in time and space, and a way of knowing about these things.
3. Psychology, as defined by William James, is about the mind or brain, but although psychologists do study the brain, we do not understand nearly enough about its workings to be able to understand the part that it exerts in the experience and expression of our hopes, fears, despair and wishes, or in our behavior during experiences as varied as giving birth or watching a football match.
4. A difficulty inherent in the study of psychology is that scientific facts should be objective and verifiable but the workings of the mind are not observable in the way that those of an engine are.
5. This focus on observable behavior rather than on inward mental events was linked with a theory of learning and an emphasis on reliable methods of observation and experiment which still influence psychology today.

X. Word Exclusion

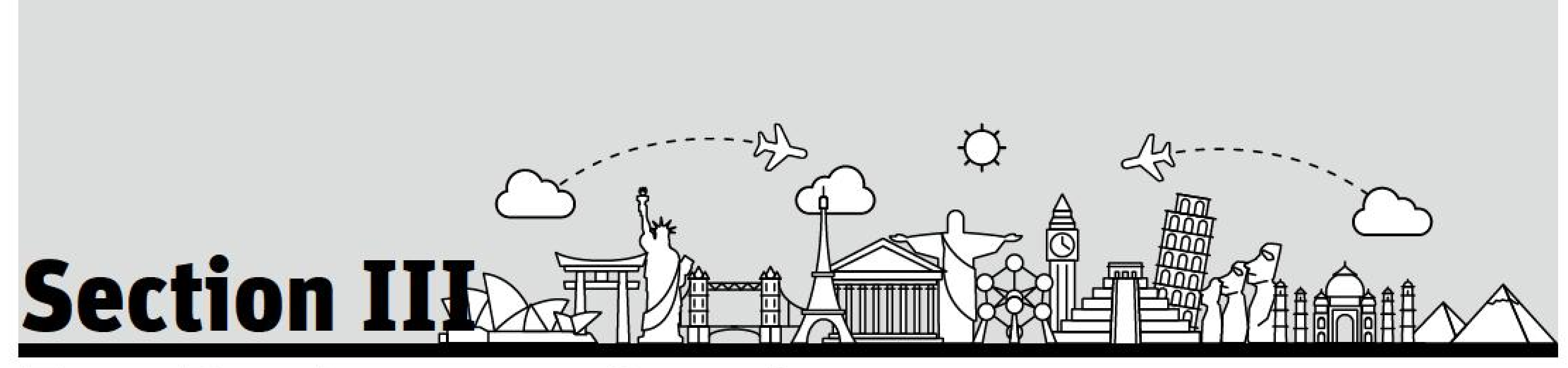
Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first.

Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. diarrhoea pox marble ulcer pneumonia (   ) ________
2. hare deer frog pony tee (   ) ________
3. rib tummy bladder spice gland (   ) ________
4. pioneer professor shareholder broker spanner general (   ) ________
5. Mexico Caribbean Norway Portugal Bosnia (   ) ________



Section III

Text B: The Case for Shyness

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **abnormal** [æb'nɔːml] ***adj.***

very different from usual in a way that seems strange, worrying, wrong, or dangerous; Someone or something that is abnormal is unusual, especially in a way that is troublesome.

synonym	unnatural; eccentric
antonym	normal; natural
word family	abnormally; abnormality
related phrase	abnormal phenomena; abnormal behavior

Example 1 They have one abnormal gene from that parent and one normal gene from the other parent.

Example 2 My parents thought it was abnormal for a boy to be interested in ballet.

② **component** [kəm'pəʊnənt] ***n./adj.***

The component parts of something are the parts that it consists of; one of several parts that together make up a whole machine, system, etc..

synonym	element; constituent
word family	componentry
related phrase	component analysis; major component

Example 1 Exercise is one of the key components of a healthy lifestyle.

Example 2 In this example, the component itself provides the measurement.

③ **curse** [kɜːs] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(cursed/cursed/cursing)**

to swear or to ask God or a magical power to harm someone; If you curse, you use very impolite or offensive language, usually because you are angry about something.

synonym	oath; anathema; swear
word family	cursed; curst
related phrase	curse sb./sth. for (doing) sth.; be cursed with

Example 1 He believed that someone had put a curse on the house.

Example 2 He cursed his bad luck in arriving just after she'd left.

④ **dissolve** [dɪ'zɒlv] ***vi./vt.*** **(dissolved/dissolved/dissolving)**

If a solid dissolves, it mixes with a liquid and becomes part of it; If a substance dissolves in liquid or if you dissolve it, it becomes mixed with the liquid and disappears.

synonym melt; disappear

word family dissolved; dissolution; dissolvable

related phrase dissolve in/into

Example 1 Both salt and sugar dissolve easily in water.

Example 2 Some of the organic compounds the dead creatures contain, though, dissolve out of them and into the water.

⑤ **overlap** [ˌəʊvə'læp] ***vt./vi.*** **(overlapped/overlapped/overlapping)**

If two or more things overlap, part of one thing covers part of another thing; If one thing overlaps another, or if you overlap them, a part of the first thing occupies the same area as a part of the other thing. You can also say that two things overlap.

synonym repeat; segistration

word family overlapping

related phrase overlap region; overlap with

Example 1 While you cannot plan for every disaster, many of the recovery procedures overlap.

Example 2 The second phase of development overlaps the first.

⑥ **revolve** [rɪ'vɒlv] ***vi./vt.*** **(revolved/revolved/revolving)**

to move around like a wheel, or to make something move around like a wheel; If you say that one thing revolves around another thing, you mean that the second thing is the main feature or focus of the first thing; If one object revolves around another object, the first object turns in a circle around the second object.

synonym wheel; circle

word family revolved; revolver

related phrase revolve around sb./sth.

Example 1 We must revolve the problem before giving an answer.

Example 2 This person will have the most visibility on screen and will also have the core conflict or quest around which all other events revolve.

⑦ **sociable** ['səʊʃəb(ə)l] ***adj.***

Someone who is sociable is friendly and enjoys being with other people; Sociable people are friendly and enjoy talking to other people.

synonym gregarious; amicable

word family social; socialize

related phrase sociable person; sociable atmosphere

Example 1 Half the battle is just getting warmed up so that you're in a sociable state, and you can do this with anyone.

Example 2 It may make a petty person all the more petty, or a shy person more sociable.

⑧ **spontaneous** [spɒn'teɪnɪəs] ***adj.***

Something that is spontaneous has not been planned or organized, but happens by itself, or because you suddenly feel you want to do it.

synonym natural; initiative

antonym compulsory

word family spontaneously

related phrase spontaneous combustion; spontaneous response

Example 1 Spontaneous creation is the reason there is something rather than nothing, why the universe exists, why we exist.

Example 2 That tells us whether the change is spontaneous.

⑨ **summon** ['sʌmən] ***vt.*** **(summoned/summoned/summoning)**

to order someone to come to a place; If you summon someone, you order them to come to you; If you summon a quality, you make a great effort to have it. For example, if you summon the courage or strength to do something, you make a great effort to be brave or strong, so that you will be able to do it.

synonym call; muster

word family summoned; summoning

related phrase summon up; summon sb. to do sth.

Example 1 He said he would summon officials to testify in parliament.

Example 2 So let us summon a new spirit of patriotism, of responsibility, where each of us resolves to pitch in and work harder and look after not only ourselves but each other.

⑩ **shrink** [ʃrɪŋk] ***vi./vt.*** **(shrank/shrunk/shrinking)**

to become smaller, or to make something smaller, through the effects of heat or water; If something shrinks or something else shrinks it, it becomes smaller.

synonym contract; compress

antonym enlarge; expand

word family shrinking; shrunk

related phrase shrink from; shrink into oneself

Example 1 Will this soap shrink woolen clothes?

Example 2 In our lifetimes, it is likely to shrink to the size it was in the Roman era.

⑪ **companion** [kəm'pænjən] ***n.***

someone you spend a lot of time with, especially a friend; A companion is someone who you spend time with or who you are travelling with.

synonym	friend; fellow
word family	company; companionate

Example 1 She is a dependable companion.

Example 2 Without looking at either Manuel or the boy she turned to her companion and they went on up the road together.

⑫ **epidemic** [ˌepɪ'demɪk] ***adj./n.***

a large number of cases of a disease that happen at the same time; If there is an epidemic of a particular disease somewhere, it affects a very large number of people there and spreads quickly to other areas.

synonym	infectious
word family	epidemiological
related phrase	epidemic situation

Example 1 The data of this epidemic should not be surprising.

Example 2 An epidemic broke out.

⑬ **interior** [ɪn'tɪərɪə] ***adj./n.***

the inner part or inside of something; inside or indoors

synonym	inner; indoor
antonym	outer; external
word family	interiorize
related phrase	interior design; interior designer

Example 1 The interior of the church was dark.

Example 2 Some of the interior detailing is not to my taste, but is down to customer specification.

⑭ **manifest** ['mænɪfest] ***adj./vt.*** **(manifested/manifested/manifesting)**

to show a feeling, attitude, etc.; If you manifest a particular quality, feeling, or illness, or if it manifests itself, it becomes visible or obvious; If you say that something is manifest, you mean that it is clearly true and that nobody would disagree with it if they saw it or considered it.

synonym	indicate; prove; show; demonstrate
word family	manifestly
related phrase	manifest sth. in/as/through sth.

Example 1 Fear was manifest on her face.

Example 2 The shareholders have manifested their intention to sell the shares.

⑮ **morbid** ['mɔːbɪd] ***adj.***

with a strong and unhealthy interest in unpleasant subjects, especially death; relating to or caused by a disease; If you describe a person or their interest in something as morbid, you mean that they are very interested in unpleasant things, especially death, and you think this is strange.

synonym	sick; diseased
antonym	healthy; robust
word family	morbidly; morbidness
related phrase	morbid obesity; morbid fascination/curiosity

Example 1 He was disenthralled from morbid fantasies.

Example 2 If anyone lifts the cloth from the face of that unpleasant thing, it will be in gratification of a mere morbid curiosity.

⑯ **punctuate** ['pʌŋktʃʊeɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(punctuated/punctuated/punctuating)**

to divide written work into sentences, phrases, etc. using commas, full stops, etc.

synonym	emphasize; highlight
word family	punctuation
related phrase	punctuate rate; punctuate with

Example 1 How do you punctuate the following sentence?

Example 2 The game was punctuated by a series of injuries.

⑰ **spur** [spɜː] ***vi./vt.*** **(spurred/spurred/spurring)**

to encourage someone or make them want to do something; to make an improvement or change happen faster; to encourage a horse to go faster, especially by pushing it with special points on the heels of your boots

synonym	stimulate; encourage
word family	spurred; spurring
related phrase	spur sb. (on) to do sth.; on the spur of the moment

Example 1 I welcome this healthy and fair competition because I believe it will spur us both to innovate and both will benefit from it.

Example 2 Kennedy hoped in the aftermath of the bombing that it would spur action against racial hatred.

⑱ **cultivate** ['kʌltɪveɪt] ***vt.*** **(cultivated/cultivated/cultivating)**

to prepare and use land for growing crops and plants; to work hard to develop a particular skill, attitude, or quality

synonym foster; plant

word family cultivable; cultivation

related phrase cultivate talents; cultivate the land

Example 1 They hope to cultivate a new strain that combines all these merits but does not have the defects.

Example 2 That also means that the other natural places to cultivate algae are power stations.

⑲ **thereafter** [ðeər'ɑ:ftə] ***adv.***

after a particular event or time; Thereafter means after the event or date mentioned.

synonym subsequently; thenceforth

antonym theretofore

Example 1 Thereafter, any user who enters the view will see everything as it should be.

Example 2 We sipped dry sherry on his porch until sunrise, and shortly thereafter he moved into my small Florida home.

⑳ **respective** [rɪ'spektɪv] ***adj.***

used before a noun to refer to the different things that belong to each separate person or thing mentioned; Respective means relating or belonging separately to the individual people you have just mentioned.

synonym each; individual; several

word family respectively

related phrase respective party; respective responsibility

Example 1 Select any one of the listed files to open and edit it in the respective editor.

Example 2 Such trends in my field and yours have implications for the identity of our respective disciplines.

㉑ **suspicion** [sə'spɪʃ(ə)n] ***n.***

a feeling you have that someone is probably guilty of doing something wrong or dishonest; If there is suspicion of someone or something, people do not trust them or consider them to be reliable.

synonym doubt; question

word family suspicious; suspicionless

related phrase on suspicion of; under suspicion; beyond suspicion

Example 1 The police booked him for suspicion of theft.

Example 2 I wondered how I could leave early without arousing anyone's suspicion.

㉒ **profound** [prə'faʊnd] ***adj.***

having a strong influence or effect; You use profound to emphasize that something is very great or

intense; A profound idea, work, or person shows great intellectual depth and understanding.

synonym encyclopedic; cyclopaedic

word family profoundness

related phrase profound impact; profound change

Example 1 This remark has profound implications.

Example 2 And what is belief? It is a profound belief related to what you want to achieve.

㉓ **aggravate** ['ægrəveɪt] ***vt.*** **(aggravated/aggravated/aggravating)**

to make a bad situation, an illness, or an injury worse; If someone or something aggravates a situation, they make it worse; If someone or something aggravates you, they make you annoyed.

synonym anger; complicate

antonym lessen; relieve

word family aggravated; aggravation

related phrase aggravate tension; aggravate the situation

Example 1 Their money problems were further aggravated by a rise in interest rates.

Example 2 Building the new road will only aggravate the situation.

㉔ **contend** [kən'tend] ***vt.*** **(contended/contended/contending)**

to compete against someone in order to gain something; If you have to contend with a problem or difficulty, you have to deal with it or overcome it; If you contend with someone for something, such as power, you compete with them to try to get it.

synonym fight; debate

word family contentious

related phrase contend with sth.; contend for

Example 1 Others contend it simply forces one person to prove he/she is better than another.

Example 2 Many people contend that we have a right to think what we will, and that wicked thoughts, if not translated into wicked deeds, are not harmful.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

abrupt	albeit	beast	beneath	blatant
caliber	courtesy	disorder	drape	footing
gaze	gene	grasp	hamburger	jumble
lethal	liberate	Norway	petty	plague
privacy	psychiatry	queer	reluctance	savage
sherry	sociology	timid	tutor	violet
waffle				

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Are you shy? How do you view shyness?

2. Can shyness be beneficial, or a total curse?

The Case for Shyness

Shyness, that single emotion that comprises so many different things—embarrassment, timidity, a fear of rejection, a reluctance to be inconvenient—is, albeit its extreme general character, also extremely mysterious. Is it a mere feeling? A personality-defining condition? A form of anxiety? While shyness is for some a constant companion, its flushes and flashes managed in the rough manner of a chronic disease, it can also descend, without the courtesy of a warning, on even the most social, and socially graceful, of people. It can manifest as the silent smile that appears, spontaneous, when you're alone with a stranger in an elevator. Or as, right before the drape goes up, the heavy stomach and the sweaty hands and the desperate desire to escape to someplace—any place—that is not the stage. Or it can come when the bite of hamburger didn't go down quite right, and your throat is closing, and the world is revolving, and everyone is watching, and all you want to do is get away from it all.

Shyness, basically, is a thoughtless monster. Or, as the cultural historian Joe Moran[1] argues in his wonderful new book, *Shrinking Violets: The Secret Life of Shyness*, it is a thoughtless monster that has been a constant, if largely invisible, companion to human history. Today, in the United States, shyness is often associated with a broad jumble of related and overlapping conditions, from occasional timidness to general awkwardness, from stage fright to the social anxiety disorder. This imprecision is, it turns out, fitting: Shyness isn't a single situation or character, Moran suggests, but, instead, a regular but also irregular interloper in human affairs, affecting people across ages and countries and cultures. Shyness can be, sometimes, a curse. It can be, as Dr. Heimlich[2] acknowledged, occasionally a lethal one.

Shyness isn't a single situation or character, but rather an irregular interloper in human affairs. But shyness can also be, Moran argues, a great gift, its spur toward introversion allowing for the innovative thinking and creative caliber that might escape the more talkatively (chattily) inclined. *Shrinking Violets* is a sweeping work of history and sociology, summoning Simmel and Seneca and Sontag in its exploration of diffidence; it is also, more simply, a series of short biographies of shyness and those who have lived, to varying degrees, beneath its influence. Alan Turing[3], Moran notes, was timid as often as he was abrupt. Agatha Christie[4], so bold on the page, was painfully shy in person. So was, when he was not performing leadership, Charles de Gaulle[5]. And so was, when he was not performing music, Morrissey[6]. Lucius Licinius Crassus, governor of Rome and tutor of Cicero, confessed to "fainting with fear" before delivering a speech. Primo Levi[7] told Philip Roth[8] about "this shyness of mine". Oliver Sacks[9]' first book went unpublished because he lent its only autograph to a colleague who committed suicide shortly thereafter—and Sacks was too shy to ask the man's widow for the book's return.

Shyness—at its core, perhaps, an uneasy acknowledgement of the vast distance that separates

one human mind from another—has long been a companion to people and their endeavors. It is silent, and it is constant. We might not all define ourselves to be among les grandes timides, as the French psychiatrist Ludovic Dugas preferred to call them; for some of us, timidity will be an only occasional visitor. But shyness, Moran suggests, however it chooses to manifest itself—and the thing about shyness is that the person who experiences it will have practically no say in the matter—can be a benefit as well as a curse. The shy is frequently thoughtful and occasionally brilliant. They are often sensitive to the needs, and the gaze, of others. The problem is that they live in a world that, despite the general characters of shyness, has extremely little patience for it.

Moran, who is British, counts himself among the timides; because of that he is aware of how difficult it is to be a shy in this blatant world. He also knows what a quietly extreme proposition it is to celebrate shyness. The far more fashionable thing—particularly in Britain, where *Shrinking Violets* was initially published, and even more so in the United States—has been to treat shyness as a problem to be treated and then, if at all possible, never mentioned again. Shyness, so emotionally close to shame, is, too often, regarded as a cause for it. Within a culture that so deeply values self-confidence—and that takes for granted that social skills are external evidence of one's interior self-esteem—shyness is seen with suspicion. Quietness, in a world that is loud, can make for an easy enemy.

In 1997, at a meeting of academics in Cardiff, Wales, that doubled as the first international conference on shyness, Philip Zimbardo, the outstanding psychologist, made an argument that was at once provocative and unsurprising: Shyness, he contended, was becoming an epidemic. Under the influence of digital technology and its attendant items—Internet, email, ATMs—the "social glue" that had bound earlier generations into networks of enforced community and cooperation was dissolving. The insights Zimbardo had inferred from his Stanford Prison Experiment had taken a new turn: Channeling the work of Sherry Turkle and Robert Putnam, he had begun to worry that technology, all the ways humans had invented to avoid each other, would ultimately aggravate shyness. By the year 2000, Zimbardo figured, it would be possible to go for a day without talking to another living person. We were entering, he warned, "the new ice age".

It remains to be seen whether the petty outgrowths of the World Wide Web will liberate or trap us. But "the new ice age", as a concept, Moran suggests, tapped neatly into long-standing ideas about the nature of shyness: that it is not just an emotional response to others, but, more specifically, an emotional response to the conditions of modern life. In this reading of human history, shyness is an emotion that was also, to some extent, an invention.

Ormonde Maddock Dalton, an archaeologist and a director at the British Museum in the early 20th century, believed shyness, along these lines, to be a secondary product of civilization. Beasts and savages, Dalton pointed out, do not have the luxury of timidity if they are to survive in their respective wilds; people who are concerned merely with the most basic of needs—food, shelter, reproduction—will have little practical use for the self-consciousness required of shyness. (Charles Darwin, who cultivated throughout his career an interest in the emotions of animals, remained baffled about the evolution of shyness—"this queer state of mind", he called it—in humans. How had evolution, Darwin wondered, endowed humanity with a condition that had so little obvious use in nature? Darwin was led to such wondering, in part, because he, too, found himself occasionally plagued with shyness.)

For Dalton, shyness was the result not just of civilization itself, but of one of its secondary

products: life lived as a kind of never-ending performance. It was an idea inspired not by Erving Goffman; instead, for his inspiration, Dalton looked to the large group of people he considered partially responsible for the rise of all artifice: women. Their tendency to turn life into a series of staged scenes, Dalton believed, would—it was only logical—create conditions within which those shows could fail. Thus, shyness, which is among so much else the self-conscious awareness of the many, many ways that human interaction can go wrong. Dr. Zimbardo warned that shyness, given all the ways humans have invented to avoid each other, was becoming an epidemic.

Dalton's ideas live on, today, in the broad recognition, within anthropology and far beyond, that shyness will have cultural components as well as physical. They also live on, however, in the notion that shyness is best understood not just as the complicated interplay between the human brain and the social world, but also, more simply, as a deviation. Sociability is normal; shyness, it must follow, is abnormal. After all, we humans are—it is a cliché because it is so deeply true—social animals. We define ourselves as a species through our shared waffle as much as our shared DNA (gene), through the fact that we put our opposable thumbs to work, not just building shelter and creating art, but also writing letters and grasping phones and punctuating the making of evening plans with some enthusiastic dancing-lady emojis. We are human, in some small but profound part, because we are human together.

It is on those social-evolutionary footings, though, that shyness is sometimes suspected, and sometimes morbid. Shy people, the sociologist Susie Scott argued, are not merely choosing privacy over companionship, or small groups over larger ones; they are conducting, each time they beg off or turn away, an "unintentional breaching experiment". They are, in their very shyness, departing from the broader social order.

(Adaped from https: //www. theatlantic. com/entertainment/archive/2017/02/the-case-for-shyness/516933/)

Notes

① Joe Moran

Joe Moran is a social and cultural historian who has written about everyday life, especially British everyday life from the mid-twentieth century until the present day. Moran studied international history and politics at Leeds University before doing an MA in English literature and a DPhil in American studies at Sussex University. Quoting Doreen Massey, Moran says that despite every generation's emphasis on change, "much of life for many people 'still consists of waiting in a bus shelter with your shopping for a bus that never comes'".

② Dr. Heimlich

Henry Judah Heimlich (3 February 1920–17 December 2016) was an American thoracic surgeon and medical researcher. He is widely credited as the inventor of the Heimlich maneuver, a technique of abdominal thrusts for stopping choking, described in *Emergency Medicine* in 1974. He also invented the Micro Trach portable oxygen system for ambulatory patients and the Heimlich Chest Drain Valve, or "flutter valve", which drains blood and air out of the chest cavity.

③ Alan Turing

Alan Mathison Turing OBE FRS (23 June 1912–7 June 1954) was an English computer scientist, mathematician, logician, cryptanalyst, philosopher and theoretical biologist. He was highly influential in the development of theoretical computer science, providing a formalization of the concepts of algorithm and computation with the Turing machine, which can be considered a model of a general purpose computer. Turing is widely considered to be the father of theoretical computer science and artificial intelligence.

④ Agatha Christie

Dame Agatha Mary Clarissa Christie, (née Miller; 15 September 1890–12 January 1976) was an English crime novelist, short story writer and playwright. She is best known for her 66 detective novels and 14 short story collections, particularly those revolving around her fictional detectives Hercule Poirot and Miss Marple. She also wrote the world's longest-running play, a murder mystery, *The Mousetrap*, and six romances under the name "*Mary Westmacott*". In 1971 she was made a Dame for her contribution to literature.

⑤ Charles de Gaulle

Charles André Joseph Marie de Gaulle (22 November 1890–9 November 1970) was a French general and statesman. He was the leader of Free France (1940–1944) and the head of the Provisional Government of the French Republic (1944–1946). In 1958, he founded the Fifth Republic and was elected as the President of France, a position he held until his resignation in 1969. He was the dominant figure of France during the Cold War era and his memory continues to influence French politics.

⑥ Morrissey

Steven Patrick Morrissey (born on 22 May 1959), professionally known as Morrissey, is an English singer, songwriter and author. He rose to prominence as the lead singer of the indie rock band The Smiths, which was active from 1982 to 1987. Since then, Morrissey has had a solo career, making the top ten of the UK Singles Chart on ten occasions.

⑦ Primo Levi

Primo Michele Levi (31 July 1919–11 April 1987) was an Italian Jewish chemist, writer and Holocaust survivor. He was the author of several books, novels, collections of short stories, essays and poems. His best-known works include *If This Is a Man* (1947), which was his account of the year he spent as a prisoner in the Auschwitz concentration camp in Nazi-occupied Poland; and his unique work, *The Periodic Table* (1975), linked to qualities of the elements, which the Royal Institution of Great Britain named the best science book ever written.

⑧ Philip Roth

Philip Milton Roth (19 March 1933–22 May 2018) is an American novelist. Roth's fiction, regularly set in Newark, New Jersey, is known for its intensely autobiographical character, for philosophically and formally blurring the distinction between reality and fiction, for its "sensual, ingenious style" and for its provocative explorations of American identity. Roth is one of the most awarded American writers of his generation.

⑨ Oliver Sacks

Oliver Wolf Sacks, (9 July 1933–30 August 2015) was a British neurologist, naturalist, historian of science and author. Born in Great Britain, and mostly educated there, he spent his career in the United States. He believed that the brain is the "most incredible thing in the universe". He became widely known for writing best-selling case histories about both his patients' and his own disorders and unusual experiences, with some of his books adapted for plays by major playwrights, feature films, animated short films, opera, dance, fine art and musical works in the classical genre.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

V. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

suspicion	shrink	summon	revolve	abnormal
curse	epidemic	dissolve	overlap	spur

VI. Word Formation

Directions: Read the text and identify the words with the following prefixes; then explain their meanings in your own words.

1. un-— ________
2. in-— ________
3. ir-— ________
4. im-— ________
5. dis-— ________

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the proper form of the words given.

6. You will be ________ (able) to pass the exam if you don't study hard.
7. It is ________ (necessary) for you to walk the little dog once a week to the park.
8. There is a ________ (regular) rain in Sahara Desert every year.
9. Is it ________ (possible) to get to the city by train?
10. Some people feel ________ (happy) that the government gives poor people such small and ________ (comfortable) flats.
11. We should keep students staying away from the ________ (healthy) books.
12. If someone does not show good manners to others, he is ________ (polite).
13. Jim always tells lies and he is an ________ (honest) boy.
14. This girl is so ________ (care) that she often makes mistakes in her homework.
15. It's not easy for those superstars to face ________ (end) interviews and doubts.

Directions: Write down the words' antonyms by adding an affix.

16. legal ________
17. known ________
18. finite ________
19. hurried ________
20. dependent ________
21. common ________
22. important ________
23. agree ________

VII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Shyness, that single emotion that comprises so many different things—embarrassment, timidity, a fear of rejection, a reluctance to be inconvenient—is, albeit its extreme general character, also extremely mysterious.
2. Today, in the United States, shyness is often associated with a broad jumble of related and overlapping conditions, from occasional timidness to general awkwardness, from stage fright to the social anxiety disorder.
3. Shyness—at its core, perhaps, an uneasy acknowledgement of the vast distance that separates one human mind from another—has long been a companion to people and their endeavors.
4. Within a culture that so deeply values self-confidence—and that takes for granted that social skills are external evidence of one's interior self-esteem—shyness is seen with suspicion.
5. We define ourselves as a species through our shared waffle as much as our shared DNA (gene), through the fact that we put our opposable thumbs to work, not just building shelter and creating art, but also writing letters and grasping phones and punctuating the making of evening plans with some enthusiastic dancing-lady emojis.

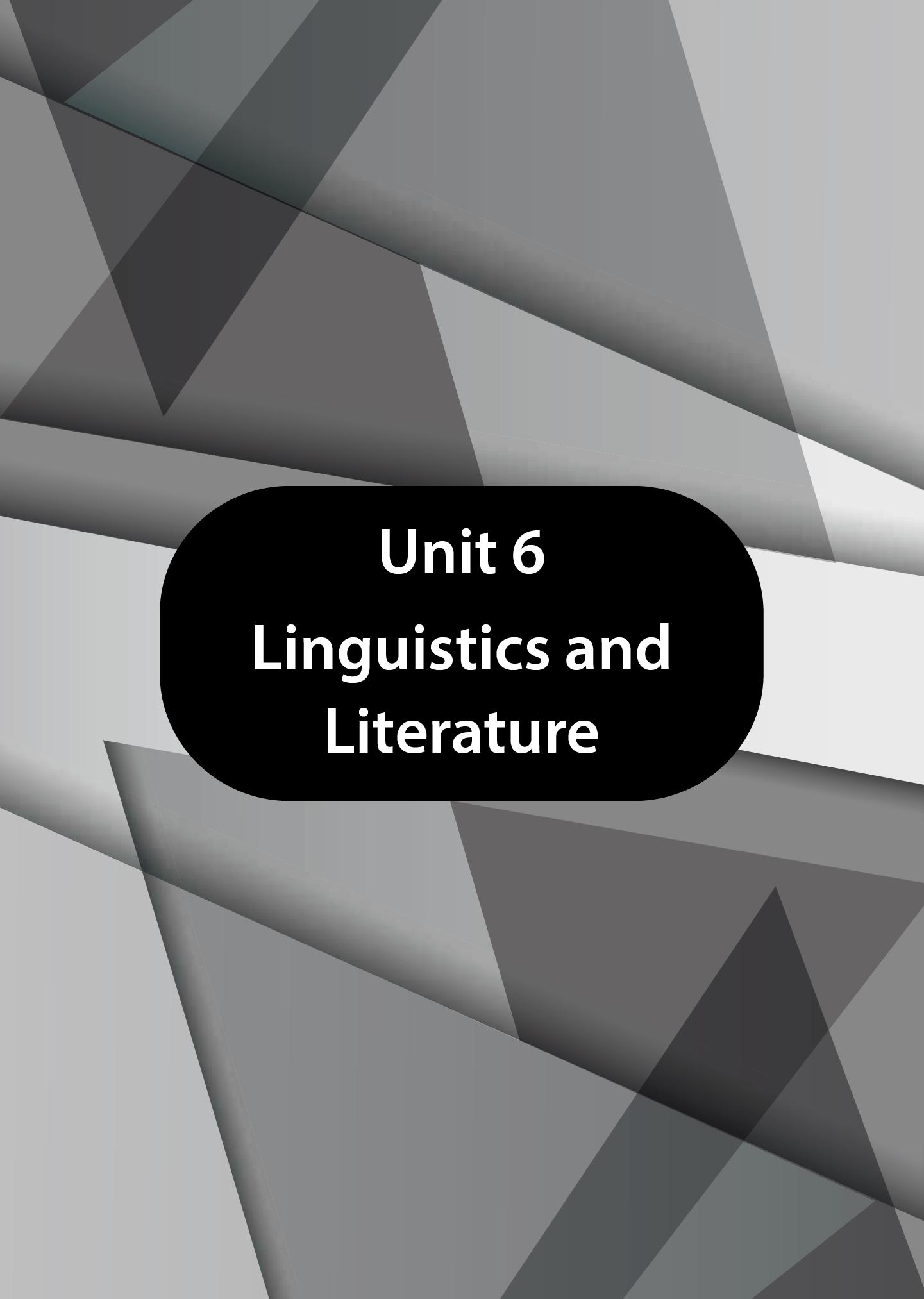
VIII. Word Exclusion

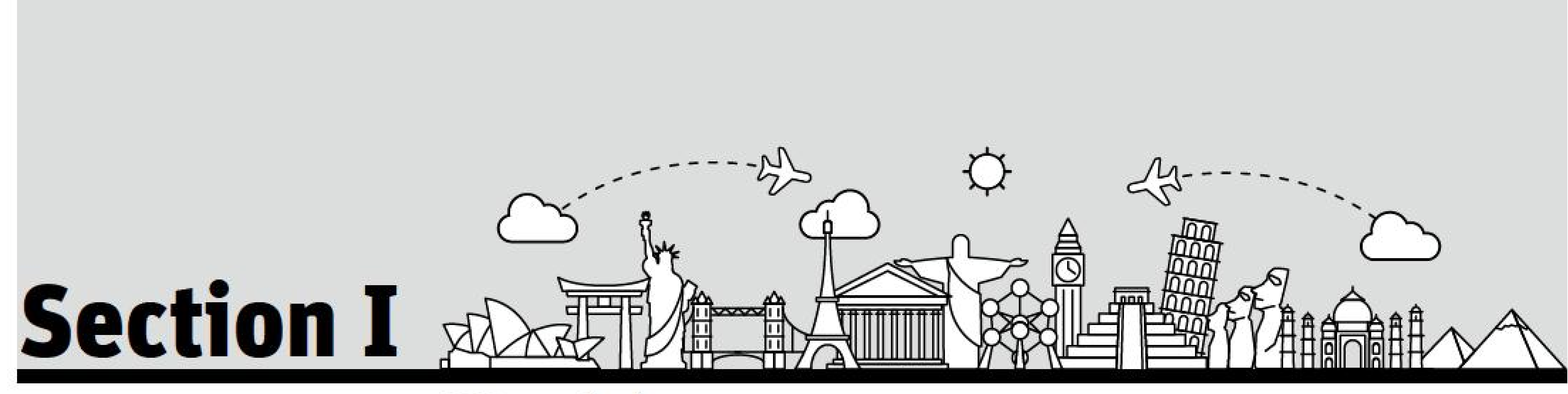
Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. lass bum copper dean bride infant parson ( ) ______________
2. bacon pork steak flour chicken ( ) ______________
3. tempered fraud hysterical ugly ludicrous ( ) ______________
4. hoover bathe bleach syndrome ventilate ( ) ______________
5. badger boar lime cub kitten crab ( ) ______________


Unit 6
Linguistics and Literature



Section I

Focus on Suffix (I)

Suffixes can not only change the meanings of words, but they often change their positions in a sentence. It's very helpful to know the different endings that belong to different parts of speech. Adding an ending can change one part of speech into another. For example, adding "-ive" to "act" (a noun or verb) makes the adjective "active". If you add "-ly" to "active" you get the adverb "actively." You could add "-ate" instead to get the verb "activate". Each means something a little different and fills a different place in a sentence.

The more you recognize different endings, the more easily you can understand what you read, or use the words correctly when you write. In linguistics, a suffix is an affix which is placed after the stem of a word. Common examples are case endings, which indicate the grammatical case of nouns or adjectives, and verb endings, which form the conjugation of verbs.

1) Suffix "-ly" is added to an adjective to become an adverb.

   e.g.: ultimately, merely, minimally, oddly, frequently, accidentally, solely, evidently, considerably, weekly, soundly

   However, some words with suffix "-ly" are not adverbs.

   e.g.: lovely, lively, friendly, deadly, lonely, likely, brotherly

2) Suffix "-tion" stands for noun.

   e.g.: formulate—formulation, implicate—implication, represent—representation,

   assume—assumption, characterize—characterization

3) Suffix "-ible" "-able" is put at the end of a word, which stands for the passive meaning, that is, it can be done.

   Most words that can be added "-ible" come from Latin.

   e.g.: credible, edible, visible, sensible, possible, flexible, responsible

   There are more adjectives ending with "-able" than "-ible".

   e.g.: erasable, deceivable, changeable, deniable, reliable

4) Verbs can be formed by adding suffix "-ize (-ise)" to a noun or an adjective.

   e.g.: idealize, dramatize, modernize, organize, civilize, minimize, normalize, equalize

5) Suffix "-ism" signifies an activity, ideology or belief.

   e.g.: journalism, communism, capitalism

6) Suffix "-ee" indicates the person who receives an action.

   e.g.: employee, supervisee, payee, interviewee

7) Suffix "-ist" signifies a person's activity, occupation, politics or beliefs.

e.g.: terrorist, biologist, anarchist, Buddhist

Practice by Yourself

1) Add a suffix to the words in the brackets.

a. Bottled water is (drink) ________ but sea water is not.

b. The factory has been very (product) ________ this year.

c. Most of the mistakes can be forgiven. However, these basic errors are (forgive) ________.

d. All the assignments are due soon and it is difficult to (prior) ________ them.

e. Both products come with (instruct) ________ for use.

f. She (swift) ________ realized the man was dead, and it was not an accident.

2) Match the definitions with the words.

A. terrorist	B. patriotism	C. trainee	D. actor	E. Marxist
F. donation	G. addressee	H. donor	I. alteration	J. analyst

g. A person who believes in the political theories of Karl Marx is a ________.

h. A person who studies financial information is an ________.

i. A person who donates his/her kidney when he/she dies is a ________.

j. The person to whom a letter is sent is the ________.

k. Money given to charity is ________.

l. A person who uses violence to achieve political change is a ________.

m. A person who performs in a theatre is an ________.

n. A person who is learning to do a job is ________.

o. A change made to something is an ________.

p. A deep love of one's country is known as ________.

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/prefixes-and-suffixes. html and http: //www2. elc. polyu. edu. hk/cill/eap/2004/u2/pg35suffixes. htm)



Section II

Text A: Knowledge of Language as a Focus of Probe

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **advocate** [(for *v.*) 'ædvəkeɪt; (for *n.*) 'ædvəkɪt] ***n./vt.*** **(advocated/advocated/advocating)**

to speak publicly in support of; If you advocate a particular action or plan, you recommend it publicly; An advocate of a particular action or plan is someone who recommends it publicly.

synonym	support; maintain; uphold
antonym	oppose
word family	advocated; advocating
related phrase	advocate general; devil's advocate

Example 1 Do you advocate accepting the offer?

Example 2 Many educators advocate a liberal education.

② **allege** [ə'ledʒ] ***vt.*** **(alleged/alleged/alleging)**

to state sth. as a fact but without proof; to give as an excuse; If you allege that something bad is true, you say it but do not prove it.

synonym	declare; claim; profess
word family	allegedly; alleger
related phrase	allege that; be alleged to be/do sth.

Example 1 They allege they have browsed the file, but have they any proof?

Example 2 In your statement you alleged that the accused man was seen at the scene of the crime and might have assassinated the dead.

③ **confront** [kən'frʌnt] ***vt.*** **(confronted/confronted/confronting)**

to bring face to face; to be or come face to face with; to be opposed to; If you are confronted with a problem, task, or difficulty, you have to deal with it; If you confront a difficult situation or issue, you accept the fact that it exists and try to deal with it.

synonym	oppose; encounter; face; meet
antonym	avoid; escape

word family confrontation; confrontationist

related phrase confront with; confront problems/difficulties

Example 1 You must confront the hostile gossip and scandal, and don't think they humiliate you that much.

Example 2 Confronted by an angry crowd, the police retreated and decided not to ferret the theft.

④ **constitute** ['kɒnstɪtjuːt] ***vt.*** **(constituted/constituted/constituting)**

to make up; to set up; to establish; to appoint; If something constitutes a particular thing, it can be regarded as being that thing.

synonym compose; comprise; consist

word family constitution; constitutive; constitutional

related phrase constitute a crime; constituted by election

Example 1 Twelve months constitute one year.

Example 2 Laws are constituted and stipulated to protect individual rights and properties.

⑤ **controversy** ['kɒntrəvɜːsɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* controversies)**

public discussion or argument, often rather angry, about sth. which many people disagree with

synonym combat; argument; dispute

word family controversial; controversialist; controvert

related phrase a political controversy; cause/provoke/arouse controversy

Example 1 The mason will try to accord the controversy over the housing scheme.

Example 2 The remark touches off a heated controversy and some think it is a paradox.

⑥ **cooperate** [kəʊ'ɒpəreɪt] ***vi.*** **(cooperated/cooperated/cooperating)**

to work or act together with another or others; to be helpful and do as one is asked; If you cooperate with someone, you work with them or help them for a particular purpose. You can also say that two people cooperate.

synonym unite; collaborate; conjoin

word family cooperation; cooperator; operate

related phrase cooperate with; cooperate in; cooperate on

Example 1 I am so happy to cooperate with you.

Example 2 If they can cooperate with each other, everything should run smoothly.

⑦ **deficiency** [dɪ'fɪʃ(ə)nsɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* deficiencies)**

the quality of being deficient; lack; Deficiency in something, especially something that your body needs, is not having enough of it; A deficiency that someone or something has is a weakness or imperfection in them.

synonym lack

antonym abundance; affluence

word family deficit; deficient

related phrase deficiency disease; deficiency and excess

Example 1 The result in either case is an energy deficiency.

Example 2 The deficiency of this plan is very clear and it can't possibly succeed.

⑧ **differentiate** [ˌdɪfə'renʃɪeɪt] ***vi.*** **(differentiated/differentiated/differentiating)**

to see or express a difference (between); to treat as different; If you differentiate between things or if you differentiate one thing from another, you recognize or show the difference between them.

synonym discriminate; distinguish

antonym integrate; dedifferentiate

word family differential; differentiation; differentiator

related phrase differentiate from; differentiate into; differentiate between

Example 1 Can you differentiate one variety from the other of the cocoa?

Example 2 It's so rash to differentiate between boys and girls.

⑨ **evident** ['evɪd(ə)nt] ***adj.***

plain to the senses; clear because of evidence; You use evident to show that you are certain about a situation or fact and your interpretation of it.

synonym apparent; clear; obvious; conspicuous

antonym uncertain; unconspicuous

word family evidence; evidently

related phrase self evident; it is evident that

Example 1 Now it became evident that he spoke two languages at once.

Example 2 He looks at twelve children with evident pride.

⑩ **elaborate** [(for *adj.*) ɪ'læb(ə)rət; (for *v.*) ɪ'læbəreɪt] ***adj./vi./vt.*** **(elaborated/elaborated/elaborating)**

to work out in detail; to add more details to sth.; If you elaborate on something that has been said, you say more about it, or give more details; having a lot of small parts or details put together in a complicated way; carefully planned and organized in great detail

synonym clarify; specify; detailed

antonym digest; sketch

word family elaboration; elaborative

related phrase elaborate on/upon; elaborate design

Example 1 Please elaborate your feast plan about the fiesta before Friday.

Example 2 I don't want this simple idea to elaborate as a result of discussions.

⑪ **embark** [ɪm'bɑːk] ***vi./vt.*** **(embarked/embarked/embarking)**

to go on board a ship; to set out on; to proceed somewhere despite the risk of possible dangers; If you embark on something new, difficult, or exciting, you start doing it; When someone embarks on a ship, they go on board before the start of a journey.

synonym board; imbark; wage

antonym disembark; debark

word family embarkment; embarkation

related phrase embark for; embark on/upon

Example 1 Passengers with cars must embark first fleetly without thrusting others.

Example 2 The poor wretch is about to embark on a new business venture and he sets up a studio already.

⑫ **formula** ['fɔːmjʊlə] ***n.***

a method or set of principles that you use to solve a problem or to make sure that something is successful; a series of numbers or letters that represent a mathematical or scientific rule; a general law, fact, etc. expressed shortly by means of a group of signs, numbers, etc.

synonym rule; way; criterion; expressions

word family formulate; formulation; formulator

related phrase formula bar; general formula

Example 1 They are working on the perfection of their new ornament formula.

Example 2 There is no sure formula and slant for success.

⑬ **obey** [ə(ʊ)'beɪ] ***vt.*** **(obeyed/obeyed/obeying)**

to carry out a command; to follow the orders of; to act in accordance with; to comply with; If you obey a person, a command, or an instruction, you do what you are told to do.

synonym comply

antonym disobey; violate

word family obedient; obeyable

related phrase obey the order/rule/law

Example 1 Squires are expected to obey orders from those mafia without question.

Example 2 We must obey the decencies and attend the funeral.

⑭ **reminisce** [ˌremɪ'nɪs] ***vi./vt.*** **(reminisced/reminisced/reminiscing)**

to recall the past; to talk or think about pleasant events in your past; If you reminisce about something from your past, you write or talk about it, often with pleasure.

synonym recollect; remember; evoke

word family reminiscence; reminiscent

related phrase reminisce about; reminisce of sth.

Example 1 Ms. Wang likes to reminisce about her childhood.

Example 2 Grandfather likes to reminisce with other senile people after supper.

⑮ **resemble** [rɪ'zemb(ə)l] ***vt.*** **(resembled/resembled/resembling)**

to be like or similar to (another person or thing); If one thing or person resembles another, they are similar to each other.

synonym correspond; mirror

word family resemblance

related phrase resemble in; resemble sb.

Example 1 The brothers resemble each other in taste; they both like Mickey.

Example 2 You resemble your mother very closely.

⑯ **retrospect** ['retrəspekt] ***n./vt.*** **(retrospected/retrospected/retrospecting)**

to look back upon (a period of time, sequence of events); to remember; contemplation of things past; When you consider something in retrospect, you think about it afterward, and often have a different opinion about it from the one that you had at the time.

synonym remembrance; review

antonym prospect

word family retrospective; retrospection

related phrase in retrospect; retrospect to

Example 1 In retrospect, I wish that I had thought about alternative courses of action.

Example 2 In retrospect, it's easy to see why we were wrong in the tribunal.

⑰ **revive** [rɪ'vaɪv] ***vi./vt.*** **(revived/revived/reviving)**

to bring back to consciousness, strength, health or an earlier state; When something, such as the economy, a business, a trend, or a feeling is revived or when it revives, it becomes active, popular, or successful again.

synonym restore; renew

word family revival; revivify; revivification

related phrase revive from; revive with

Example 1 We invited him to picnic and tried to revive him but without avail.

Example 2 The national economy began to revive after eliminating the clogs.

⑱ **yield** [ji:ld] ***n./vt.*** **(yielded/yielded/yielding)**

to give a natural product, a result or profit; If a tax or investment yields an amount of money or profit, this money or profit is obtained from it; to give up; If you yield something that you have

control of or responsibility for, you allow someone else to have control or responsibility for it.

synonym bear; produce

antonym attack; resist; reserve

word family yielding; yielder

related phrase yield to; high/low yield

Example 1 The village abounds in fields that yield many bushels of corn.

Example 2 The shelf is beginning to yield under that heavy weight.

⑲ **credible** ['kredɪb(ə)l] ***adj.***

that can be believed; believable; A credible candidate, policy, or system, for example, is one that appears to have a chance of being successful.

synonym believable; conceivable

antonym incredible; unbelievable; inconceivable

word family credit; credibility

related phrase credible explanation/story/account

Example 1 So far, there is only one credible proposal.

Example 2 I believe real things are more credible and divine.

⑳ **enlighten** [ɪn'laɪtn] ***vt.*** **(enlightened/enlightened/enlightening)**

to explain something to someone; To enlighten someone means to give them more knowledge and greater understanding about something.

synonym suggest; wise

word family enlightened; enlightening; enlightenment

related phrase enlighten sb. as to/on/about sth.

Example 1 Can you enlighten her on this subject?

Example 2 I hope the results of my research will enlighten my colleagues.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

angel	chemistry	conform	device	discrete
Latin	latter	liberal	mechanism	minimal
philosopher	phrase	poverty	preliminary	prior
probe	province	retreat	ripe	romantic
sow	strand	subsequent	vessel	

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. How do you understand "languages are the best mirror of the human mind"?

2. What is a language mechanism?

Knowledge of Language as a Focus of Probe

The study of language has a long and rich history, extending over thousands of years. This study has frequently been understood as a probe into the nature of mind and thought on the assumption that "languages are the best mirror of the human mind". A common conception was that "with respect to its substance grammar is one and the same in all languages, though it does vary accidentally". The changeless "substance" was often taken to be the mind and its acts; particular languages use various mechanisms—some rooted in human reason, others arbitrary and alien.

One leading eighteenth century reasonable grammarian defined "general grammar" as a deductive science concerned with "the changeless and general principles of spoken or written language" and their consequences; it is "prior to all languages", because its principles "are the same as those that direct human reason in its intellectual operations". Thus, "the science of language does not differ at all from the science of thought." "Particular grammar" is not a true "science" in the sense of this reasonable tradition because it is not based solely on universal necessary laws; it is an "art" or technique that shows how given languages realize the general principles of human reason.

As John Stuart Mill[1] later expressed the same leading idea, "The principles and rules of grammar are the means by which the forms of language are made to accord with the universal forms of thought ... The structure of every sentence is a lesson in logic." Others, particularly during the Romantic Period[2], argued that the nature and content of thought are determined in part by the devices made available for its expression in particular languages. These devices may include contributions of individual gift that affect the "character" of a language, enlarging its means of expression and the thoughts expressed without affecting its "form", its sound system and rules of word and sentence formation.

With regard to the acquisition of knowledge, it was widely held that the mind is not "so much to be filled immediately from without, like a vessel, as to be awaked"; "The growth of knowledge ... [rather resembles] ... the growth of fruit; however external causes may in some degree cooperate, it is the internal energy, and virtue of the tree, that must ripen the juices to their just maturity." Applied to language, this essentially mental conception would suggest that knowledge of a particular language grows and matures along a course that is in part inherently determined, with modifications reflecting observed usage, rather in the manner of the visual system or other bodily "organs" that develop along a course determined by instructions the triggering and shaping effects of environmental factors.

With the exception of the relativism of the Romantics, such ideas were generally regarded with much opposition in the main stream of language research by the late nineteenth century and on through the 1950s. In part, this attitude developed under the impact of a rather narrowly explained empiricism and later behaviorist principle. In part, it resulted from the quite real and impressive successes of historical and descriptive studies conducted within a narrower range, specifically, the discovery of "sound

laws" that provided much understanding of the history of languages and their relationships. In part, it was a natural consequence of the investigation of a much richer variety of languages than were known to earlier learned men, languages that didn't appear to obey many of the allegedly assumed conceptions of the earlier reasonable tradition. After a century of general neglect, ideas resembling those of the earlier tradition re-emerged in the mid-1950s, with the development of what came to be called "generative grammar"[3]—again, reviving a long-lapsed and largely forgotten tradition.

The generative grammar of a particular language (where "generative" means nothing more than "explicit") is a theory that is concerned with the form and meaning of expressions of this language. One can imagine many different kinds of approach to such questions, many points of view that might be adopted in dealing with them. Generative grammar limits itself to certain elements of this larger picture. Its perspective is that of individual psychology. It is concerned with those aspects of form and meaning that are determined by the "language mechanism", which is understood to be a particular component of the human mind. The nature of this mechanism is the subject matter of a general theory of language structure that aims to discover the framework of principles and elements common to attainable human languages; this theory is now often called "universal grammar"[4] (UG), adapting a traditional term to a new context of probe. UG may be regarded as a description of the determined language mechanism. One may think of this mechanism as a "language acquisition device", an inherent component of the human mind that yields a particular language through interaction with presented experience, a device that converts experience into a system of knowledge attained: knowledge of one or another language.

The study of generative grammar represented a significant shift of focus in the approach to problems of language. Put in the simplest terms, to be elaborated below, the shift of focus was from behavior or the products of behavior to states of the mind/brain that enter into behavior. If one chooses to focus attention on this latter topic, the central concern becomes knowledge of language: its nature, origins and use.

The basic questions that arise, then, are: What constitutes knowledge of language? How is knowledge of language acquired? How is knowledge of language put to use?

The answer to the first question is given by a particular generative grammar, a theory concerned with the state of the mind/brain of the person who knows a particular language. The answer to the second question is given by a specification of UG along with an account of the ways in which its principles interact with experience to yield a particular language; UG is a theory of the "initial state" of the language mechanism, prior to any language experience. The answer to the third question would be a theory of how the knowledge of language attained enters into the expression of thought and the understanding of presented samples of language, and into communication and other special uses of language.

So far, this is nothing more than the outline of a research program that takes up classical questions that has been put aside for many years. As just described, it should not be particularly controversial, since it merely expresses an interest in problems and offers a preliminary analysis of how I might be confronted, although as is often the case, the initial formulation of a problem may prove to be sweeping in its implications, and ultimately controversial as it is developed.

Some elements of picture may appear more controversial than they really are. Consider, for example, the idea that there is a language mechanism, a component of the mind/brain that yields knowledge of language given presented experience. It is not at issue that humans attain knowledge

of English, Japanese, and so forth, while rocks or birds do not under the same (or indeed any) conditions. There is, then, some property of the mind/brain that differentiates humans from rocks or birds. Is this a distinct "language mechanism" with specific structure and properties, or, as some believe, is it the case that humans acquire language merely by applying generalized learning mechanisms of some sort, perhaps with greater efficiency or scope than other creatures? These are not topics presumption or assumed reasoning but for experimental probe, and it is clear enough how to proceed: namely, by facing the question. We try to determine what is the system of knowledge that has been attained and what properties must be attributed to the initial state of mind/brain to account for its attainment. In so far as these properties are language-specific, either individually or in the way they are organized and composed, there is a distinct language mechanism.

Generative grammar is sometimes referred to as a theory, advocated by this or that person. In fact, it is not a theory any more than chemistry is a theory. Generative grammar is a topic, which one may or may not choose to study. Of course, one can adopt a point of view from which chemistry disappears as a discipline (perhaps it is done by angels with mirrors). In this sense, a decision to study chemistry does stake out a position on matters of fact. Similarly, one may argue that the topic of generative grammar does not exist, although it is hard to see how to make this position minimally credible. Within the study of generative grammar there have been many changes and differences of opinion, often retreating to ideas that had been abandoned and were later reconstructed in a different light. Evidently, this is a healthy phenomenon indicating that the discipline is alive, although it is sometimes, oddly, regarded as a serious deficiency, a sign that something is wrong with the basic approach. I will review some of these changes as we proceed.

In the mid-1950s, certain proposals were advanced as to the form that answers to the question might take, and a research program was launched to investigate the adequacy of these proposals and to sharpen and apply them. This program was one of the strands that led to the development of the acquiring sciences in the contemporary sense, sharing with other approaches the belief that certain aspects of the mind/brain can be usefully explained on the model of computational systems of rules that form and modify representations, and that are put to use in interpretation and action. From its origins (or with a longer perspective) about 30 years ago, the study of generative grammar was embarked on with an eye to gaining some insight into the nature and origins of systems of knowledge, belief, and understanding more broadly, in the hope that these general questions could be enlightened by a detailed investigation of the special case of human language.

This research program has since been running its course, along a number of different paths. I will be concerned here with only one of these, with the problems it faced and the steps that were taken in an effort to deal with them. During the past 5-6 years, these efforts have composed a somewhat unexpected way, yielding a rather different conception of the nature of language and its mental representation, one that offers interesting answers to a range of experimental questions and opens a variety of new ones to probe while suggesting a rethinking of the character of others. This is what accounts for an unmistakable sense of energy and anticipation—and also uncertainty—which is reminiscent of the period when the study of generative grammar in the modern sense was initiated about 30 years ago.

To avoid misunderstanding, I am not speaking here about all of the study of language but rather of generative grammar, and even here I will not attempt anything like a real history of the course of research but rather will give a somewhat idealized picture that is in part clearer in

retrospect than it was at the time.

(Adapted from *Knowledge of Language*, written by Noam Chomsky)

Notes

① John Stuart Mill

John Stuart Mill (20 May 1806–8 May 1873) was an English philosopher, political economist and civil servant. One of the most influential thinkers in the history of liberalism, he contributed widely to social theory, political theory and political economy. Dubbed "the most influential English-speaking philosopher of the nineteenth century", Mill's conception of liberty justified the freedom of the individual in opposition to unlimited state and social control. Mill was a proponent of utilitarianism, an ethical theory developed by his predecessor Jeremy Bentham, and contributed significantly to the theory of the scientific method. A member of the Liberal Party, he was also the first Member of Parliament to call for women's suffrage.

② The Romantic Period

The Romantic Period is a term applied to literature. During this time, literature began to move in channels that were not entirely new but were in strong contrast to the standard literary practice of the eighteenth century. How the word romantic came to be applied to this period is something of a puzzle. Originally the word was applied to the Latin or Roman dialects used in the Roman provinces, especially France, and to the stories written in these dialects. Romantic is a derivative, which was borrowed from the French romaunt in the sixteenth century. At first it meant only "like the old romances" but gradually it began to carry a certain taint. The combination of new interests, new attitudes and fresh forms produced a body of literature that was strikingly different from the literature of the eighteenth century, but that is not to say that the eighteenth century had no influence on the Romantic Movement. Practically all of the seeds of the new literary crop had been sown in the preceding century. The Romantic Period includes the work of two generations of writers. The first generation was born during the thirty and twenty years preceding 1800; the second generation was born in the last decade of the 1800s.

③ Generative grammar

Generative grammar is a linguistic theory that regards grammar as a system of rules that generates exactly those combinations of words that form grammatical sentences in a given language. Noam Chomsky first used the term in relation to the theoretical linguistics of grammar that he developed in the late 1950s. Linguists who follow the generative approach have been called generativists. The generative school has focused on the study of syntax, but has also addressed other aspects of a language's structure, including morphology and phonology. Early versions of Chomsky's theory were called transformational grammar, which is still used as a general term that includes his subsequent theories. The most recent is the minimalist program, from which Chomsky and other generativists have argued that many of the properties of a generative grammar arise from a universal grammar that is innate to the human brain, rather than being learned from the environment. There are a number of versions of generative grammar currently practiced within linguistics. A contrasting approach is that of constraint-based grammars. Where a generative grammar attempts to list all the rules that result in

all well-formed sentences, constraint-based grammars allow anything that is not otherwise constrained.

④ Universal grammar

In linguistics, universal grammar is the theory of the genetic component of the language faculty, usually credited to Noam Chomsky. The basic postulate of UG is that a certain set of structural rules are innate to humans, independent of sensory experience. With more linguistic stimuli (e.g. conversations between the parents of a child) received in the course of psychological development, children then adopt specific syntactic rules that conform to UG. It is sometimes known as "mental grammar", and stands contrasted with other "grammars", e.g. prescriptive, descriptive and pedagogical. The advocates of this theory emphasize and partially rely on the poverty of the stimulus (POS) argument and the existence of some universal properties of natural human languages. However, the latter has especially not been firmly established, as some linguists have argued languages are so diverse that such universality is rare. It is a matter of empirical investigation to determine precisely what properties are universal and what linguistic capacities are innate.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) A common conception was that "with respect to its substance grammar is one and different in all languages, though it does vary accidentally".
2. ( ) Others, particularly during the Romantic Period, argued that the nature and content of thought are determined in part by the devices made available for its expression in particular languages.
3. ( ) Applied to language, this essentially mental conception would suggest that knowledge of a particular language grows and matures along a course that is in part inherently determined.
4. ( ) The generative grammar of a particular language (where "generative" means nothing more than "implicit") is a theory that is concerned with the form and meaning of expressions of this language.
5. ( ) UG may be regarded as a characterization of the determined language mechanism.
6. ( ) The study of generative grammar represented a significant shift of focus in the approach to problems of language, that is, the shift of focus was from behavior or the products of behavior to states of the mind/brain that enter into behavior.
7. ( ) Some elements of picture may appear less controversial than they really are.
8. ( ) Within the study of generative grammar there have been many changes and differences of opinion, often retreating to ideas that had been abandoned and were later reconstructed in a different light.

9. (   ) In the mid-1970s, a research program was launched to investigate the adequacy of these proposals and to sharpen and apply them.

10. (   ) The study of generative grammar was embarked on with an eye to gaining some insight into the nature and origins of systems of knowledge, belief and understanding more broadly.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Formation

Directions: Write the appropriate form of the given words according to the context.

1. The team needs players who want to play for Canada, not ________ (mere) any country that will have them.
2. I gotta ________ (view) all of them for the final exam.
3. I hope the results of my research will ________ (light) my friends.
4. Black clouds are a(n) ________ (mistakable) sign of coming rain.
5. This new ________ (formula) wouldn't be credible to many in the region without specifics.
6. You should try to determine if this person has any ________ (credit) references.
7. Young men make great mistakes in life; for one thing, they ________ (ideal) love too much.
8. They have chased down all ________ (impossible) clues but cannot find the lost girl.
9. As for the stuff you do need, choose a ________ (sense) place for it.
10. School education helped to ________ (civil) the people.

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the proper words given below, changing the form if necessary.

allege	obey	specify	deficiency	romantic
retrospect	contemporary	yield	lapse	elaborate

11. We must ________ traffic regulations, and I can't violate them.
12. Only one ________ of the campus, there is no welcoming sign.

13. In reading his memoirs, in ________, I discovered one of the reasons why.
14. He was a genius and because of it you could accept ________ of taste.
15. A spokesman declined to ________ on a statement released late yesterday.
16. This research has been in progress since 1961 and has ________ a great number of positive results.
17. The arrests are just part of an investigation into an ________ attempt to strongly overthrow the government.
18. Like most of my ________, I grew up in a vastly different world.
19. This poem is typical of the ________ period.
20. We should make decisions in accordance with ________ conditions.

VII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following paragraph into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

Generative grammar is sometimes referred to as a theory, advocated by this or that person. In fact, it is not a theory any more than chemistry is a theory. Generative grammar is a topic, which one may or may not choose to study. Of course, one can adopt a point of view from which chemistry disappears as a discipline (perhaps it is done by angels with mirrors). In this sense, a decision to study chemistry does stake out a position on matters of fact. Similarly, one may argue that the topic of generative grammar does not exist, although it is hard to see how to make this position minimally credible. Within the study of generative grammar there have been many changes and differences of opinion, often retreating to ideas that had been abandoned and were later reconstructed in a different light. Evidently, this is a healthy phenomenon indicating that the discipline is alive, although it is sometimes, oddly, regarded as a serious deficiency, a sign that something is wrong with the basic approach. I will review some of these changes as we proceed.

VIII. Composition

Directions: Share your language learning experience with your readers and write at least 120 words in 30 minutes.

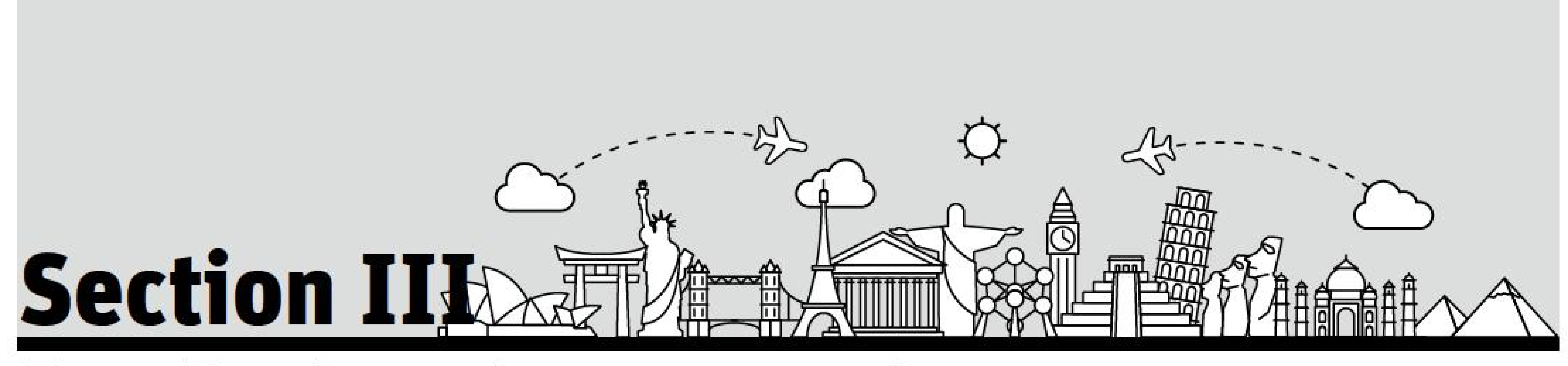
IX. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. condom bead witch cobble cane pebble peat beard ( ) ____________
2. velvet linoleum textile linen dice ( ) ____________
3. flick halve flake polo dribble peel piss sneeze ( ) ____________
4. settee sofa mat tub tarmac pillow comb mattress ( ) ____________
5. whey valium tonic valve bacterium paracetamol ( ) ____________



Section III

Text B: The Adventures of Tom Sawyer

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **acquaint** [ə'kweɪnt] ***vt.*** **(acquainted/acquainted/acquainting)**

to cause to come to know personally; to make familiar or acquainted; If you acquaint someone with something, you tell them about it so that they know it; If you acquaint yourself with something, you learn about it.

synonym	familiarize
word family	acquainted; acquaintance; acquaintanceship
related phrase	acquaint with

Example 1 I'll acquaint you with my daughter when she arrives.

Example 2 Have steps been taken to acquaint breeders with their right to apply for licenses?

② **brace** [breɪs] ***n./vt.*** **(braced/braced/bracing)**

a support that steadies or strengthens something else; to push part of your body against something solid in order to make yourself more steady; to mentally or physically prepare yourself or someone else for something unpleasant that is going to happen; to make something stronger by supporting it

synonym	backbone; support
word family	bracing; braced
related phrase	brace up; brace yourself to do sth.

Example 1 He wore a brace with a Z on his knee.

Example 2 Gina braced her back against the wall and pushed as hard as she could.

③ **deceive** [dɪ'siːv] ***vt.*** **(deceived/deceived/deceiving)**

to cause someone to believe an untruth; to be false to; to be dishonest with; If you deceive someone, you make them believe something that is not true, usually in order to get some advantage for yourself.

synonym	delude; cheat; trick
word family	deceived
related phrase	deceive oneself; deceive sb. into doing sth.

Example 1 He has deceived and disillusioned us all.

Example 2 Do not be deceived by claims on food labels like "light" or "low fat".

④ **decline** [dɪ'klaɪn] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(declined/declined/declining)**

to change toward something smaller or lower; a gradual decrease; If something declines, it becomes less in quantity, importance, or strength; If you decline something or decline to do something, you politely refuse to accept it or do it.

synonym fall; slump; recession

antonym rise; increase; grow

word family declination

related phrase on the decline; decline and fall; economic decline

Example 1 The number of staff has declined from 217,000 to 114,000.

Example 2 Official figures show a sharp decline in the number of foreign tourists.

⑤ **discreet** [dɪ'skriːt] ***adj.***

careful about what you say or do, so that you do not offend, upset, or embarrass people or tell secrets; marked by prudence or modesty and wise self-restraint; If you are discreet, you are polite and careful in what you do or say, because you want to avoid embarrassing or offending someone.

synonym careful; cautious; prudent; wary

antonym careless; slack

word family discreetly; discreetness

related phrase be discreet about

Example 1 They were gossipy and not always discreet.

Example 2 He assured her that he would be discreet in doing the business.

⑥ **earnest** ['ɜːnɪst] ***n./adj.***

characterized by a firm and humorless belief in the validity of your opinions; Earnest people are very serious and sincere in what they say or do, because they think that their actions and beliefs are important.

synonym crucial; important; serious; considerable; material; sincerity

word family earnestly; earnestness

related phrase in earnest; in real earnest; earnest attempt/effort

Example 1 Campaigning will begin in earnest tomorrow.

Example 2 Catherine was an earnest woman.

⑦ **extravagant** [ɪk'strævəgənt] ***adj.***

spending or costing a lot of money, especially more than is necessary or more than you can afford;

doing or using something too much or more than is necessary; unrestrained, especially with regard to feelings; recklessly wasteful

synonym luxury; unreasonable

antonym economical

word family extravagantly; extravagance

related phrase extravagant price; extravagant lifestyle

Example 1 We are not extravagant in preparing the banquet.

Example 2 Her uncle gave her an extravagant gift. But she bunged it into the dustbin.

⑧ flatter ['flætə] *vt.* (flattered/flattered/flattering)

to praise somewhat dishonestly; If someone flatters you, they praise you in an exaggerated way that is not sincere, because they want to please you or to persuade you to do something; to show to advantage

synonym please; glad; satisfy

word family flattering; flattery; flatterer

related phrase flatter oneself; I'm flattered

Example 1 I knew the hymn she wrote was just flattering me.

Example 2 I feel flattered by your invitation.

⑨ flee [fliː] *vi./vt.* (fled/fled/fleeing)

to run away quickly; If you flee from something or someone, or flee a person or thing, you escape from them.

synonym lift; disappear; blank; escape; desert

word family fled; fleeing

related phrase flee from; flee away

Example 1 He slammed and rapped the bedroom door behind him and fled.

Example 2 The enemy were defeated and fled in disorder.

⑩ fragile ['frædʒaɪl] *adj.*

easily broken or damaged or destroyed; If you describe a situation as fragile, you mean that it is weak or uncertain, and unlikely to be able to resist strong pressure or attack.

synonym delicate; crumbly

word family fragility

related phrase fragile goods; fragile economy

Example 1 This kind of paper is too fragile.

Example 2 He leaned back in his fragile chair, wagging.

⑪ **groan** [grəʊn] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(groaned/groaned/groaning)**

an utterance expressing pain or disapproval; to indicate pain, discomfort, or displeasure; If you groan, you make a long, low sound because you are in pain, or because you are upset or unhappy about something.

synonym moan; repine; complain

related phrase groan at; groan with pain

Example 1 Slowly, he opened his eyes. As he did so, he began to groan with pain.

Example 2 She heard him let out a pitiful, muffled groan.

⑫ **harmony** ['hɑːmənɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* harmonies)**

compatibility in opinion and action; notes of music combined together in a pleasant way; when people live or work together without fighting or disagreeing with each other; The harmony of something is the way in which its parts are combined into a pleasant arrangement.

synonym peace-keeping; accord

antonym disharmony; discord

word family harmonious; harmonize

related phrase in harmony with; social harmony

Example 1 The couple dwelt together in harmony and concord.

Example 2 I do believe it is possible for different ethnic groups to live together in harmony.

⑬ **haul** [hɔːl] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(hauled/hauled/hauling)**

the act of drawing or hauling something; to draw slowly or heavily; If you haul something that is heavy or difficult to move, you move it using a lot of effort.

synonym pull; catch; drag; draw

word family haulage; hauler

related phrase long haul; haul sth. off/onto/out of sth.

Example 1 She hauled her large box of slags out of the room.

Example 2 The size of the drug haul shows that the international trade in heroin is still flourishing.

⑭ **innovate** ['ɪnəveɪt] ***vt./vi.*** **(innovated/innovated/innovating)**

to bring something new to an environment; To innovate means to introduce changes and new ideas in the way something is done or made.

synonym reform; found; construct; institute

word family innovative; innovational; innovation; innovator; innovativeness

related phrase innovate in; innovate education

Example 1 What sets Rice apart from most engineers is his constant desire to innovate and experiment.

Example 2 In general, from our point of view, we design components where we believe we can innovate.

⑮ **lease** [liːs] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(leased/leased/leasing)**

property that is leased or rented out or let; to let for money; If you lease property or something, such as a car from someone or if they lease it to you, they allow you to use it in return for regular payments of money.

synonym	rent
word family	leased; leaseholder
related phrase	lease contract; lease term; lease out

Example 1 He took up a 10-year lease on the house.

Example 2 He went to Toronto, where he leased an apartment.

⑯ **muddle** ['mʌdl] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(muddled/muddled/muddling)**

a confused multitude of things; informal terms for a difficult situation; to make into a puddle; If you muddle things or people, you get them mixed up, so that you do not know which is which.

synonym	compound; confusion; perplexity
word family	muddy; muddled; muddleheaded; muddiness
related phrase	muddle through; muddle along

Example 1 My thoughts are all in a muddle.

Example 2 The question muddles up three separate issues.

⑰ **negligent** ['neglɪdʒənt] ***adj.***

characterized by neglect and undue lack of concern; marked by insufficient care or attention; If someone in a position of responsibility is negligent, they do not do something which they ought to do.

synonym	inadvertent; inattentive
word family	neglect; neglected; negligently; negligence
related phrase	negligent in (doing) sth.; negligent act

Example 1 The jury determined that the airline was negligent in training and supervising the crew.

Example 2 A manufacturer negligently made and marketed a car with defective brakes.

⑱ **scramble** ['skræmb(ə)l] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(scrambled/scrambled/scrambling)**

to move hurriedly; an unceremonious and disorganized struggle; If you scramble over rocks or up a hill, you move quickly over them or up it using your hands to help you; If a number of people scramble for something, they compete energetically with each other for it.

synonym	scale; climb; disorder; chaos; confusion; creep
word family	scrambled; scrambler

related phrase scramble for

Example 1 Tourists were scrambling over the rocks looking for the perfect camera angle.

Example 2 Too many people scramble for jobs in large cities.

⑲ **simultaneous** [ˌsɪm(ə)l'teɪnɪəs] ***adj.***

occurring or operating at the same time; Things which are simultaneous happen or exist at the same time.

synonym synchronous; coinstantaneous

word family simulcast; simultaneously; simultaneity; simultaneousness

related phrase simultaneous interpretation; simultaneous translation

Example 1 All presentations are delivered with simultaneous translation to English and Chinese.

Example 2 The conference hall is provided with facilities for simultaneous interpretation in five languages.

⑳ **stumble** ['stʌmb(ə)l] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(stumbled/stumbled/stumbling)**

to walk in an unsteady way and often almost fall; to stop or make a mistake when you are reading to people or speaking; If you stumble, you put your foot down awkwardly while you are walking or running and nearly fall over.

synonym hesitate; puzzle; baffle

word family stumbler

related phrase stumble upon; stumble on; stumble over; stumble across

Example 1 He stumbled and almost fell with a razor in hand, which is very dangerous.

Example 2 I make it into the darkness with only one stumble.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

captive	betray	conscience	dazzle	loyal
longing	loathe	lick	mutual	novel
outfit	rage	seize	utterly	weep
whirl				

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Where did Aunt Polly find Tom? Did she thrash him?
2. What happened to Tom when he strode down the street after supper?

The Adventures of Tom Sawyer[1]

"TOM!" No answer.

"TOM!" No answer.

"What's gone with that boy, I wonder? You TOM!" No answer.

"There! I might 'a thought of that closet." She looked dazzled for a moment, and then said, not fiercely, but still loud enough for the furniture to hear: "Well, I lay if I get hold of you I'll—" She did not finish, for by this time she was discreetly bending down and simultaneously punching under the bed with the broom, and so she needed breath to punctuate the punches with. She brought nothing back to life but the cat.

"I never did see the beat of that boy!" She went to the open door and stood in it and looked out among the tomato and grape weeds that constituted the garden. No Tom. So she lifted up her voice at an angle sensed for distance and groaned: "Y-o-u-u Tom!" There was a slight chaos behind her and she turned just in time to seize a small boy by the slack of his roundabout and arrest his flight.

"There! I might 'a thought of that wardrobe. What you been doing in there?" "Nothing." "Nothing! Look at your hands. And look at your mouth. What is that truck?" "I don't know, aunt." "Well, I know. It's jam—that's what it is. Forty times I've said if you didn't let that jam alone I'd skin you. Hand me that switch." The switch hovered in the air—the risk was desperate—"My! Look behind you, aunt!" The old lady whirled round, and snatched her skirts out of danger. The lad fled on the instant, scrambled up the high board-fence, and disappeared over it.

His aunt Polly stood surprised a moment, and then broke into a gentle laugh.

Hang the boy, can't I never learn anything? Ain't he played me tricks enough like that for me to be looking out for him by this time? But old fools is the biggest fools there is. Can't learn an old dog new tricks, as the saying is. But my goodness, he never plays them alike, in daytime, and how is a body to know what's coming? He 'pears to know just how long he can make me in agony before I get my rage up, and he knows if he can make out to put me off for a minute or make me giggle, it's all down again and I can't hit him a lick. I ain't doing my duty by that boy, and that's the Lord's truth, goodness does acquaint with it.

He, the orphan, is my own dead sister's boy and I ain't got the heart to thrash him, somehow, every time I hit him my conscience and my old fragile heart utterly breaks. He'll play hookey this evening, and I'll punish him tomorrow. It's hard to make him do task Saturdays. He got back home barely in season to help Jim, the dwarf colored boy, saw next-day's wood and split the kindling before supper—at least he was there in time to tell his adventures to Jim while Jim did three-fourths of the work. Tom's younger brother Sid was already through with his part of the work.

While Tom was eating his supper, Aunt Polly trapped him into damaging revilements. Like many other simple-hearted souls, it was her pet pride to believe she was endowed with a talent for dark and mysterious dialogue, and she loved to contemplate her most clear devices as marvels of low cleverness. Said she: “Tom, it was middling warm in school, warn't it?” “Yes'm.” “Powerful warm, warn't it?” “Yes'm.” “Didn't you want to go in a-swimming, Tom?” A bit of a scare shot through Tom—a touch of uncomfortable suspicion. Tom searched Aunt Polly's face, but it told him nothing. So he said: “No'm—well, not quite much.” The old lady reached out her hand and felt Tom's shirt, and said: “But you ain't too warm now, though.” And it flattered her to reflect that she had discovered that the shirt was not moist. Tom knew where the wind lay, now. So he anticipated what might be the next move: “Some of us pumped on our heads—mine's damp yet. See?” Aunt Polly realized that she had overlooked that bit of conditional evidence, and missed a trick. Then she had a new inspiration: “Tom, you didn't have to unzip your shirt collar where I sewed it, to pump on your head, did you? Unbutton your jacket!” The incident disappeared out of Tom's face. He opened his jacket. His shirt collar was securely sewed.

“Bother! Well, go ‘long with you. I'd made sure you'd played hookey and been a-swimming. But I forgive ye, Tom. I reckon you're a kind of a singed cat, as the saying is—better'n you look. This time.” She was half sorry her judgments had failed, and half glad that Tom had stumbled into obedient conduct for once.

But Sidney said: “Well, now, if I didn't think you sewed his collar with white thread, but it's black.” “Why, I did sew it with white! Tom!” But Tom did not wait for the rest. As he went out at the door he said: “Siddy, I'll lick you for that.” In a safe place Tom examined two large needles and had thread bound about them—one needle transited white thread and the other black. He said: “She'd never noticed if it hadn't been for Sid. Confound it! Sometimes she sews it with white, and sometimes she sews it with black. I am longing to geeminy she'd stick to one or t'other—I can't keep the run of ‘em. But I bet you I'll lam Sid for that. I'll learn him!” He was not the loyal boy of the village. He knew the model boy very well though—and loathed him.

Within two minutes, he had forgotten all his troubles—just as men's disasters are negligent in the sensation of novel enterprises. This innovative interest was a valued innovation in whistling, which he had just acquired from a tan group, and he was enduring to conduct it undisturbed. It consisted in a peculiar bird-like turn. Earnest and attention soon gave him the knack of it, and he strode down the street with his mouth full of harmony and his soul full of longing. He felt much as an space scientist who has discovered a new planet.

The summer evenings were long. It was not dark, yet. Presently Tom checked his whistle.

A stranger was before him. A new-comer of any age was an impressive curiosity in the poor little old rural of St. Petersburg. This boy was too cutely dressed. This was simply astonishing. He had a citified air about him that ate into Tom's vitals. The more Tom stared at the extravagant marvel, the higher he turned up his nose at his finery and the older his own outfit seemed to him to grow. Neither boy spoke. If one moved, the other moved—but only sidewise, in a circle; they kept face to face and eye to eye all the time. Finally Tom said: “I can lick you!” “I'd like to see you try it.” “Well, I can do it.” “No you can't, either.” “Yes I can.” “No you can't.” “I can.” “You can't.” “Can!” “Can't!” An pause. Then Tom said: “What's your name?” “'Tisn't any of your business, maybe.” “Well I ‘low I'll make it my business.” “Well why don't you?” “If you say much, I will.” “Much—much—MUCH. There now.” “Oh, you think you're cor, don't you? I could lick you with one hand tied behind me, if

I wanted to." "Well why don't you do it? You say you can do it." "Well I will, if you deceive me." "Oh yes—I've seen whole families in the mutual fix." "Smarty! You think you're some, now, don't you? Oh, what a hat!" "You can lump that hat if you are reluctant to do it. I dare you to knock it off—and anybody that'll take a dare will suck eggs."

"You're a liar!" "You're another." "You're a contending liar and dasn't take it up." "Aw—take a walk!" "Say—if you give me much more of your rudeness I'll take and bounce a rock off'n your head." "Oh, of course you will." "Well I will." "Well why don't you do it then? What do you keep saying you will for? Why don't you do it? It's because you're afraid." "I ain't afraid." "You are." "I ain't." "You are." Another pause, and more eying and sidling around each other. Presently they were shoulder to shoulder. Tom said: "Get away from here!" "Go away yourself!" "I won't." "I won't either." So they stood, each with a foot placed at an angle as a brace, and both shoving with might and main, and glowering at each other with resent. But neither could get an advantage. After struggling till both were flushed, each relaxed his strain with careful caution, and Tom said: "You're a pup. I'll tell my big brother on you, and he can thrash you with his little finger, and I'll make him do it, too." "What do I care for your big brother? I've got a brother that's bigger than he is—and furthermore, he can throw him over that fence, too." [Both brothers were imaginary.] "That's a leasing." "Your saying so don't make it so." Tom drew a line in the dust with his big toe, and said: "I dare you to step over that, and I'll lick you till you can't stand up. Anybody that'll take a dare will steal goat." The new boy stepped over promptly, and said: "Now you said you'd do it, now let's see you do it." "Don't you crowd me now; you better look out." "Well, you said you'd do it—why don't you do it?" "By jingo! For two cents I will do it." The new boy took two broad coppers out of his pocket and held them out with scorn.

Tom struck them to the ground. In an instant both boys were rolling and tumbling in the muddle; and they hauled and tore at each other's hair and clothes, punched and scratched each other's noses, and covered themselves with dust and glory. Presently the muddle took form, and through the fog of battle Tom emerged, Suddenly Tom appeared, seated astride the new boy, and pounding him with his fists.

At last the stranger said "Nuff!" and Tom let him up and said: "Now that'll learn you. Better look out who you're fooling with next time." The new boy went off brushing the dust from his pants, weeping, raging, and occasionally looking back and shaking his head and threatening what he would do to Tom the "next time he caught him out." To which Tom responded with sigh, and as rapid as his back was turned the new boy snatched up a stone, threw it and hit him between the shoulders.

Tom found out where the betrayer lived. The enemy only made faces at him through the window and declined. At last the enemy's mother emerged, and called Tom a mischief, and summoned him away.

He got home late after sunset, and when he climbed cautiously in at the window, he uncovered a trap, in the person of his aunt; and she saw the state his clothes were in her resolution to turn his Saturday holiday into captivity at hard labor became adamantine in its firmness.

(Adapted from The Adventures of Tom Sawyer, written by Mark Twain)

Note

The Adventures of Tom Sawyer

The Adventures of Tom Sawyer by Mark Twain is an 1876 novel about a young boy growing up along the Mississippi River. It is set in the fictional town of St. Petersburg, inspired by Hannibal, Missouri, where Twain lived.

Tom Sawyer lives with his Aunt Polly and his half-brother Sid. He skips school to swim and is made to whitewash the fence the next day as punishment. He cleverly persuades his friends to trade him small treasures for the privilege of doing his work. Tom falls in love with Becky Thatcher, a new girl in town, and persuades her to get "engaged" by kissing him. But their romance collapses when she learns Tom has been "engaged" previously to Amy Lawrence. Shortly after Becky shuns him, he accompanies Huckleberry Finn to the graveyard at night, where they witness a trio of body snatchers, Dr. Robinson, Muff Potter and Injun Joe, getting into a fight. Tom and Huck run away to an island. While enjoying their new-found freedom, they become aware that the community is sounding the river for their bodies. Tom sneaks back home one night to observe the commotion. After a brief moment of remorse at his loved ones' suffering, he is struck by the idea of appearing at his own funeral. Back in school, Tom gets himself back in Becky's favor after he nobly accepts the blame for a book she has ripped. Summer arrives, and Tom and Huck go hunting for buried treasure in a haunted house.

After venturing upstairs they hear a noise below. Peering through holes in the floor, they see Injun Joe disguised as a deaf-mute Spaniard; Injun Joe and his companion plan to bury some stolen treasure of their own. From their hiding spot, Tom and Huck wriggle with delight at the prospect of digging it up. Huck follows and overhears their plans to attack the Widow Douglas. By running to fetch help, Huck prevents the crime and becomes an anonymous hero. In the meantime, Tom goes on a picnic to McDougal's Cave with Becky and their classmates. As Tom and Becky wander the extensive cave complex for the next few days, Becky gets extremely dehydrated and starved, so Tom's search for a way out gets even more determined. He accidentally encounters Injun Joe one day, but he is not seen by his nemesis. Eventually, he finds a way out, and they are joyfully welcomed back by their community.

As a preventive measure, Judge Thatcher has McDougal's Cave sealed off, but this traps Injun Joe inside. When Tom hears of the sealing several days later and directs a posse to the cave, they find Injun Joe's corpse just inside the sealed entrance, starved to death. A week later, having deduced from Injun Joe's presence at McDougal's Cave that the villain must have hidden the stolen gold inside, Tom takes Huck to the cave and they find the box of gold, the proceeds of which are invested for them. The Widow Douglas adopts Huck, and when he attempts to escape civilized life, Tom tricks him into thinking that he can join Tom's robber band if he returns to the widow. Reluctantly, he agrees and goes back to her.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Translation

Directions: Translate the flowing sentences into Chinese.

1. ... every time I hit him my conscience and my old fragile heart utterly breaks.
2. Aunt Polly realized that she had overlooked that bit of conditional evidence ...
3. You can lump that hat if you are reluctant to do it.
4. I'll tell my big brother on you, and he can thrash you with his little finger.

Directions: Translate the following sentences into English.

5. 他成了鄙视的对象。
6. 她旁敲侧击地向她母亲的朋友们打听过几次。
7. 他抓住我的胳膊把我拉了回来。
8. 警察向他保证，他没有被视为可疑分子。

V. Multiple Choice

Directions: Choose the best answer for each sentence based on the context.

1. The beauty of Venice ________ largely in the style of its ancient buildings.
   A. makes up B. consists C. makes with D. consists of
2. It requires us to ________ the first-hand knowledge.
   A. catch B. acquire C. adopt D. intimate
3. Human life is regarded as part of nature and, as such, the only way for us to survive is to live ________ nature.
   A. in view of B. in need of C. in touch with D. in harmony with
4. The purpose of the survey was to ________ the inspectors with local conditions.
   A. inform B. notify C. instruct D. acquaint
5. We would not have been likely to spend enough time getting to know each other due to the lack of immediately visible ________ interests.
   A. similar B. alike C. mutual D. like

VI. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. Soldiers have to obey orders. (　　)

   A. reply to　　B. apply for　　C. abide with　　D. comply with

2. In business, you've got to predict how your competitors will act. (　　)

   A. anticipate　　B. judge　　C. direct　　D. decide

3. He praised her shamelessly. (　　)

   A. congratulated　　B. flattered　　C. admired　　D. celebrated

4. This accident occurred one morning outside Albert Schweizer's hospital in the African jungle. (　　)

   A. incident　　B. case　　C. thing　　D. fact

5. He may have had some doubts of Michael Foster, the editor of the journal. (　　)

   A. expectation　　B. surprise　　C. suspiction　　D. thought

VII. Word Formation

Directions: Write the appropriate form of the given words according to the context.

1. Children are capable of learning more than one language, whether ________ (simultaneous) or sequentially.
2. The exercise obviously will improve strength and ________ (endure).
3. Rainfall affects the ________ (moist) content of the atmosphere.
4. They are ________ (reluctance) to give up their personal information.
5. She is ________ (present) developing a number of projects.
6. Even apart from the increased competition, the kids enter a process that has been ________ (utter) transformed from the one baby boomers knew.
7. He glanced ________ (discreet) around the room at the other people.
8. A meeting would take place at a ________ (mutual) convenient time.

Directions: Choose the one which is the opposite to the word given below.

9. rural (　　)

   A. urban　　B. village　　C. garden　　D. rumor

10. obey (　　)

    A. yield　　B. comply　　C. mind　　D. resist

11. extravagant (　　)

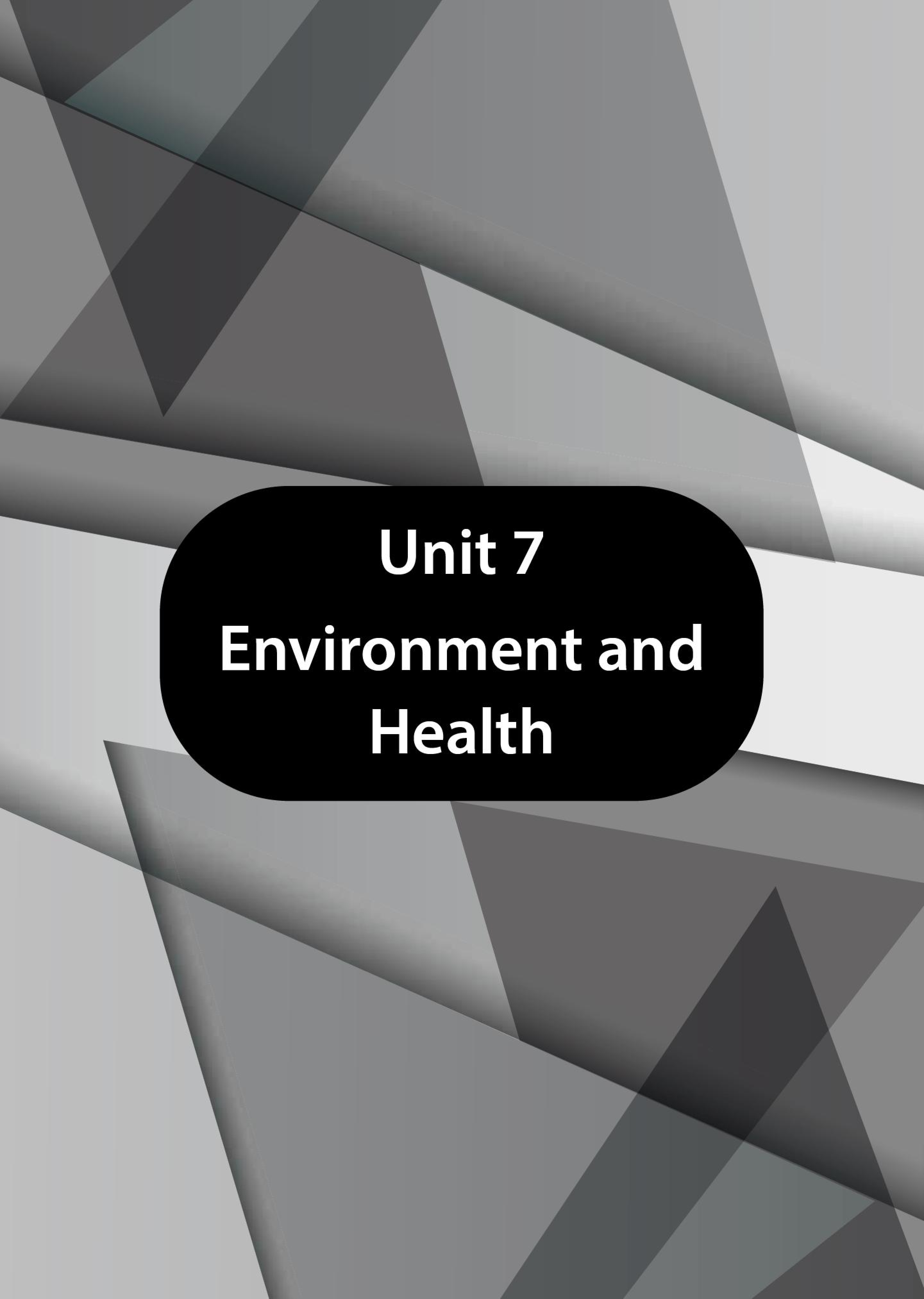
    A. luxurious　　B. excessive　　C. extreme　　D. economical

12. decline (　　)

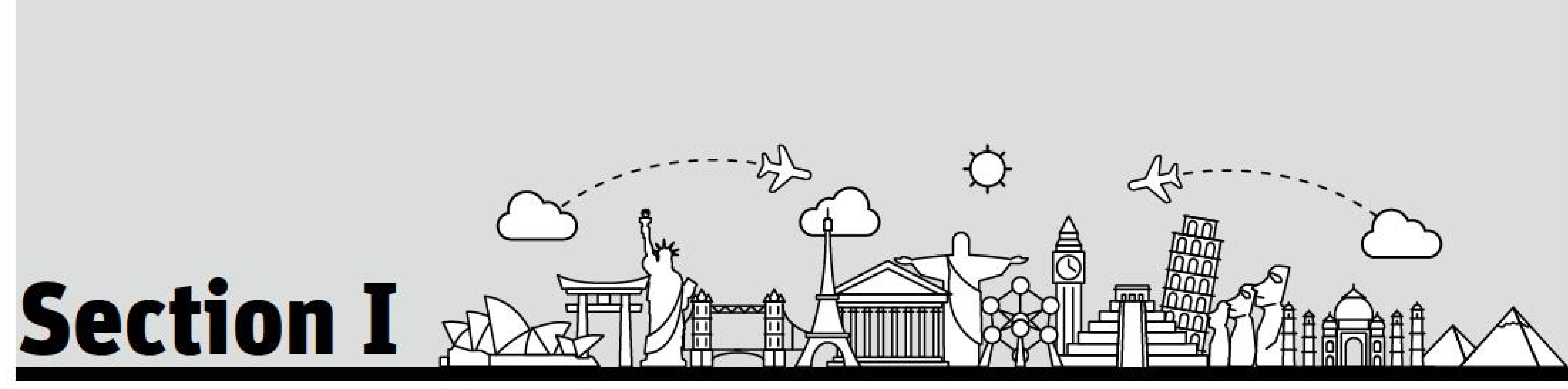
    A. fail　　B. refuse　　C. reject　　D. accept

13. overlook (　　)

    A. neglect　　B. disregard　　C. notice　　D. pass



Unit 7
Environment and Health



Section I

Focus on Suffix (II)

Some suffixes identify nouns, adjectives, adverbs and verb. (These can also be used to change the part of speech: add "-ment" to "govern" to change it from a verb to a noun, so it can take a different place in a sentence.) Other common suffixes show tenses, plurals and comparisons. The List of Suffixes (I) and The List of Suffixes (II) in Unit Eight on Page 220 give an alphabetical listing of the most common word endings.

The List of Suffixes (I)

1) **-able:** *adj.* (able)—dependable, valuable, available
2) **-al:** *adj.*—mineral, vocal, original, provisional, typical, marital, diabolical, differential, clerical, special, fundamental, global, mental, racial, agricultural, abnormal
3) **-an:** *np.* (belonging to; see -ian)—Korean, Mexican, hooligan, vegetarian, anglican
4) **-ance:** *n.* (see -ant 1)—reliance, significance, importance, ordnance, reluctance, romance, tolerance, alliance
5) **-ancy:** *n.* (see -ant 1)—constancy, vacancy, discrepancy
6) **-ant 1:** *adj.*—constant, reliant, significant; remnant, tolerant, vacant, dominant, predominant, extravagant, elegant
7) **-ant 2:** *np.*—attendant, participant, tenant
8) **-ar:** *np.* (person who; see -er 2)—beggar, vicar
9) **-ar:** *n.* (stuff)—radar, vinegar, cigar, cellar, seminar, scar, guitar
10) **-ary:** *adj.*—primary, secondary, monetary, preliminary, subsidiary, documentary, extraordinary, stationary, wary, arbitrary, contemporary, contrary
11) **-ate:** *v.*—anticipate, penetrate, coordinate, intimidate, differentiate, circulate, contemplate, fluctuate, evacuate, punctuate, activate, radiate, rebate, renovate, saturate, segregate, simulate, accumulate, advocate, aggravate, aggregate, alternate, cooperate, dedicate, devastate, elaborate, evaporate, liquidate, rehabilitate, ventilate, amalgamate, degenerate, inundate, escalate, contaminate
12) **-ed:** *adj.* or tense (*pt.*)—bored, coordinated, tired, rocked, battered, busted, tempered, congested, tendered
13) **-ee:** *np.* (person who receives an action)—nominee, refugee, trustee
14) **-en 1:** *adj.* or tense (*pt.*)—eaten, written
15) **-en 1:** *v.* (to make)—lengthen, tighten, fasten, enlighten
16) **-ence:** *n.* (see -ent 1)—influence, persistence, commence, conscience, consequence,

essence, presence, sequence, incidence, inconvenience

17) **-ency:** *n.* (see -ent 1)—efficiency, emergency, contingency, consistency, constituency, decency, currency, deficiency

18) **-ent 1:** *adj.*—efficient, persistent, competent, evident, innocent, magnificent, negligent, coherent, impatient, inherent, potent

19) **-ent 2:** *np.*—resident, ingredient, superintendent, component, incident, opponent

20) **-er 1:** *cp.* (*adj.*)—busier, taller

21) **-er 2:** *np.* (person who)—baker, consumer, teacher, jumper, joiner, easterner, tinker, knacker, caretaker, carpenter, pioneer, broker, decker

22) **-er 3:** *n.* (stuff, machine)—header, foyer, decker, receiver, remainder, stationer, locker, laughter, leather, clobber, banner, amber, ginger, gutter, liver, spider, trailer, slaughter, cider, bunker, slipper, snooker

23) **-es 1:** *pl.*, *pt.* (*n.*; see -s 1)—candies, dishes, toes, stables

24) **-es 2:** 3ps, *pt.* (see -s 2)—fixes, washes

25) **-est:** *cp.* (superlative *adj.*)—busiest, tallest

26) **-fication:** *n.* (see -fy)—modification, simplification, identification

27) **-ful:** *adj.* (full of)—resourceful, stressful, colorful, wonderful, cheerful

Notes: Section Abbreviations

adj.: for adjectives

adv.: for adverbs

cp.: suffixes for comparison

n.: for nouns

np.: for nouns—groups of people

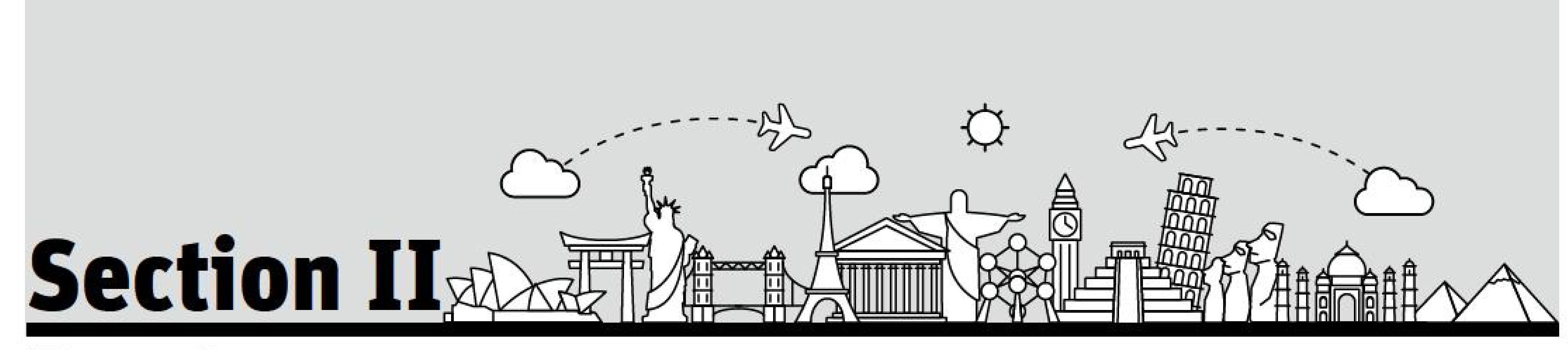
pt.: for plurals or tenses

v.: for verbs

pl.: for plurals

3ps: for 3rd person singular

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/list-of-suffixes. html)



Section II

Text A: Breathless in Bakersfield: Is the Worst Air Pollution in the U.S. About to Get Worse?

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **chronic** ['krɒnɪk] ***adj.***

A chronic disease or illness is one that continues for a long time and cannot be cured; A chronic problem is one that continues for a long time and cannot easily be solved; You can describe someone's bad habits or behavior as chronic when they have behaved like that for a long time and do not seem to be able to stop themselves.

synonym standing; extended

antonym temporary

word family chronically

related phrase chronic disease; chronic depression

Example 1 For those with chronic depression, Mary said, "keep at it and be an optimist."

Example 2 "We have ample reason to conclude that chronic anger is bad for us," Matt said.

② **devastate** ['devəsteɪt] ***vt.*** **(devastated/devastated/devastating)**

to damage something very badly or completely; to make someone feel extremely shocked and sad; If something devastates an area or a place, it damages it very badly or destroys it totally.

synonym destroy; damage; harm

antonym protect; preserve

word family devastating; devastation

related phrase be devastated by

Example 1 The city center was devastated by the alarming bomb.

Example 2 A nuclear war will not only kill millions of people, destroying entire cities, but also devastate our life-supporting ecology, inflicting genetic consequences on future generations.

③ **feasible** ['fi:zɪb(ə)l] ***adj.***

a plan, idea, or method that is feasible is possible and is likely to work; If something is feasible, it can be done, made, or achieved.

synonym possible; viable; potential; working

antonym infeasible; impracticable

word family feasibility

related phrase feasible measures; feasible system; feasible solution

Example 1 We all think this proposal feasible and may work well.

Example 2 From about 800 initial ideas, we then select according to criteria: New, Unique and Not Feasible.

④ **output** ['aʊtpʊt] ***n./vt.*** **(output/output/outputting)**

the amount of goods or work produced by a person, machine, factory, etc.; Output is used to refer to the amount of something that a person or thing produces; If a computer outputs information, it produces it.

synonym export; crop; harvest; yield

antonym input

related phrase output power; output value

Example 1 We should phase the input and output of the machine.

Example 2 The output of trucks shows a marked increase over last year.

⑤ **refine** [rɪ'faɪn] ***vt.*** **(refined/refined/refining)**

to improve a method, plan, system, etc. by gradually making slight changes to it; to make a substance pure using an industrial process; If something, such as a process, theory, or machine is refined, it is improved by having small changes made to it.

synonym improve

word family refinement; refined; refining; refiner

related phrase refine on; refine oil

Example 1 Their daily work is to refine crude oil and transit it out of town.

Example 2 The input from actual or potential customers will be invaluable in this phase to refine the business model.

⑥ **scatter** ['skætə] ***vi./vt.*** **(scattered/scattered/scattering)**

If a group of people or animals scatter, or if something scatters them, they move quickly in different directions; If someone scatters a lot of things, or if they scatter, they are thrown or dropped over a wide area in an irregular way.

synonym disject; disperse; spread around

antonym gather; assemble; collect

word family scattered; scattering; scat

related phrase scatter (sth.) over/around/across, etc. sth.

Example 1 When the tree falls, the monkeys scatter; when the boss falls from power, his maids disperse.

Example 2 In this scenario, all the electrons eventually scatter during their long trip along the sandwich: the spin-up electrons from one iron layer and the spin-down electrons from the other.

⑦ **dominant** ['dɒmɪnənt] ***adj.***

more powerful, important, or noticeable than other people or things; controlling or trying to control other people or things—used to show disapproval

synonym	ruling; predominant
antonym	recessive
word family	dominate; dominated; dominating
related phrase	dominant role; dominant strategy

Example 1 Every ten years or so, a new dominant platform emerges to elevate computing to another level.

Example 2 This is the tyranny of the dominant signature, caused by the limitation of expressing the element with only one name.

⑧ **eliminate** [ɪ'lɪmɪneɪt] ***vt.*** **(eliminated/eliminated/eliminating)**

to completely get rid of something that is unnecessary or unwanted; to defeat a team or person in a competition, so that they no longer take part in it; to kill someone in order to prevent them from causing trouble

synonym	avoid; exclude
word family	elimination; eliminator
related phrase	eliminate poverty; eliminate illiteracy

Example 1 If you eliminate all the items, then there is nothing to copy and thus nothing to insert.

Example 2 We now turn our attention to these topics, the associated threats, and how to eliminate the threats.

⑨ **obstruct** [əb'strʌkt] ***vi./vt.*** **(obstructed/obstructed/obstructing)**

to block a road, passage, etc.; to prevent someone from doing something or something from happening, by making it difficult; To obstruct progress or a process means to prevent it from happening properly.

synonym	let; violate
word family	obstructive; obstruction
related phrase	obstruct from

Example 1 Today, we pay tribute to the brave individuals who, despite all risks, tear down barriers

that obstruct democracy and justice for all.

Example 2 He was fined for obstructing the work of the police.

⑩ **sober** ['səʊbə] ***adj./vt.*** **(sobered/sobered/sobering)**

serious, and thinking or making you think carefully about things; plain and not at all brightly colored; A sober person is serious and thoughtful; to become more serious in behavior or attitude, or to make someone become more serious

synonym cool; philosophical
antonym intoxicated
word family sobering; soberly
related phrase sober up; sober mind

Example 1 These bloody lessons would sober most people down.

Example 2 The lessons learned at the cost of blood helped to sober us.

⑪ **transition** [træn'zɪʃ(ə)n; -'sɪ-] ***n.***

when something changes from one form or state to another; Transition is the process in which something changes from one state to another.

synonym conversion; switching
word family transit; transitional; transitive
related phrase transition period; transition from sth. to sth.

Example 1 How and when do you hope to make the transition?

Example 2 And the procedure should be consistent with defect status transition.

⑫ **resolve** [rɪ'zɒlv] ***n./vi.*** **(resolved/resolved/resolving)**

Strong determination to achieve something; to find a satisfactory way of dealing with a problem or difficulty; to make a definite decision to do something; to make a formal decision, especially by voting

synonym solve; conclude
word family resolved; resolving
related phrase resolve to do sth.; resolve into

Example 1 This did not shake his resolve and he will never surrender.

Example 2 Some compounds can easily resolve.

⑬ **slack** [slæk] ***adj.***

hanging loosely, or not pulled tight; not taking enough care or making enough effort to do things correctly—used to show disapproval; with less business activity than usual

synonym laid; flabby
antonym busy; diligent

word family slackness; slacken

related phrase slack season; take up/pick up the slack

Example 1 Ask them to be more careful. Don't let them get slack.

Example 2 A slack period is one in which there is not much work or activity.

⑭ **inflict** [ɪn'flɪkt] ***vt.*** **(inflicted/inflicted/inflicting)**

to make someone suffer something unpleasant; To inflict harm or damage on someone or something means to make them suffer it.

synonym cause; engender; create; afford

word family inflictable; inflicted; infliction

related phrase inflict yourself/sb. on sb.

Example 1 Either way, they were serene and unwilling to inflict pain on others—exactly like those who were given word of social acceptance.

Example 2 We have too many outbreaks that not only make many people sick but also disrupt major sectors of our food system, erode public confidence in the food supply, and inflict great economic harm.

⑮ **override** [ˌəʊvə'raɪd] ***vi.*** **(overrode/overridden/overriding)**

to use your power or authority to change someone else's decision; to be regarded as more important than something else; to stop a machine doing something that it does by itself

synonym disregard; overrule

word family overriding; overridden

related phrase manual override; override vote

Example 1 What you should not do is to prevent or override it unnecessarily.

Example 2 If necessary, you can also specify these qualifiers for each individual reference, in which case they would override any top level qualifier setting.

⑯ **haunt** [hɔːnt] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(haunted/haunted/haunting)**

If the soul of a dead person haunts a place, it appears there often; to make someone worry or make them sad; to cause problems for someone over a long period of time; a place that someone likes to go to often

synonym habitat; purlieu

word family haunted; haunting

related phrase haunt about; old haunt

Example 1 People say ghosts haunt that old house, which is horrifying.

Example 2 The Wanglang Preserve in western Sichuan is the haunt of the giant panda.

⑰ **slump** [slʌmp] ***n./vi.*** **(slumped/slumped/slumping)**

to fall or lean against something because you are not strong enough to stand; to suddenly go down in price, value, or number; If your shoulders or head slump or are slumped, they bend forward because you are unhappy, tired, or unconscious.

synonym decline; crash; dive

word family slumped; slumping

related phrase economic slump; slump against

Example 1 But always remember: this slump can be cured.

Example 2 The price of electronic products slumps recently.

⑱ **saddle** ['sædl] ***n./vi.*** **(saddled/saddled/saddling)**

to put a saddle on a horse; to make someone have a job or problem that is difficult or boring and that they do not want; If you say sb. is in the saddle, it means that he/she is in a position in which one has power or authority.

synonym absorb; burden

word family saddler

related phrase saddle sb. with sth.; in the saddle

Example 1 I've been saddled with organizing the whole party!

Example 2 So get on the bus, catch a train, rent a car or saddle up your bike.

⑲ **exploit** [(for *n.*) 'eksplɔɪt; (for *v.*) ɪk'splɔɪt] ***n./vt.*** **(exploited/exploited/exploiting)**

to treat someone unfairly by asking them to do things for you, but giving them very little in return—used to show disapproval; to try to get as much as you can out of a situation, sometimes unfairly

synonym develop; mine

word family exploiter; exploitable; exploitative

related phrase exploit consumers; be exploited by

Example 1 The temptation to exploit consumers usually prevails unless it is curbed.

Example 2 Consumer-focused businesses have the latent power to exploit what is now called Big Data.

⑳ **discharge** [(for *n.*) 'dɪstʃɑːdʒ; (for *v.*) dɪs'tʃɑːdʒ] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(discharged/discharged/discharging)**

to officially allow someone to leave somewhere, especially the hospital or the army, navy, etc., or to tell them that they must leave; to send out gas, liquid, smoke, etc., or to allow it to escape; When there is a discharge of a substance, the substance comes out from inside somewhere.

synonym issue; forgive

word family discharged

related phrase discharge sb. from sth.

Example 1 Was that enough to put charge into the ground, and then with the discharge form some kind of plasma ball above?

Example 2 Few of those plants have ever been sanctioned for those emissions, nor were their discharge permits altered to prevent future pollution.

㉑ inferior [ɪn'fɪərɪə] *adj.*

not good, or not as good as someone or something else; lower in rank; If one person is regarded as inferior to another, they are regarded as less important because they have less status or ability.

synonym junior; lower

antonym higher; prime; superior

word family inferiority

related phrase inferior in; inferior goods

Example 1 She swore by her inferior sherry to me.

Example 2 He will not do so for long, for mercifully the public has the good sense not to buy the inferior article more than once.

㉒ deter [dɪ'tɜː] *vt.* (deterred/deterred/deterring)

to stop someone from doing something, by making them realize it will be difficult or have bad results; To deter someone from doing something means to make them not want to do it or continue doing it.

synonym block; stop; prevent

word family determent

related phrase deter sb. from doing sth.

Example 1 Nothing shall deter us from doing what we think right.

Example 2 Mark insisted that Japan need to keep land mines to deter possible attacks on the country's coast line.

㉓ candid ['kændɪd] *adj.*

telling the truth, even when the truth may be unpleasant or embarrassing; When you are candid about something or with someone, you speak honestly.

synonym judicial; just

antonym unjust; unfair

word family candidness; candidly

related phrase candid words; candid friend

Example 1 Many of us, if we are candid, have done that.

Example 2 So I think part of it is the way you handle candid feedback, but the other part is being present.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

aisle	asthma	bluff	café	cowboy
crude	dawn	depot	diameter	diesel
drought	fireplace	freight	ghastly	glen
horrid	horrific	metro	Mexico	motorcycle
outskirts	pacific	particle	pear	pedestrian
PM	pneumonia	rigid	stove	tanker
thorn	tractor	trailer	vale	valley
winding	zoom			

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Can you list some reasons of air pollution?

2. How can we handle the pollution problem?

Breathless in Bakersfield: Is the Worst Air Pollution in the U.S. About to Get Worse?

The bluffs offer a wide and winding view of the northern half of Bakersfield[1], which is one of the few major population centers in California's Central Valley—perhaps the U.S.'s leading agricultural mother lode. On a clear day, the state's dominant landforms put the landscape, and one's place in it, in sobering perspective.

But clear days don't happen all that often in Bakersfield. Discharges from agriculture, industry, rail freight and road traffic together create one of the country's worst concentrations of air pollution—a condition aggravated by geographic and climatic conditions that trap dry, dirty air over this southern section of Central Valley like the lid over a pot.

Oil fields and tankers make up most of the view from the top of the bluffs, and the smell of crude oil is often detectable around the city. Dairies populated by hundreds of thousands of cows are scattered throughout the region, and their smell, too, is hard to miss. Massive depots and distribution centers on the outskirts of town bring in diesel tractors from dawn to dark from Interstate 5, the major north-south route that runs from Canada to Mexico. Freight trailers hauling oil zoom through the city, and its many refining plants billow smoke into the air.

Bakersfield and surrounding Kern County are the unlucky venue of this pollution. The American Lung Association's State of the Air 2016 report found the city's air to be the worst in the United States for short-term and year-round particle pollution.

One of the main indicators of poor air quality is the level of fine particulate matter (PM2.5) in the air. The WHO[2]'s latest surrounding air pollution database ranks nearby Visalia-Porterville worst in the U.S. Bakersfield's average reading in one 24-hour period in late January was 40.5 micrograms per

cubic meter; over the mountains in somewhat smoggy Los Angeles, that number averages about 12.

Of the wider metro area's 875,000 people, about 70,000 are said to have asthma, 40,000 cardiovascular disease, and 27,000 chronic obstructive pneumonia. A 2006 study found the health hazards of the region's air pollution cost the southern section of the Central Valley, known as the San Joaquin, an estimated $3 billion—or about $1,000 per person per year in a region where about a quarter of the population is in ghastly poverty.

Though some improvements have been made in recent years through more rigid air quality standards, cleaner burning engines and efficient industrial machinery, the region continues to be inflicted by poor air quality and the health problems it brings. Now the election of Donald Trump, and his appointment of an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA[3]) head in Scott Pruitt who actively overrode air quality regulations, has many worried that the small but steady improvements to the area's air quality may all be undone.

Gustavo Aguirre Jr. is a prominent local activist who works on environmental justice issues in many of the small, inferior, under-served and poor farming communities that surround Bakersfield. He says progress has been slow in the San Joaquin Valley, a conservative part of the state that's heavily influenced by agricultural and oil industry interests, and the Trump administration could further limit that progress.

"The potential of us going backwards 50 or 60 years in air pollution control and lightening is very horrific," says Aguirre. The worst air in the United States may soon be getting degenerated.

But the authority tasked with addressing the region's air quality issues, the San Joaquin Valley Air Pollution Control District, does not seem too concerned, suggesting it has done just about all it can to relieve the problem.

"Over the last 25 years, air pollution in the San Joaquin Valley—from the stationary sources we regulate—has been reduced by over 80% with some of the toughest air regulations in place anywhere in the nation," says Seyed Sadredin, the air district's executive director.

These improvements have come through working with farmers to reduce the burning of agricultural waste, funding trade-ins for older farm fixtures, and imposing requirements for cleaner burning stoves and fireplaces, among other measures. Now, Sadredin argues, it is up to the state of California's Air Resources Board to better regulate mobile pollution sources—the cars, diesel trucks and freight trains—that are under the state's span of control.

"The biggest pollution source right now that's haunting us is the emissions from the mobile sources that make up 85% of the pollution," he adds.

Indeed, Sadredin has begun calling for revisions to the Clean Air Act, a typical federal law supervising environmental standards in the U.S., as a way to reduce or even eliminate the estimated $30 million a year in sanctions and fines that have been placed on the glen because of its failure to meet federal clean air standards.

A November 2016 air district white paper directed to the presidential transition team makes the argument that the valley is unfairly punished by the existing provisions of the Clean Air Act, and calls for changes.

"We should have a more welcoming ear at the EPA, if you read the tea leaves in the coming administration, that would pay attention to the economic devastation that some of these sanctions could cause to poor regions like ours," Sadredin says.

He'd prefer to make these changes through new legislation, like the air pollution bill passed by the House of Representatives last year but was aborted before the end of the legislative session. "But given the political friction in Washington, getting a clean piece of legislation like that may be difficult, so we may ultimately be in a position that I hope we don't have to be in, where we have to attach what we need to something that perhaps does more than people like to see by way of changes to the Clean Air Act," Sadredin warns.

Environmentalists and activists in Kern County worry that such a heavy-handed approach will erode the Clean Air Act, reducing regulations on Bakersfield's highly polluting industries.

"It takes away the need to meet the standard no matter what it costs, because Sadredin wants language in there that reduces responsibility if it's economically or technologically unfeasible," says Tom Frantz, a local pear farmer and candid environmental activist. "And once you get language like that into the Clean Air Act, you can justify not doing almost anything for technological or economic reasons. You have this huge loop hole."

"The San Joaquin Valley air pollution control district has claimed repeatedly that they've done all they should be expected to do," Frantz adds. "They have every excuse in the world of why they've done enough. So our real thorn in this, from my side of things, is our own air district—which refuses to recognize the horrifying health costs of our continuing pollution levels, and is unwilling to do whatever's necessary to get it cleaned up."

While the results of the 2016 elections haven't been welcomed by all in Bakersfield, last year was a good one for the area's air quality. For the first time in nearly 20 years, the valley avoided breach of state and federal regulations for the concentration of PM2.5s: particulate matter that's 2.5 micrometers in diameter or smaller (roughly a 20th of the width of a human hair). These particles are a key measure of air quality because they're too small to be deterred from lodging in the lungs, and contribute to a variety of diseases.

After six years of extreme drought, a series of storms last year is credited with moving enough of the vale's air to bring down the PM2.5 measurements. "The valley we live in has slack high-pressure systems that will sit for up to a month, even six weeks," Frantz says. "Any time a low-pressure system comes off the Pacific, it blows out our bad air. If that would happen once a week, we would not have much of an air quality problem."

What also helped, he says, is the slump in prices for both oil and milk, two market conditions that resulted in reduced output from the region's refining plants and dairies, and thus fewer of their polluting emissions. "When they pull back a little bit because of low prices, we get a little bit cleaner air," Frantz says.

But, he notes, those dairies and refining plants could soon be operating at greater capacity again—and while the region got lucky with rain last year, normal annual rain fall in Bakersfield is just 6.47 inches. Without stronger environmental regulations, he warns, Bakersfield could be saddled with its worst-ranked air quality for a long time to come.

Some aren't waiting for action at the federal level. In the front room of a Boys and Girls Club in the tiny farm worker community of Lamont, just south of Bakersfield, around 25 community activists from a handful of local organizations have gathered to coordinate their efforts around environmental justice issues in Kern County. Planners at the county are currently working on a new countywide general plan, and recent legislation requires them to take into consideration

environmental justice issues.

Aguirre says the groups have to be strategic about how and where they advance their agenda. "We've made some progress at statewide level with the governor of California—but locally our pollution control district is an old guard, pro-industry air district that says yes to everything from industry and no to the community."

To push back, he's working with a nearby community called Arvin to install a set of air pollution monitors throughout this small city to track PM2. 5 and other harmful pollutants. Aguirre is hoping to collect data to show local officials that air pollution issues here are much worse than the state and air district monitors report.

He says small communities, especially those most affected by the region's poor air quality and other environmental issues, have to become more involved in documenting the conditions that pose public health hazards. If they don't, he argues, nobody else will.

"We have to fight," Aguirre says. "Tooth and nail."

Compared to years past, Bakersfield's air has improved significantly, according to Bob Smith, a local real estate developer and Bakersfield city council member. "I think it's a success story in a lot of ways," he says.

Smith argues that state and local regulations have played a large role in reducing air pollution in the city and the valley, as have industrial investments in cleaner technologies. Various state grants and incentive programs have also helped reduce pollution, offering trade-ins or tune-ups for older vehicles and stimulating the adoption of cleaner burning farm equipment.

Now Smith sees the potential for even more improvements. A bicycle advocate who rides through center Bakersfield on a new electric Dutch-style bike, Smith has been trying to make the case that alternative forms of transportation can help reduce the city's horrid air pollution. He helped establish the city's first bicycle transportation plan in 2013, and also pushed the city to adopt a resolution in support of a Complete Streets policy that refocuses road planning to accommodate pedestrians, cyclists and other forms of transportation in addition to cars and motorcycles.

Walking down 18th street, a mostly sleepy commercial aisle in center Bakersfield, Smith points out a café he's helping to exploit, and a 44-unit market-rate apartment project he's building a block away. They are two bets on the future of city center, but also on the future of a more worldwide style of city—not a traditional farm town famous for its trucks and cowboy hats.

But while Smith is optimistic about a greener future for the city, he also notes that its population grew by more than 100,000 people from 2000 to 2010—one of the fastest rates of growth in the country. As more people move to the region, resolving pollution from vehicles and homes becomes even more important. Getting more people on bikes, or at least out of cars, will surely only help; otherwise, humans will get penalized one day.

(Adapted from https: //www. theguardian. com/cities/2017/feb/14/bakersfield-california-bad-air-pollution-us)

Notes

① Bakersfield

Bakersfield is a city in California, United States, and the county seat of Kern County. It covers about 142 square miles near the southern end of the San Joaquin Valley and the Central Valley region. Bakersfield's population is approximately 380,000, making it the ninth-most populous city in California and the 52nd-most populous city in the nation. The more built-up urban area that includes Bakersfield and areas immediately around the city, such as East Bakersfield and Rosedale, has a population of approximately 464,000. The city is a significant hub for both agriculture and oil production. Kern County is the most productive oil-producing county, and the fourth most productive agricultural county (by value) in the United States. Industries include natural gas and other energy extraction, aerospace, mining, petroleum refining, manufacturing, distribution, food processing and corporate regional headquarters. The city is also the birthplace of the country music genre known as the Bakersfield sound.

② WHO

The World Health Organization (WHO) is a specialized agency of the United Nations that is concerned with international public health. It was established on 7 April 1948, headquartered in Geneva, Switzerland. The WHO is a member of the United Nations Development Group. Its predecessor, the Health Organization, was an agency of the League of Nations. The constitution of the World Health Organization had been signed by 61 countries on 22 July 1946, with the first meeting of the World Health Assembly finishing on 24 July 1948. Since its creation, it has played a leading role in the eradication of smallpox. Its current priorities include communicable diseases, in particular HIV/AIDS, Ebola, malaria and tuberculosis; the mitigation of the effects of non-communicable diseases; sexual and reproductive health, development and ageing; nutrition, food security and healthy eating; occupational health; substance abuse; and driving the development of reporting, publications and networking. The WHO is responsible for the World Health Report, the worldwide World Health Survey, and World Health Day.

③ EPA

The United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA or sometimes USEPA) is an agency of the federal government of the United States which was created for the purpose of protecting human health and the environment by writing and enforcing regulations based on laws passed by Congress. President Richard Nixon proposed the establishment of EPA and it began operation on 2 December 1970, after Nixon signed an executive order. The order establishing the EPA was ratified by committee hearings in the House and Senate. The agency is led by its Administrator, who is appointed by the President and approved by Congress. The current Administrator is Scott Pruitt. The EPA is not a Cabinet department, but the Administrator is normally given cabinet rank.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. The ________ offer a wide and ________ view of the northern half of Bakersfield, which is one of the few major population centers in California's Central ________—perhaps the U.S.'s leading ________ mother lode.
2. ________ from agriculture, industry, rail ________ and road traffic together create one of the country's worst ________ of air pollution—a condition ________ by geographic and climatic conditions that ________ dry, dirty air over this southern section of Central Valley like the lid over a pot.
3. Dairies ________ by hundreds of thousands of cows are ________ throughout the region, and their smell, too, is hard to ________.
4. Though some ________ have been made in recent years through more ________ air quality standards, cleaner burning engines and ________ industrial machinery, the region continues to be ________ by poor air quality and the health problems it ________.
5. These improvements have come ________working with farmers to ________ the burning of agricultural waste, ________ trade-ins for older farm ________, and imposing requirements for cleaner burning stoves and ________, among other measures.
6. A November 2016 air district white paper ________ to the presidential transition team makes the argument that the valley is ________ punished by the existing ________ of the Clean Air Act, and calls ________ changes.
7. But given the political ________ in Washington, getting a clean piece of ________ like that may be difficult, so we may ________ be in a position that I hope we don't have to be in, where we have to attach what we need to something that perhaps does more than people like to see by way of changes to ________.
8. It takes away the need to meet the ________ no matter what it costs, because Sadredin wants language in there that reduces responsibility if it's ________ or technologically ________.

9. So our real ________ in this, from my side of things, is our own air district—which refuses to recognize the ________ health costs of our continuing pollution levels, and is ________ to do whatever's necessary to ________ it cleaned up

10. After six years of ________ drought, a series of storms last year is ________ with moving enough of the vale's air to bring ________ the PM2.5 measurements.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate the last two paragraphs. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

refine	slump	eliminate	override	feasible
haunt	devastate	inflict	sober	candid

VII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. Freight trailers hauling oil zoom through the city. (   )
   A. towing B. barging C. evacuating D. extracting
2. He was a chronic alcoholic and unable to hold down a job. (   )
   A. crook B. long time C. humble D. discreet
3. The output of cars shows a marked increase over last year. (   )
   A. outlet B. outcome C. harvest D. outline
4. Fatty foods should be eliminated from the diet. (   )
   A. excluded B. greased C. expanded D. escalated
5. Having my mother living with us causes friction at home. (   )
   A. incidence B. shiver C. conflict D. catastrophe
6. We'll send your personal belongings by air freight and your furniture by sea freight. (   )
   A. transport B. fare C. shuttle D. premium
7. We regard the publication of this information as a serious breach of trust. (   )
   A. conformation B. violation C. tilt D. consent
8. The whole thing was a ghastly mistake. (   )
   A. slight B. minor C. shred D. terrible
9. I just can't imagine living in the midst of war. Fear and terror will always haunt me. (   )
   A. abide B. surround C. stroll D. swerve
10. Inactivity can make your joints stiff, and the bones may begin to degenerate. (   )

A. become weak   B. degrade   C. decline   D. decrease

VIII. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in the blanks with proper words based on the English suffixes.

Description: This is a list of words ending with suffix "-able", meaning "able to be".

e.g. eat + able = eatable

1. believe ________ + ________ = ________
2. account ________ + ________ = ________
3. imagine ________ + ________ = ________
4. accept ________ + ________ = ________
5. understand ________ + ________ = ________
6. change ________ + ________ = ________
7. manage ________ + ________ = ________
8. predict ________ + ________ = ________
9. comfort ________ + ________ = ________
10. enjoy ________ + ________ = ________

Description: This is a list of words ending with suffix "-en", meaning "to become or to make the word a verb".

e.g. short + en = shorten

11. fright ________ + ________ = ________
12. awake ________ + ________ = ________
13. hide ________ + ________ = ________
14. fast ________ + ________ = ________
15. soft ________ + ________ = ________
16. hard ________ + ________ = ________
17. haste ________ + ________ = ________
18. sharp ________ + ________ = ________
19. damp ________ + ________ = ________
20. broad ________ + ________ = ________

IX. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. The bluffs offer a wide and winding view of the northern half of Bakersfield, which is one of the few major population centers in California's Central Valley—perhaps the U.S.'s leading agricultural mother lode.
2. The American Lung Association's State of the Air 2016 report found the city's air to be the worst in the United States for short-term and year-round particle pollution.
3. Of the wider metro area's 875,000 people, about 70,000 are said to have asthma, 40,000

cardiovascular disease, and 27,000 chronic obstructive pneumonia.

4. Though some improvements have been made in recent years through more rigid air quality standards, cleaner burning engines and efficient industrial machinery, the region continues to be inflicted by poor air quality and the health problems it brings.

5. But the authority tasked with addressing the region's air quality issues, the San Joaquin Valley Air Pollution Control District, does not seem too concerned, suggesting it has done just about all it can to relieve the problem.

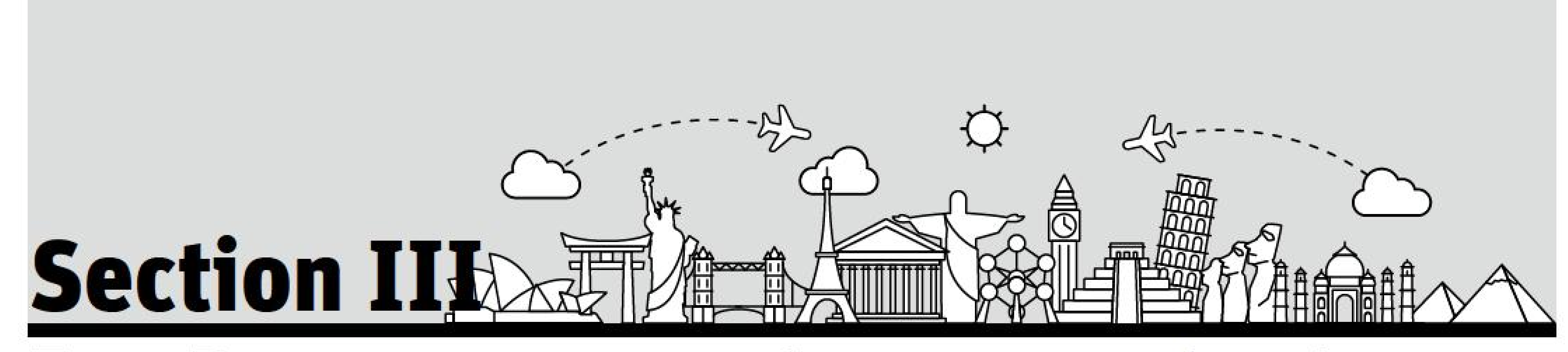
X. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. leek mushroom herb onion broccoli ( ) ______________
2. bass whale salmon fin crocodile ( ) ______________
3. limb scruff spine vein thigh ( ) ______________
4. bobby whisper dean dentist foreman ( ) ______________
5. jersey knickers stool lace skirt ( ) ______________



Section III

Text B: From Sea to Plate: How Plastic Got into Our Fish

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **accumulate** [ə'kjuːmjʊleɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(accumulated/accumulated/accumulating)**

to gradually get more and more money, possessions, knowledge, etc. over a period of time; to gradually increase in numbers or amount until there is a large quantity in one place; When you accumulate things or when they accumulate, they collect or are gathered over a period of time.

word family accumulated; accumulative; accumulation

related phrase accumulate experience; accumulated profit

Example 1 It is unjust that a privileged few should continue to accumulate wealth.

Example 2 I just want to accumulate some useful experience there.

② **circulate** ['sɜːkjʊleɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(circulated/circulated/circulating)**

to move around within a system, or to make something do this; If a piece of writing circulates or is circulated, copies of it are passed around among a group of people.

synonym cycle; spread abroad

word family circular; circulating; circulatory; circulative; circularly; circulation

related phrase circulate information

Example 1 Swimming helps to get the blood circulating through the muscles.

Example 2 Rumors began circulating that the Prime Minister was seriously ill.

③ **deposit** [dɪ'pɒzɪt] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(deposited/deposited/depositing)**

to put something down in a particular place; to leave a layer of a substance on the surface of something, especially gradually; to put money or something valuable in a bank or other place where it will be safe

synonym fund; saving; covers; settle

antonym withdrawal

word family depository; deposition; depositor

related phrase deposit account; deposit money

Example 1 The initial deposit required to open an account is a minimum 100 dollars.

Example 2 You are advised to deposit valuables in the hotel safe.

④ **manipulate** [mə'nɪpjʊleɪt] ***vt.*** **(manipulated/manipulated/manipulating)**

to make someone think and behave exactly as you want them to, by skillfully deceiving or influencing them; to work skillfully with information, systems, etc. to achieve the result that you want

synonym guide; work; handle

word family manipulative; manipulable; manipulation; manipulability

related phrase manipulate sb. into (doing) sth.

Example 1 The thought that any parent would manipulate their child into seeking fame just appalled me.

Example 2 Do you know how to manipulate a computer?

⑤ **recycle** [ˌriː'saɪk(ə)l] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(recycled/recycled/recycling)**

to put used objects or materials through a special process so that they can be used again; If you recycle things that have already been used, such as bottles or sheets of paper, you process them so that they can be used again.

synonym rebirth; recirculation

word family recyclable; recycling

related phrase recycle bin; recycled paper

Example 1 We take all our bottles to be recycled.

Example 2 The fashion world just keeps recycling old ideas.

⑥ **retain** [rɪ'teɪn] ***vt.*** **(retained/retained/retaining)**

to keep something or continue to have something; to store or keep something inside something else; to remember information; To retain something means to continue to have that thing.

synonym maintain

word family retainer

related phrase retain earnings; retain card

Example 1 You have the right to retain possession of the goods.

Example 2 I find it very difficult to retain facts.

⑦ **vigorous** ['vɪgərəs] ***adj.***

using a lot of energy and strength or determination; strong and healthy; A vigorous person does things with great energy and enthusiasm; A vigorous campaign or activity is done with great energy and enthusiasm.

synonym live; energetic; mighty

word family vigorously; vigor

related phrase vigorous exercise; vigorous effort

Example 1 Environmentalists have begun a vigorous campaign to oppose nuclear dumping in the area.

Example 2 Vigorous efforts are being made to find a solution to the problem.

⑧ **contaminate** [kən'tæmɪneɪt] ***vt.*** **(contaminated/contaminated/contaminating)**

to make a place or substance dirty or harmful by putting something, such as chemicals or poison in it; to influence something in a way that has a bad effect; If something is contaminated by dirt, chemicals, or radiation, they make it dirty or harmful.

synonym spot; dirty; poison

word family contaminated; contaminative; contamination; contaminant

related phrase contaminate environment

Example 1 Have any fish been contaminated in the Arctic Ocean?

Example 2 Hardy claims the poster ads have contaminated Berlin's streets.

⑨ **maximize** ['mæksɪmaɪz] ***vi./vt.*** **(maximized/maximized/maximizing)**

to increase something, such as profit or income as much as possible; to use something in a way that gives you the greatest practical value or the best results

antonym minimize

word family maximum; maximal; maximally; maximization

related phrase maximize utility; maximize profit

Example 1 The career center will help you maximize your employment opportunities.

Example 2 The company's main function is to maximize profit.

⑩ **plague** [pleɪg] ***n./vt.*** **(plagued/plagued/plaguing)**

a disease that causes death and spreads quickly to a large number of people; to cause pain, suffering, or trouble to someone, especially for a long period of time

synonym disaster; harry; trouble

word family plaguy; plaguily

related phrase a plague of rats/locusts, etc.

Example 1 Kitty was plagued by weakness, fatigue and dizziness.

Example 2 The city is under threat from a plague of rats.

⑪ **sympathize** ['sɪmpəθaɪz] ***vi.*** **(sympathized/sympathized/sympathizing)**

to feel sorry for someone because you understand their problems; to support someone's ideas or actions; If you sympathize with someone's feelings, you understand them and are not critical of them.

word family sympathetic; sympathetically; sympathy

related phrase sympathize with

Example 1 I can sympathize with those who have lost their loved ones.

Example 2 The public sympathized with the miners' strike.

⑫ **lobby** ['lɒbɪ] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(lobbied/lobbied/lobbying)**

a wide passage or large hall just inside the entrance to a public building; to try to persuade the government or someone with political power that a law or situation should be changed

synonym sala; salle; persuade

word family lobbyist; lobbyism

related phrase hotel lobby; lobby sb. to do sth.; lobby for/against

Example 1 We've been lobbying our state representative to support the new health plan.

Example 2 I'll meet you in the entrance lobby.

⑬ **refund** [(for *n.*) 'ri:fʌnd; (for *v.*) rɪ'fʌnd] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(refunded/refunded/refunding)**

a sum of money that is returned to you; to pay back; If someone refunds your money, they return it to you, for example because you have paid too much or because you have returned goods to a shop.

synonym return; replace; tender; repayment

word family refundable; refunded

related phrase tax refund; refund money

Example 1 Face it—you'll just have to take those cowboy boots back and ask for a refund.

Example 2 Can I refund this ticket?

⑭ **stem** [stem] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(stemmed/stemmed/stemming)**

the long thin part of a plant, from which leaves, flowers, or fruit grow; to stop something from happening, spreading, or developing; If a condition or problem stems from something, it was caused originally by that thing.

synonym birth; blood; stock; block; dispute; prohibit; discourage

word family stemmed; stemless; stemmer

related phrase stem the tide/flow/flood of sth.; stem from; stem cell

Example 1 The measures are meant to stem the tide of illegal immigration.

Example 2 His headaches stemmed from vision problems.

⑮ **catastrophe** [kə'tæstrəfɪ] ***n.***

a terrible unexpected event in which there is a lot of destruction, suffering, or death

synonym fiasco; smashup; disaster; calamity

word family catastrophic

related phrase prevent/avert a catastrophe; environmental catastrophe

Example 1 Sudan requires food immediately to avert a humanitarian catastrophe.

Example 2 If the contract is cancelled, it'll be a catastrophe for everyone concerned.

⑯ **discard** [(for *n.*) 'dɪskɑːd; (for *v.*) dɪs'kɑːd] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(discarded/discarded/discarding)**

to get rid of something; to put down unwanted cards in a card game; If you discard something, you get rid of it because you no longer want it or need it.

synonym yield; desert; quit

word family discarded; discarding; discardable

related phrase into the discard

Example 1 Discard any old cleaning materials.

Example 2 You have to discard any thoughts of disbanding.

⑰ **whirl** [wɜːl] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(whirled/whirled/whirling)**

to turn or spin around very quickly, or to make someone or something do this; If something or someone whirls around or if you whirl them around, they move around or turn around very quickly.

synonym rotation; rolling; turning; wheel; circle; spin; turn; swing

word family whirling; whirler

related phrase be in a whirl; whirl sb./sth. about/around/away

Example 1 His mind was in a whirl and he was worried.

Example 2 He was whirling Anne around the floor.

⑱ **organic** [ɔː'gænɪk] ***adj.***

relating to farming or gardening methods of growing food without using artificial chemicals, or produced or grown by these methods; change or development which is organic happens in a natural way, without anyone planning it or forcing it to happen

synonym fundamental; ultimate; radical; underlying

antonym inorganic

word family organically; organism; organ; organize

related phrase organic agriculture; organic food

Example 1 Organic farming is better for the environment.

Example 2 The shop sells organic food.

⑲ **defect** [(for *n.*) 'diːfekt; (for *v.*) dɪ'fekt] ***n./vi.*** **(defected/defected/defecting)**

a fault or a lack of something that means that something or someone is not perfect; to leave your own country or group in order to go to or join an opposing one

synonym deficiency; disadvantage; shortcoming

word family defective; defectively

related phrase zero defect; a genetic defect

Example 1 He was born with a hearing defect.

Example 2 All the cars are tested for defects before they leave the factory.

⑳ **crunch** [krʌntʃ] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(crunched/crunched/crunching)**

the sound of something crunching; a critical situation that arises because of a shortage; A situation in which a business or economy has very little money can be referred to as a crunch; to make a sound like something being crushed; You can refer to an important time or event, for example, when an important decision has to be made, as the crunch.

synonym crush; craunch

word family crunchy; crunched

related phrase crunch time; credit crunch

Example 1 The UN is facing a cash crunch.

Example 2 Three new teachers were hired to help ease the crunch.

㉑ **accountable** [ə'kaʊntəb(ə)l] ***adj.***

responsible for the effects of your actions and willing to explain or be criticized for them; If you are accountable to someone for something that you do, you are responsible for it and must be prepared to justify your actions to that person.

synonym responsible; liable

word family accountability; account

related phrase accountable government

Example 1 The hospital should be held accountable for the quality of care it gives.

Example 2 Managers must be accountable for their decisions.

㉒ **fragment** [(for *n.*) 'frægmənt; (for *v.*) fræg'ment] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(fragmented/fragmented/fragmenting)**

a small piece of something that has broken off or that comes from something larger; to break something, or be broken into a lot of small, separate parts

synonym debris; chip

word family fragmented; fragmentary; fragmental; fragmentize

related phrase rock fragment; glass fragments

Example 1 Kitty read everything, digesting every fragment of news.

Example 2 The clouds fragmented and out came the sun.

㉓ **former** ['fɔːmə] ***adj.***

happening or existing before, but not now; having a particular position in the past

synonym	long-ago; old-time
word family	formally; formalization; formalize
related phrase	in former times/years; the former, the latter; former name

Example 1 Their farm has been reduced to half its former size.

Example 2 Of the two possibilities, the former seems more likely.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

aisle	ally	bay	beleaguer	Belgium
bud	cosmetic	dame	dental	diesel
documentary	elastic	fabric	fiber	guardian
gum	hygiene	journal	junk	marsh
microscope	outlook	pacific	particle	pest
poly	residue	rival	sphere	steward
thereabouts	thread			

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. What do you think of the ocean pollution?

2. How to handle the plastic pollution and protect the body health?

From Sea to Plate: How Plastic Got into Our Fish

Scientists at Ghent University in Belgium recently calculated that shell fish lovers are eating up to 11,000 plastic residues in their sea food each year. We absorb fewer than 1%, but they will still accumulate in the body over time. The findings affect all Europeans, but, as the most greedy consumers, the Belgians were believed to be most exposed. The British should sympathize—last August, the results of a study by Plymouth University caused a stir when it was reported that plastic was found in a third of UK-caught fish, including cod and shell fish. Now, UK supermarkets are being lobbied to create plastic-free aisles by the campaign group Plastic Oceans Foundation, whose feature-length documentary, *A Plastic Ocean,* was released in Britain this week.

We are finally paying attention to the pollution that has plagued our seas for years—the government is considering a refundable deposit on plastic bottles, and the hygiene company Johnson & Johnson[1] recently switched from plastic to paper stem on its cotton buds. Evidently, there's nothing like serving plastic up on a dinner plate to focus the mind.

Whether your national obsession is shell fish or fish and chips, this problem goes way beyond

Britain and Belgium. Contaminated fish and shell fish have been found everywhere from Europe, Canada to Brazil—and plastic-eating fish are now showing up in supermarkets. The question is no longer: Are we eating plastic in our sea food? What scientists are urgently trying to establish is just how bad for us that is. Another question we might ask: How did we get in such a crunch?

More than a century ago, in 1907, another Belgian, Leo Baekeland, a graduate of Ghent University, invented gum. It was, he later admitted, something of an accident, but this welcome development introduced in a colorful new age of plastics. Until then, we had, at great cost and effort, been manipulating products out of natural materials, such as shellac, derived from shells. Baekeland, who had moved to the U.S., saw commercial potential in an entirely man-made replacement for shellac that would be suitable for mass production. Gum was lightweight, affordable, elastic and safe, but perhaps the greatest thing about the plastic Baekeland created, and those that followed, was its durability.

Throughout the first half of the 20th century, innovations came thick and fast. Soon, they were a hard-to-get-rid-of part of everyday life. And then, in 1950, that catastrophe of the sea arrived: the discarded poly bag. In that decade, annual global plastic production reached 5m tonnes; by 2014, it stood at 311m tonnes—shockingly, over 40% of it for single-use packing. Now, plastic's durability looks less of a benefit than it once did. A study in *Science Magazine* in 2015 estimated that around 8m tonnes of plastic go into the sea each year. And, last year, a report for the Ellen MacArthur Foundation (launched in 2010 by the former round-the-world sailor to promote a more circular economy) estimated that, by 2050, the volume of accumulated plastics in the oceans will be greater than that of fish.

Evidently a keen sailor, Baekeland retired in 1939, to spend time on his 70 ft speed boat. Ninety years after his plastics break through, in 1997, another sailor, Charles Moore, was spanning the ocean between Hawaii and California when he came across the now infamous Great Pacific Rubbish Patch, one of the five main sub-tropical spiral (circulating systems of ocean currents that draw floating fragments into a kind of massive junk whirl). Ever since its discovery, there has been vigorous debate over the size of the patch, with descriptions ranging from the size of Texas to twice that of France. It is, in fact, impossible to definitively measure, because its size—and litter visible on the surface—changes with currents and winds, but its heart is thought to be around 1 m sq km, with the sphere spanning a further 3.5m sq km, stretching roughly from the west coast of North America to Japan. An aerial survey last year by Dutch foundation The Ocean Cleanup found it is far bigger than previously estimated, while the UN's environmental program warns it is growing so fast that it is now visible from space.

In 1997, Moore saw bottles, bags and bits of poly plastics. But what really worried him, and has occupied campaigners and scientists ever since, was the vast soup of tiny plastic particles whirling around below the junk. Moore returned in 1999 to measure the weight of these "micro-plastics". "We found six times more plastic than plankton," he said, sparking a surge of worldwide research that has not let up since. Researchers from around the world pooled data over six years to 2013, and reached the conclusion that there are already more than 5,000 billion pieces of plastic in the world's oceans, most of them micro-plastics.

Micro-plastics—which range in size from 5 mm to 10 nano-meters or thereabouts—come from a number of sources. Recently, the focus has been on so-called micro-beads, tiny plastic balls found in some cosmetic facial scrubs and dental cream (many governments, including the UK's,

have moved to ban them). Like micro-fibers—the threads from man-made fabric clothes lost during washing, and rubber fragments from vehicle tyres—these tiny pieces of plastic are too small to be filtered out of our waste water systems, and huge quantities end up in the sea. But it's the single-use plastics for packaging, more than a third of everything we produce, that present the greatest problem. While many plastics don't biodegrade, they do photodegrade—UV exposure eventually breaks all those plastic bottles and bags down into tiny pieces, which, in common with micro-beads and fibers, potentially filter poisonous chemical additives—PCBs, pest control chemicals put there by manufacturers. These tiny particles look like food to some species, and, last November, new research showed that common plastics attract a thin layer of oceanic algae, making them smell like nourishing food.

In July 2015, a laboratory released film they had captured under a microscope showing zooplankton[2] eating microplastics. Given that these tiny organic beings form a crucial part of the food chain, the implications were immediately shocking. But a huge variety of the fish and shell fish we eat are consuming plastics directly too. Research published last year in the journal *Science* found that juvenile perch actively preferred poly particles to the plankton they would normally eat. While most plastic has been found in the guts of fish, and would therefore be removed before eating, some studies have warned that microplastics, particularly at the nano scale, could transfer from the guts to the meat. There is growing concern about poisons filtering—laboratory tests have shown that chemicals associated with micro-plastics can concentrate in the tissues of oceanic animals. Some commercially important species have seen the majority of their population affected.

A fortnight ago, Gesamp, a joint group of experts on the scientific aspects of oceanic environmental protection, published the second part of its global assessment on microplastics. It confirmed that contamination has been recorded in tens of thousands of organic beings and more than 100 species. Last year, the European Food Safety Authority called for urgent research, raising increasing concern for human health and food safety "given the potential for microplastic pollution in eatable tissues of commercial fish". In the face of such widespread contamination, the outlook seems dim.

It's important not to exaggerate the risks before they're fully understood. The UN's Food and Agriculture Organization pointed out in 2014 just how reliant we have become on sea food as a source of PRO—an estimated 10%–12% of the global population relies on fisheries for their life. Their personal average fish consumption has risen from 10 kilo gram in the 1960s to more than 19 kilo gram in 2012, and sea food production is annually increasing at a rate of 3.2%, twice the world population growth rate. In other words, demand for sea food is increasing, just as its future viability is at risk. Something has to give—and it is increasingly clear that has to be our reliance on discarded plastics.

When you're alone in the middle of the Southern Ocean, the nearest land is Antarctica[3] and the closest people are manning the space station above, there's time to think. If you're Dame Ellen MacArthur, it sets you to thinking about the defects of our global economy. As she tells it: "Your boat is your entire world and what you take with you when you leave is all you have, to the last drop of diesel and last package of food. There is no more." Our economy, she realized, is no different: "It's entirely dependent on limited materials we have only once in the history of humanity." To MacArthur, the solution is simple—instead of using these resources up, we should design the waste element out of products in the first place. MacArthur, through her foundation, is working with industry leaders and others to approach design with end of life in mind. She has found one particularly strong ally in the

Prince of Wales, whose International Sustainability Unit (ISU) is also working on how innovation and design can reduce the impact of plastic production on the environment.

Two weeks ago, the ISU organized a working group, which included MacArthur, to look at plastic waste in the oceans. This is how Professor Thompson found himself on the banks of Rainham Marshes in Essex, collecting plastic fragments with senior executives from Coca-Cola, Pepsi, Adidas, Dell and Marks & Spencer. Of what they picked up, about 80% was plastic bottles—those executives probably saw their own products spat back at them from the Thames. They were shocked, apparently, at the scale of it, which Thompson pointed out "was not inconsistent with beaches worldwide". Then they all went to the recycling plant. Only a third of the UK's annual 1.5m tonnes of recyclable plastic waste is recycled. While many drinks bottles are made of easily recyclable PET, some brands add plastic sleeves or color the bottles, reducing their recycle ability. The guardian watched those bottles picked out, simply due to a lack of thought at the design stage.

The idea of the circular economy is taking hold; there is now broad agreement that industry needs to move towards products that maximize recycling and re-use. As the Prince of Wales put it: "We do need to consider, from the very beginning, the second, third and, indeed, fourth life of the products we use in everyday life." Thompson is heartened. "This growing recognition," he says, "was not the case 10 years ago when industry pointed at consumers saying they were accountable … now it's much clearer there's responsibility on both sides." And in what he describes as an exciting step forward, we might see the formation of a stewardship council for plastics, which will connect industries from manufacture through to recycling, and, as the Oceanic Stewardship Council does for fishing, implement responsible and feasible practice. After all, plastic is not the rival; it's incredibly useful, not least in reducing food waste. What's so positive about recent progress, Thompson points out, is that "unlike other environmental problems, this isn't a case of us having to do without, we just have to do it differently".

Perhaps the shock of finding plastics returning to us on our dinner plates will help to bring that message home. "We're on the edge of a major environmental disaster," Thompson says. "Micro-plastics in sea food is an illustration of that. There are things we can do, but we need to do them now."

(Adapted from https: //www. theguardian. com/lifeandstyle/2017/feb/14/sea-to-plate-plastic-got-into-fish)

Notes

① Johnson & Johnson

Johnson & Johnson is an American multinational medical device, pharmaceutical and consumer packaged goods manufacturing company founded in 1886. Its common stock is a component of the Dow Jones Industrial Average and the company is listed among the Fortune 500. Johnson & Johnson is headquartered in New Brunswick, New Jersey, the consumer division being located in Skillman, New Jersey. The corporation includes some 250 subsidiary companies with operations in 60 countries and products sold in over 175 countries. Johnson & Johnson had worldwide sales of $70. 1 billion during calendar year 2015.

② Zooplankton

Zooplankton (['zuːəˌplæŋktən]) is the animal constituent of plankton, which consists mainly of small crustaceans and fish larvae.

③ Antarctica

Antarctica is Earth's southernmost continent. It contains the geographic South Pole and is situated in the Antarctic region of the Southern Hemisphere, almost entirely south of the Antarctic Circle, and is surrounded by the Southern Ocean. At 14,000,000 square kilometres (5,400,000 square miles), it is the fifth-largest continent. For comparison, Antarctica is nearly twice the size of Australia. About 98% of Antarctica is covered by ice that averages 1.9 km (1.2 mi; 6,200 ft) in thickness, which extends to all but the northernmost reaches of the Antarctic Peninsula.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. The British should ________—last August, the results of a study by Plymouth University caused a ________ when it was reported that ________ was found in a third of UK-caught fish, including ________ and shell fish.
2. We are finally paying attention to the pollution that has ________ our seas for years—the government is considering a ________ deposit ________ plastic bottles, and the ________ company Johnson & Johnson recently ________ from plastic ________ paper stem ________ its cotton buds.
3. And then, in 1950, that ________ of the sea arrived: the ________ poly bag. In that decade, annual global plastic production reached 5m tonnes; by 2014, it ________ at 311m tonnes—________, over 40% of it for single-use packing.
4. But what really ________ him, and has ________ campaigners and scientists ever since, was

the vast soup of tiny plastic ________ whirling around ________ the junk.

5. Their personal ________ fish consumption has risen ________ 10 kilo gram in the 1960s to more than 19 kilo gram in 2012, and sea food production is ________ increasing at a rate of 3.2%, ________ the world population growth rate.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 to 3. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

spiral	retain	circulate	manipulate	stem
refund	vigorous	deposit	accumulate	accountable

VII. Word Formation

Directions: Read the text and identify words with the following prefixes or suffixes.

1. in-—______________
2. -ful—______________
3. -able—______________
4. -ance—______________
5. -ant—______________

Directions: Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets.

6. We have been informed that the ________ (equip) will be arriving here in ten days.
7. I sincerely thank you for your ________ (invite) to the Industrial Exhibition.
8. I am sorry to learn that you have made no ________ (improve) on the design at all.
9. The right side of the brain controls our ________ (imagine), our understanding of space and color.
10. There is a rapid increase in population in that country, which has caused a food ________ (short).
11. I was told that Disney World is one of Florida's major ________ (tour) attractions.
12. There has been a large ________ (grow) of light industries during these years.
13. There were only a few ________ (survive) from the air-crash.
14. The committee expects to come to a ________ (decide) within this week.
15. The teacher noticed some ________ (modify) in my speech after I had practiced.

VIII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. We are finally paying attention to the pollution that has plagued our seas for years—the government is considering a refundable deposit on plastic bottles, and the hygiene company Johnson & Johnson recently switched from plastic to paper stem on its cotton buds.
2. Ninety years after his plastics break through, in 1997, another sailor, Charles Moore, was spanning the ocean between Hawaii and California when he came across the now infamous Great Pacific Rubbish Patch, one of the five main sub-tropical spiral ...
3. But what really worried him, and has occupied campaigners and scientists ever since, was the vast soup of tiny plastic particles whirling around below the junk.
4. These tiny particles look like food to some species, and, last November, new research showed that common plastics attract a thin layer of oceanic algae, making them smell like nourishing food.
5. There is growing concern about poisons filtering—laboratory tests have shown that chemicals associated with micro-plastics can concentrate in the tissues of oceanic animals.

IX. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. tit mole waltz stag ram (　　) ______________
2. ranger warden mistress cork apprentice (　　) ______________
3. drainage dustbin gutter ditch grocery (　　) ______________
4. perpetual sacred evaporate vertical slippery (　　) ______________
5. beware commend demolish envy fairy (　　) ______________



Unit 8
Campus and Society

Section I
Focus on Suffix (III)

The List of Suffixes (II)

1) **-fy, -ify:** *v.* (to make)—classify, modify, simplify, magnify, amplify, specify, unify, verify, crucify, notify, rectify, diversify, certify
2) **-ian:** *np.* (see -an)—Brazilian, musician, vegetarian, comedian, guardian, civilian
3) **-ible:** *adj.* (able)—eligible, visible, compatible, feasible, credible, susceptible
4) **-ic:** *adj.*—basic, sympathetic, static, comic, sarcastic, drastic, dynamic, Atlantic, civic, polytechnic, athletic, chronic, elastic, ethnic, fantastic, frantic, numeric
5) **-ing:** *adj.* or tense (*pt.*)—boring, frightening, pending, horrifying, housekeeping, longing
6) **-ion:** *n.* (see -sion & -tion)—erosion, resolution
7) **-ish:** *adj.* (similar to)—boyish, Irish
8) **-ism:** *n.*—communism, federalism, mechanism
9) **-ist:** *np.* (group member)—chemist, communist, federalist, journalist, capitalist, optimist
10) **-ity:** *n.*—diversity, security, maternity, gravity, locality, solidarity, eternity
11) **-ive:** *adj.*—excessive, productive, administrative, passive, respective, successive
12) **-ize:** *v.*—characterize, organize, publicize, materialize, seize
13) **-less:** *adj.* (without)—effortless, helpless
14) **-logy:** *n.* (study of)—archeology, geology, biology, sociology, terminology, analogy
15) **-ly:** *adv.*—basically, typically, usually
16) **-ment:** *n.*—assignment, judgment, complement, detriment, bombardment
17) **-ness:** *n.*—awareness, tiredness, darkness, kindness
18) **-or:** *np.* (person who; see -er 2)—doctor, sailor
19) **-ous:** *adj.*—ambiguous, enormous, hideous, hilarious, ambitious, dubious, vigorous, tedious, subconscious, precious, jealous, anxious, conscientious
20) **-s 1:** pl-*pt.* (*n.*)—clocks, streets, trees
21) **-s 2:** 3ps, *pt.*—eats, thinks, redeems
22) **-ship:** *n.*—authorship, relationship, scholarship, worship
23) **-sion:** *n.*—expansion, vision, illusion, submission, mansion
24) **-tion:** *n.*—precaution, classification, petition, reaction, medication, probation, duration, equation, audition, ammunition, coronation, contraception
25) **-y:** *adj.* (presence of)—cheery, noisy, rainy, murky, lousy, patchy, tacky, wary, hardy, ruddy, floppy, greasy, gypsy, glossy, clumsy, cheeky, bonny

How to Learn Suffixes?

Here is a good explanation of a suffix from the BBC. Read it through and then try to think of a noun, any noun, and see whether you can add a suffix to it that turns the word into a verb. Then try with the same nouns and see if you can make adjectives out of them, or adverbs.

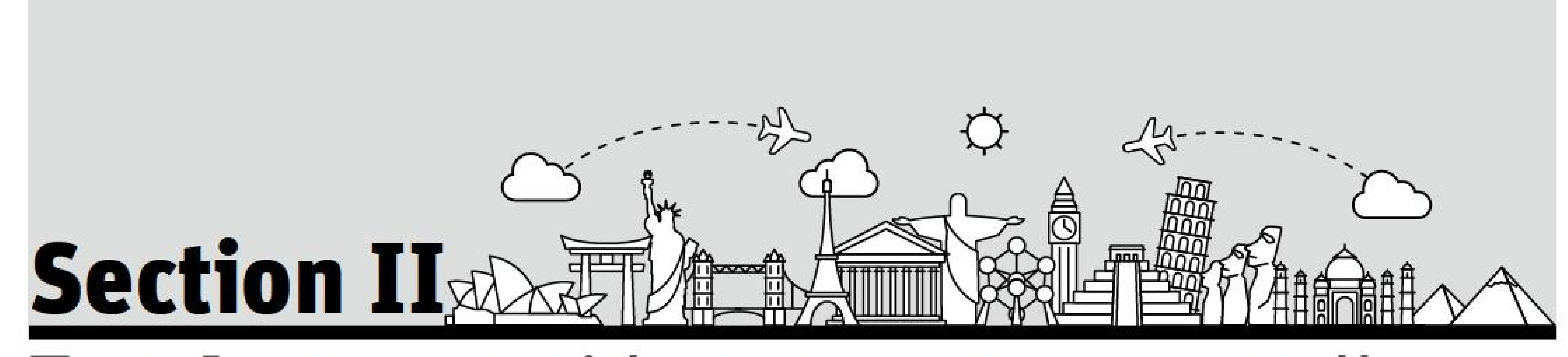
Hint: Use the following chart to help you.

	Suffixes	Examples
Verb suffixes	-ed	walk + ed = walked
	-ing	say + ing = saying
Noun suffixes	-ness	happy + ness = happiness
	-sion	divide + sion = division
	-ment	excite + ment = excitement
	-tion	educate + tion = education
	-cian	music + cian = musician
Adjective suffixes	-al	accident + al = accidental
	-er	tall + er = taller
	-able	accept + able = acceptable
	-ary	imagine + ary = imaginary
	-est	large + est = largest
	-ful	help + ful = helpful
Adverb suffixes	-fy	love + ly = lovely
	-fully	hope + fully = hopefully

Now it's your turn.

Use a mixture of verbs, nouns and adjectives such as these: carpet, clever, tie, basket, ski, intelligent, weather, computer, sock, play, picture, will, picnic, potato, good, bad, dream, cinema, film, light, duck, hour. Each one of you has a turn at making a new word using the root word plus adding a suffix. If you could change words form quickly, you know what suffix is.

(Adapted from http: //www. englishhints. com/list-of-suffixes. html and https: //www. teachingenglishgames. com/suffixes-and-prefixes)



Section II

Text A: Your Guide to Free Money: College Scholarships

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **broadcast** ['brɔːdkɑːst] ***n./vt.*** **(broadcast/broadcast/broadcasting)**

a programme on the radio or on television; to send out radio or television programmes; to tell something to a lot of people

synonym play

word family broadcasting; broadcaster

related phrase live broadcast; television broadcast

Example 1 She dialled into the opera broadcast.

Example 2 The music faded down and a special news broadcast began.

② **nominate** ['nɒmɪneɪt] ***vt.*** **(nominated/nominated/nominating)**

to officially suggest someone or something for an important position, duty, or prize; to give someone a particular job; If someone or something, such as an actor or a film is nominated for an award, someone formally suggests that they should be given that award.

synonym install; name; constitute

word family nominative

related phrase nominate sb./sth. for sth.

Example 1 I told him Dukakis liked the speech so much; he wanted me to go to the Republican convention to nominate Vice President Bush, too.

Example 2 Rice urges counselors from high schools with large minority populations to nominate qualified students.

③ **overlook** [ˌəʊvə'lʊk] ***vt.*** **(overlooked/overlooked/overlooking)**

to not notice something, or not see how important it is; to forgive someone's mistake, bad behavior, etc. and take no action; If a house, room, etc. overlooks something, it has a view of it, usually from above; If you overlook someone's faults or bad behavior, you forgive them and take no action.

synonym forget; examine; survey

word family overlooked

related phrase overlook from; overlook the city

Example 1 We should not overlook the difficulties.

Example 2 This one is pretty basic but something many people overlook.

④ **prone** [prəʊn] ***adj.***

likely to do something or suffer from something, especially something bad or harmful; lying down with the front of your body facing down

synonym liable; apt; likely

word family pronate; proneness

related phrase prone to

Example 1 Defining the coordinates of image maps can be tedious and error prone.

Example 2 One of the things about her girlfriend ... she was accident prone.

⑤ **submit** [səb'mɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(submitted/submitted/submitting)**

to give a plan, piece of writing, etc. to someone in authority for them to consider or approve; to agree, to obey someone, or something or to go through a process, especially when you have no choice

synonym maintain; advocate

antonym revolt; resist

word family submissive; subordinate

related phrase submit evidence; submit an application

Example 1 They submit only the data model or a portion thereof.

Example 2 Sure, like too many of us, you can wait until midnight on the last day to submit.

⑥ **versatile** ['vɜːsətaɪl] ***adj.***

Someone who is versatile has many different skills; having many different uses; A tool, machine, or material that is versatile can be used for many different purposes.

synonym universal; current

antonym untalented

word family versatility

related phrase versatile person; versatile talent

Example 1 He is a nimble and versatile wit.

Example 2 The more versatile the tool, the less you can predict how people will use it.

⑦ **superior** [suː'pɪərɪə] ***adj.***

better, more powerful, more effective, etc. than a similar person or thing, especially one that you are competing against; thinking that you are better than other people—used to show disapproval;

having a higher position or rank than someone else

synonym	ranking; lofty
antonym	inferior
word family	superiority; superiorly
related phrase	superior in; superior quality

Example 1 We overwhelmed the enemy by superior forces.

Example 2 When, and only when, these behaviors occur does an authority relationship exist between the superior and subordinate.

⑧ **cardinal** ['kɑːd(ə)nəl] ***adj.***

a priest of high rank in the Roman Catholic Church; a North American bird and the male is a bright red color; a cardinal number; A cardinal rule or quality is the one that is considered to be the most important.

synonym	primary; elementary; major
word family	cardinality; cardinalate
related phrase	cardinal rule; cardinal symptom

Example 1 At this they were aghast. It was the cardinal tenet of their mode of reasoning to start with facts and to give names to the facts.

Example 2 Having clean hands is one of the cardinal rules when preparing food.

⑨ **certify** ['sɜːtɪfaɪ] ***vi./vt.*** **(certified/certified/certifying)**

to state that something is correct or true, especially after some kind of test; to give an official paper to someone which states that they have completed a course of training for a profession; to officially state that someone is mentally ill

synonym	prove; approve
antonym	uncertified
word family	certificate; certification
related phrase	certify to; certify sb. as sth.

Example 1 We can certify for his honesty.

Example 2 In order to protect its name and standardize its products, a school must certify them with diplomas.

⑩ **charitable** ['tʃærɪtəb(ə)l] ***adj.***

relating to giving help to the poor; kind and sympathetic in the way you judge people

synonym	generous; handsome
antonym	ungenerous
word family	charity; charitably

related phrase charitable foundation

Example 1 The charitable organization parted food among the accused.

Example 2 So when he launched the Jackie Chan Charitable Foundation in 1988, it offered scholarships and other help to young people.

⑪ **crank** [kræŋk] ***adj./n.***

a handle on a piece of equipment that you can turn in order to move something; someone who has unusual ideas and behaves strangely; If you call someone a crank, you think their ideas or behavior are strange.

synonym whim; vagary

word family cranked

related phrase crank up/out; crank person

Example 1 A person with a new idea is a crank until the idea succeeds.

Example 2 It was an old car, and I had to crank it up every morning to get it started.

⑫ **dispense** [dɪ'spens] ***vi./vt.*** **(dispensed/dispensed/dispensing)**

to give something to people, especially in fixed amounts; to officially provide something for people; to officially prepare and give medicines to people

synonym perform; implement

word family dispensation; dispenser

related phrase dispense with

Example 1 A vending machine can be turned on, collect money, dispense a product, and return change.

Example 2 Some Super Automatic Espresso Machines will even froth and dispense milk automatically.

⑬ **eligible** ['elɪdʒɪb(ə)l] ***adj.***

Someone who is eligible for something is able or allowed to do it, for example because they are at the right age; An eligible man or woman would be good to marry because they are rich, attractive and not married.

synonym qualified; applicable; acceptable

antonym ineligible

word family eligibility

related phrase eligible for; eligible to do sth.; eligible products

Example 1 He is an eligible young man.

Example 2 Any number of eligible products can be installed to a package group.

⑭ **numeric** [nju:'merɪk] ***adj.***

of or relating to or denoting numbers; measured or expressed in numbers; designated by or expressed in numbers

synonym	number; digital; figure
word family	numerical; numerically; numeral
related phrase	numeric value; numeric data

Example 1 If you have numeric data, keep the level of precision appropriate.

Example 2 If you want to set all the permissions at once, use numeric file modes.

⑮ **preclude** [prɪ'klu:d] ***vt.*** **(precluded/precluded/precluding)**

to prevent something or make something impossible; to prevent sb. from doing sth.; If something precludes you from doing something or going somewhere, it prevents you from doing it or going there.

synonym	eliminate; dispute; stem
antonym	include
word family	precludable; preclusive; preclusion
related phrase	preclude from

Example 1 The big question for the panel is whether these issues should preclude approval at all.

Example 2 "The release of the records Thursday doesn't preclude possible prosecutions in the case," Mr. Sedensky said.

⑯ **retrieve** [rɪ'tri:v] ***vi./vt.*** **(retrieved/retrieved/retrieving)**

to find something and bring it back; to get back information that has been stored in the memory of a computer; If you manage to retrieve a situation, you succeed in bringing it back into a more acceptable state.

synonym	restore; repair
word family	retrievable; retriever
related phrase	retrieve data; retrieve from

Example 1 She tried hard to retrieve her luxurious life.

Example 2 This statement needs no WHERE clause, because we want to retrieve all the rows.

⑰ **tactic** ['tæktɪk] ***n.***

a method that you use to achieve something; the science of arranging and moving military forces in a battle; Tactics mean the science of arranging and moving military forces in a battle.

synonym	strategy; device
word family	tactical; tactically
related phrase	tactic form; tactic knowledge

Example 1 You have probably heard of this tactic before.

Example 2 I used every weapon and tactic I could think of.

⑱ **vocation** [vəʊ'keɪʃ(ə)n] ***n.***

the feeling that the purpose of your life is to do a particular type of work, especially because it allows you to help other people; a particular type of work that you feel is right for you; a strong belief that you have been chosen by God to be a priest or a nun

synonym profession; employment; career

word family vocational; vocationally

related phrase vocation development

Example 1 His vocation coincides with his avocation.

Example 2 His deformity totally disabled him from following his vocation.

⑲ **monetary** ['mʌnɪt(ə)rɪ] ***adj.***

relating to money, especially all the money in a particular country

synonym fiscal; financial

word family money; monetarism; monetization

related phrase monetary policy/system

Example 1 So that will be the monetary policy tool.

Example 2 Today, ladies and gentlemen, with all these decisions we have shown that we will not waver in the defense of our monetary union and our common currency.

⑳ **repay** [rɪ'peɪ] ***vi./vt.*** **(repaid/repaid/repaying)**

to pay back money that you have borrowed; to do something for someone, or give them something, in return for helping you; If something repays your time, effort, etc., it is worth the time or effort you have spent.

synonym return; compensate

word family repayable; repayment

related phrase repay a loan/debt; repay sb. for sth.

Example 1 She engaged herself to repay her debt within two months.

Example 2 I owe you a debt of gratitude which I shall never be able to repay.

㉑ **transcript** ['trænskrɪpt] ***n.***

a written or printed copy of a speech, conversation, etc.; an official college document that shows a list of a student's classes and the results they received

synonym report; sheet; copy; duplicate

antonym original

word family transcription

related phrase academic transcript

Example 1 We should stop classifying degrees now, and allow the transcript to do its job.

Example 2 A transcript of the tapes was presented in court.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

absent	ace	archaeology	arithmetic	athletic
chef	counsel	deadline	dean	diploma
federate	footstep	gauge	guild	handout
hatch	jot	marathon	medal	memo
patron	profile	scholarship		

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. How many kinds of scholarships do you know?
2. How to get a scholarship?

Your Guide to Free Money: College Scholarships

Scholarships are plentiful. Remember that your search is not limited to a particular type or source of scholarship award. As you begin to uncover the various gifts that are available to college students, consider every possibility for helping pay your college expenses. Jot down the following tips on your memo, and strive to improve your profile and qualifications with firm footsteps.

For getting the most financial-aid bang for the buck, you can't beat the benefits of winning scholarship awards. The arithmetic is very simple: scholarships are free money, usually with few strings attached. As long as it is applied to a certified college education and leads to a diploma, your scholarship money need not be repaid.

Whether you win $10,000 or $200, every cash entry into your financial aid package serves to lighten your financial load, which can be a sizable burden when it comes to college expenses. That $200 gift could buy a term's worth of books, so don't always look for a scholarship home-run. Build your financial aid package one opportunity at a time. Start here, with the scholarship basics.

Take the time to search for the scholarships that best suit you. You may qualify for a variety of different kinds of scholarships, or multiple individual awards that are all of the same type.

Academic merit scholarships are rich and based on things like your GPA[1] and standard test scores. Most merit scholarship requirements relate only to performance, and do not consider financial need as a qualifying condition. In some cases though, your extracurricular achievements are used to distinguish you from other applicants.

Another type of merit scholarship is based on athletic performance. Star players are awarded college access, as a result of exceptional athletic achievement in high school. Marathon participants with medals will enjoy superior advantages. Some awards are tied to a player's grades too, combining both qualifications in an effort to reward responsible student-players.

Need-based scholarships require applicants to demonstrate financial need, in order to be considered. Federally administered need-based scholarships, like other forms of federal aid, are dispensed based on information you submit on your Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA). This standardized application for student aid is cardinal for any scholarship hunt, because it gauges your need for financial assistance during college. Student income, parental income and assets and family size are used to compute your Expected Family Contribution (EFC). Your EFC is then used to create an individual Student Aid Report (SAR) that spells out your anticipated college financial aid needs. The SAR is sent to colleges of your choice, where it is used to draft your unique financial aid package containing loans, scholarships and other forms of student assistance.

Many scholarships are limited to minority applicants. Race-based programs are the most common example of the aid form known as student-specific scholarships. This scholarship category also includes gender-based and religion-based awards, along with any other scholarship that targets only students who share a particular characteristic.

Targeted scholarships are also available for individuals pursuing education in specific fields. Engineers, educators and medical students might qualify for career-based scholarship awards that are designed to cultivate competent professionals in those areas.

Another narrowly defined group of scholarships are issued to students who are admitted to specific colleges. The standards for qualifying are determined by the individual granting institutions, so they are often strict and multi-dimensional.

These broad categories include a range of very specific awards that recognize individual applicants based on particular talents, interests, or qualities. Versatile students are prone to get odds to be nominated. Take stock of your unique attributes—each one might bring you closer to some gift money for college. With a firm grasp on what makes you stand out, launch a comprehensive retrieve for all the scholarships that apply to you.

Scholarships Come from Many Sources

Institution specific scholarships come directly from the college to which you are applying and often brace both merit and need-based components. Scholarships may be general in essence, or very specific—some awarded by particular departments within the college. For example, University of Michigan lists a wide range of potential scholarships, including individual awards that are based on specific eligibility requirements, such as membership in a guild, graduation from a particular high school, participation in ROTC, a foster care background or parents that work for GM or Ford.

Corporate scholarships come from charitable companies like Microsoft, McDonald's and Coca-Cola. Eligibility may be limited to minority students. Financial need and GPA qualifications may or may not be absent. Ace corporate scholarships are often very competitive, in part because the awards are often quite large in numeric digit. For example, consider the Buick Achievers Scholarship Program. The Buick program offers a four-year scholarship opportunity of $100,000. 1,100 scholarships are awarded, with 100 of them qualifying for the $100,000 award. One-thousand

additional one-time awards for $2,000 each are awarded under a set of criteria that is not entirely based on transcript. The program targets students entering the technology and design fields of study, including engineering and some business related majors.

National and locally based charitable organizations grant scholarships of all sizes. Don't overlook your hometown patrons, such as the VFW, community foundation, or your church. If your parents are members of a trade union, check your eligibility for a union scholarship. Universities and vocational educators like Kendall College also administer charitable trusts that provide scholarships.

Professional organizations and member-based groups make it part of their mission to support student endeavors. These scholarships often target students studying in particular fields, such as agriculture, technology, nursing, chemistry, archaeology, or business. The American Academy of Chefs (AAC), the honor society of the American Culinary Federation (ACF), initiates educational scholarships for high school students and professional chefs seeking to further their education or become certified in the culinary arts field.

Receiving scholarship awards does not preclude you from applying for other financial aid. In addition to grants and scholarships, student loans are often a necessary feature of your college aid package and GoCollege has an entire section devoted to making the most of the money you borrow.

Where do you start when it's time to uncover the sources of the billions of scholarship dollars awarded each year?

Your High School Guidance Counselor—Schools and other scholarship grantors actively recruit through guidance counselors. There is no better place to start looking for free money since your counselor is acquainted with your academic record, and knows enough about your extracurricular achievements to focus your search. School counselors have been through the drill hundreds of times, helping students fill out applications and submitting countless scholarship requests.

Online investigations yield fruit through various scholarship locating resources like these:

Profile-based scholarship matching services.

Scholarship search databases and indexes.

College and university scholarship search tools.

Print publications (handouts) that outline current scholarship programs are available at school libraries.

The Financial Aid Office at your university is staffed with experts who can be tapped for insider information about specific scholarships.

We offer some proven search tips for you to implement when you're ready to start exploring the web and your community for scholarship money. For instance, never pay a fee for access to scholarship information.

Winning Scholarship Tactics

Competing for scholarships can be demanding, but armed with a few key tactics you're prepared to effectively contend for a variety of monetary awards. Remember, students that "broadcast" scholarship applications—by applying for everything under the sun—are not the most

effective scholarship candidates.

That is not to say you should turn your back on opportunities for which you are qualified, just remember that scholarship committees focus on applications that come from students who qualify in every way possible. The better you fit within the scholarship gauges, the better your chances of getting the award. Other key strategies include:

Meeting the qualifications. This obvious first step ensures that you fully understand the scholarship eligibility conditions. Some awards are very specific about who will be considered.

Completing the application. Your first contact with the administrator of the scholarship should be your best work. Meeting precise requirements is essential—pay particular attention to filing deadlines and due dates. Applications are not all the same, so consult with your counselor for clarification.

Essay Topics and Essay Writing Tips

Prepping for an interview. This is really a job interview for your job as a college student. Show them why you're good at your job.

Staying organized. Be prepared to respond if a scholarship grantor needs further information or clarification. You might be getting funds from multiple sources, so keep a file for each scholarship you apply for.

Scholarships are not replacements for federal student loans or grants, but they provide further opportunities for financial relief. Tuition, books, housing and other expenses crank up quickly in college, so scholarship awards of any size are welcomed. Don't overlook lesser-known scholarship programs. It is hard to believe that some scholarships go unclaimed for lack of applicants, or because students fail to meet important deadlines and application requirements. GoCollege can help you stay organized and get the scholarship money you deserve.

So, now, hatch a plan and impress your Dean!

(Adapted from http: //www. gocollege. com/financial-aid/scholarships/)

Note

GPA

Grading in education is the process of applying standardized measurements of varying levels of achievement in a course. Grades can be assigned as letters (generally A through F), as a range (for example 1 to 6), as a percentage of a total number of questions answered correctly, or as a number out of a possible total (for example out of 20 or 100).

In some countries, all grades from all current classes are averaged to create a grade point average (GPA) for the marking period. The GPA is calculated by taking the number of grade points a student earned in a given period of time of middle school through high school. GPAs are also calculated for undergraduate and graduate students in most universities. The GPA can be used by potential employers or educational institutions to assess and compare applicants. A cumulative grade point average (CGPA) is a calculation of the average of all of a student's total earned points divided by the possible amount of points. This grading system calculates for all of his or her complete education career. Grade point averages can be unweighted (where all classes

with the same number of credits have equal influence on the GPA) or weighted (where some classes are given more influence than others).

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. (　　) Scholarships are free money, but it's very hard to obtain.
2. (　　) We'd better not only look for a scholarship home-run. Every money does count.
3. (　　) There are 5 types of scholarships mentioned in the passage.
4. (　　) Many scholarships are only set for minority students.
5. (　　) Targeted scholarships are for those students who are admitted to specific colleges.
6. (　　) University of Michigan offers institution specific scholarships.
7. (　　) Five-year scholarship opportunity is offered by the Buick program.
8. (　　) Professional organizations often target students studying in particular fields.
9. (　　) Your High School Guidance Counselor is the best choice for your getting scholarships.
10. (　　) Follow the tactics, you will surely get a scholarship.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. For ________ the most financial-aid bang for the buck, you can't ________ the benefits of winning scholarship awards. The ________ is very simple: scholarships are free money, usually with few ________ attached.
2. Academic ________ scholarships are rich and based on things like your ________ and standard test scores. Most merit scholarship requirements ________ only to performance, and do not consider financial need as a ________ condition.

3. This scholarship ________ also includes gender-based and religion-based awards, ________ with any other scholarship that ________ only students who share a ________ characteristic.
4. ________ scholarships are also ________ for individuals ________ education in specific fields. Engineers, educators and medical students might ________ for career-based scholarship awards that are designed to ________ competent professionals in those areas.
5. These ________ categories include a range of very ________ awards that recognize individual applicants based on particular talents, interests, or qualities. ________ students are ________ to get ________ to be nominated.
6. ________ organizations and member-based groups make it part of their ________ to support student ________. These scholarships often ________ students studying in particular fields, such as agriculture, technology, nursing, ________, archaeology, or business.
7. There is no better place to start looking for free money since your ________ is acquainted ________ your ________ record, and knows enough about your ________ achievements to focus your search.
8. We offer some ________ search tips for you to ________ when you're ready to start ________ the web and your ________ for scholarship money. For instance, never pay a fee for ________ to scholarship information.
9. That is not to say you should turn your back ________ opportunities for which you are ________, just remember that scholarship ________ focus on applications that come from students who qualify in every way ________.
10. Scholarships are not ________ for federal student loans or grants, but they provide further opportunities for financial ________. ________, books, housing and other ________ crank up quickly in college, so scholarship awards ________ any size are welcomed.

VI. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VII. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

nominate	superior	submit	transcript	dispense
competent	distinguish	versatile	eligible	crank

VIII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. Try to cultivate a more relaxed and positive approach to life. ( )

A. crunch B. foster C. pluck D. forge

2. This month we consider how to implement such a process in your organization. ( )

A. insert B. enforce C. invert D. implant

3. We need to be more radical. We should stop classifying degrees, now, and allow the transcript to do its job. (   )

A. translate B. tramp C. score D. ransom

4. I'll repay you the money you lent me next week. (   )

A. pay back B. debit C. receive D. retrieve

5. Retail sales are a gauge of consumer spending. (   )

A. gravel B. grid C. measurement D. grit

6. I'm always working under pressure to meet deadlines. (   )

A. domino B. duration C. end time D. dumb

7. Age alone will not preclude him from standing as a candidate. (   )

A. eliminate B. privatise C. conclude D. christen

8. A vending machine can be turned on, collect money, dispense a product, and return change. (   )

A. expel B. distribute C. fluctuate D. expense

9. Time is needed to certify greatness. (   )

A. juggle B. despatch C. entail D. prove

10. We can distinguish one kind of substance from another by its properties. (   )

A. distinct B. demolish C. tell apart D. dismiss

IX. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the proper words based on the English suffixes.

Description: This is a list of words ending with suffix "-less", meaning "without".

e.g. use + less = useless

1. power ________ + ________ = ________
2. name ________ + ________ = ________
3. regard ________ + ________ = ________
4. end ________ + ________ = ________
5. home ________ + ________ = ________
6. care ________ + ________ = ________
7. hope ________ + ________ = ________
8. worth ________ + ________ = ________
9. fear ________ + ________ = ________
10. help ________ + ________ = ________

X. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Whether you win $10,000 or $200, every cash entry into your financial aid package serves to lighten your financial load, which can be a sizable burden when it comes to college expenses.

2. Federally administered need-based scholarships, like other forms of federal aid, are dispensed based on information you submit on your Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA).
3. Engineers, educators and medical students might qualify for career-based scholarship awards that are designed to cultivate competent professionals in those areas.
4. In addition to grants and scholarships, student loans are often a necessary feature of your college aid package and GoCollege has an entire section devoted to making the most of the money you borrow.
5. There is no better place to start looking for free money since your counselor is acquainted with your academic record, and knows enough about your extracurricular achievements to focus your search.

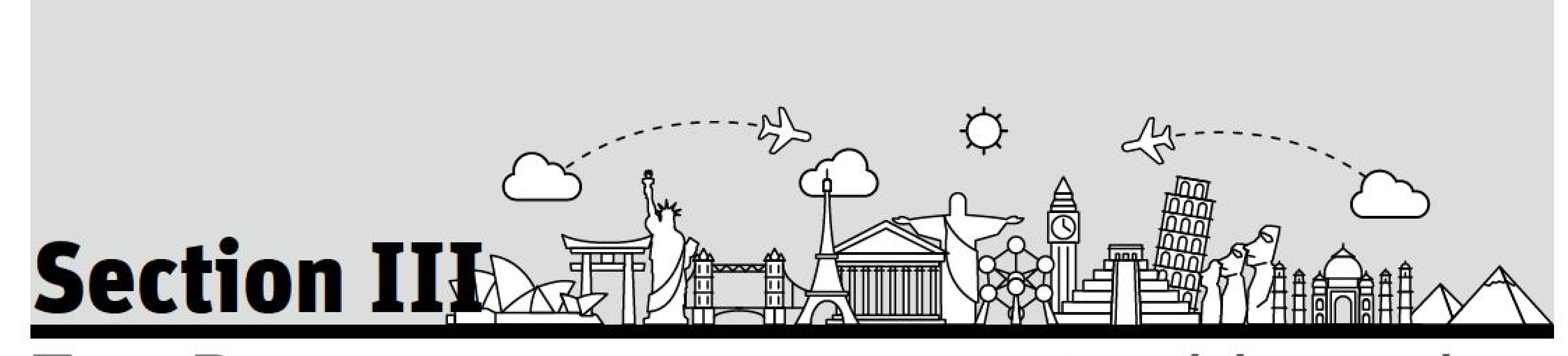
XI. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

<u>Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.</u>

1. rosemary violet bouquet iris cherry ( ) ______________
2. elm holly mahogany jungle heath ( ) ______________
3. anaesthetic pill bandage vitamin antibiotic ( ) ______________
4. mint moss mustard wheat ginger ( ) ______________
5. monkey elephant fox goose insect donkey dragon ( ) ______________



Section III

Text B: Rutger Bregman:"We Could Cut the Working Week by a Third"

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **capitalist** ['kæpɪtlɪst] ***adj./n.***

someone who supports capitalism; someone who owns or controls a lot of money and lends it to businesses, banks, etc. to produce more wealth; using or supporting capitalism

synonym bourgeois

word family capital; capitalistic; capitalism

related phrase capitalist country; capitalist economy

Example 1 Capitalist industry and commerce changed over to joint private-state operation by whole trades.

Example 2 What you have to change to improve the Swedish or the Japanese capitalist systems is very different from what you should do for the British one.

② **compound** [(for *n./adj.*) 'kɒmpaʊnd; (for *v.*) kəm'paʊnd] **adj/ *n./vt.*(compounded/compounded/compounding)**

a substance containing atoms from two or more elements; to make a difficult situation worse by adding more problems; to make a bad action worse by doing more bad things; to be a mixture of things

synonym mixture

word family compounded

related phrase chemical/organic compound; compound sentence

Example 1 Organic compounds contain carbon in their molecules.

Example 2 Water is a compound containing the elements hydrogen and oxygen.

③ **consequence** ['kɒnsɪkwəns] ***n.***

something that happens as a result of a particular action or set of conditions; If one thing happens and then another thing happens in consequence or as a consequence, the second thing happens as a result of the first.

synonym outcome; product; result

word family consequent; consequential; consequently

related phrase as a consequence

Example 1 So, what's the consequence of forming these gas ions?

Example 2 This is an inevitable consequence of consciousness.

④ **delete** [dɪ'liːt] ***vt.*** **(deleted/deleted/deleting)**

to remove something that has been written down or stored in a computer; If you delete something that has been written down or stored in a computer, you cross it out or remove it.

synonym expurgate; erase; remove; cancel

antonym stet

word family deletion

related phrase delete from; delete all

Example 1 As you can see below, you can modify, delete, and add tags.

Example 2 You see an icon in each row to delete the user in that row.

⑤ **distort** [dɪ'stɔːt] ***vi./vt.*** **(distorted/distorted/distorting)**

to change the appearance, sound, or shape of something so that it is strange or unclear; to report something in a way that is not completely true or correct; to change a situation from the way it would naturally be

synonym contort; misinterpret; disorder

word family distortion

related phrase distorted wave; distort truth

Example 1 If you don't account for the timing of these events, they can seriously distort your timing results.

Example 2 "I have called on leaders not to take measures that distort trade and push up prices," he said.

⑥ **incur** [ɪn'kɜː] ***vt.*** **(incurred/incurred/incurring)**

If you incur a cost, debt, or a fine, you have to pay money because of something you have done; If you incur something unpleasant, it happens to you because of something you have done.

synonym invite; court

word family incurrence

related phrase incur loss/damages

Example 1 The currency curriculum made the excursionist incur loss of time and money.

Example 2 The advantage of this approach is that you only incur the expense of obtaining the value when and if you need it.

⑦ **inevitable** [ɪ'nevɪtəb(ə)l] ***adj.***

certain to happen and impossible to avoid; a situation that is certain to happen; If something is inevitable, it is certain to happen and cannot be prevented or avoided.

synonym certain; necessary; automatic

antonym evitable

word family inevitably; inevitability

related phrase inevitable trend; it is inevitable (that)

Example 1 That is inevitable on both sides of the relationship.

Example 2 The kind of logic that says "This was all inevitable" is impossible with that data in your hands.

⑧ **isolate** ['aɪsəleɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(isolated/isolated/isolating)**

to separate one person, group, or thing from other people or things; if you isolate an idea, problem, etc., you consider it separately from other things that are connected with it; to separate a substance, disease, etc. from other substances so that it can be studied

synonym segregate; seclude

word family isolation; isolationist; isolationism

related phrase isolate from; be isolated by

Example 1 It is impossible to isolate political responsibility from moral responsibility.

Example 2 Do not isolate yourself from others, which is a detriment to you.

⑨ **overload** [ˌəuvə'ləud] ***vt.*** **(overloaded/overloaded/overloading)**

to put too many things or people on or into something; to put too much electricity through an electrical system or piece of equipment; to give someone too much work or information to deal with

synonym surcharge

word family overladen

related phrase overload protection; be overloaded with

Example 1 You should test for the overload at each point of the cycle.

Example 2 In this case, requests from one service policy which demand excessive CPU and lead to overload could result in breached service goals for the other policy or for both policies.

⑩ **refurbish** [ˌriː'fɜːbɪʃ] ***vt.*** **(refurbished/refurbished/refurbishing)**

to decorate and repair something, such as a building or office in order to improve its appearance; to change and improve a plan, idea, or skill

synonym repolish

word family refurbishment

related phrase refurbish a building

Example 1 The company had originally wanted to relocate to Tewkesbury or refurbish its current premises.

Example 2 The authority has now bought it and hopes to refurbish it under its build!

⑪ adamant ['ædəmənt] *adj.*

determined not to change your opinion or a decision that you have made; If someone is adamant about something, they are determined not to change their mind about it.

synonym fixed; strong; tough; solid

antonym irresolute; indecisive

word family adamantly

related phrase be/remain adamant; adamant attitude

Example 1 The view was unanimous and adamant: we must finish the job.

Example 2 I have been adamant about this because small businesses are the backbone of our economy.

⑫ ambiguous [æm'bɪgjʊəs] *adj.*

Something that is ambiguous is unclear, confusing, or not certain, especially because it can be understood in more than one way.

synonym blurred; vague; fuzzy

antonym unambiguous; clear

word family ambiguously

related phrase ambiguous words; ambiguous definition

Example 1 His answer was ambiguous.

Example 2 You will lose your special ambiguous friendship with her, and going to work with a broken heart may make the office a grim place for a while.

⑬ decisive [dɪ'saɪsɪv] *adj.*

An action, event, etc. that is decisive has a big effect on the way that something develops; Someone who is decisive is good at making decisions quickly and with confidence; definite and clear in a way that leaves no doubt

synonym crucial; final; adamant

antonym indecisive; irresolute

word family decision; decide; deciding; decisiveness

related phrase decisive factor; decisive action

Example 1 The battle for Abidjan will be decisive.

Example 2 The decisive attack took off from the foremost position.

⑭ **emigrate** ['emɪgreɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(emigrated/emigrated/emigrating)**

to leave your own country in order to live in another country

synonym transmigrate; migrate; immigrate

word family emigrant; emigration

related phrase emigrate to; emigrate from

Example 1 You have to go through certain formalities before you can emigrate.

Example 2 Although I had had several opportunities to emigrate, I stayed in Albania throughout the darkest and most dangerous period.

⑮ **multitude** ['mʌltɪtju:d] ***n.***

a very large number of people or things; ordinary people, especially when they are thought of as not being very well educated; a large crowd of people

synonym majority; mass

related phrase a multitude of

Example 1 I had never seen such a multitude of stars before.

Example 2 They had not lived in every conceivable manner, far from it, but what room would there be for the multitude if each individual tried to exhaust the permutations of existence?

⑯ **outset** ['aʊtset] ***n.***

at or from the beginning of an event or process

synonym beginning; start

antonym end; terminal

related phrase at/from the outset

Example 1 Support for this objective must be designed into the system from the outset of the project.

Example 2 At the outset, most of the study participants—about 85 percent—said they believed that smoking helped them deal with stress to some extent.

⑰ **scarce** [skeəs] ***adj.***

If something is scarce, there is not very much of it available; to leave a place, especially in order to avoid an unpleasant situation

synonym rare; short; lacking

antonym sufficient

word family scarcely; scarcity

related phrase scarce resources

Example 1 Tea and sugar were scarce and were rationed during the war.

Example 2 Now that the downtrend has been established, buyers have been scarce and unable to

meet supply.

⑱ **forthcoming** [ˌfɔːθ'kʌmɪŋ] ***adj.***

A forthcoming event, meeting, etc. is one that has been planned to happen soon; willing to give information about something; If something is forthcoming, it is given or offered when needed—often used to say that this does not happen.

synonym upcoming; imminent

related phrase forthcoming conference

Example 1 He said the forthcoming marriage meant it was "the right time" to reopen the issue.

Example 2 Details of the discovery will be published in a forthcoming issue of the *Astrophysical Journal*.

⑲ **aspire** [ə'spaɪə] ***vi.*** **(aspired/aspired/aspiring)**

to desire and work towards achieving something important; If you aspire to something, such as an important job, you have a strong desire to achieve it.

synonym rare; want

word family aspiration; aspirer

related phrase aspire after; aspire to

Example 1 At least I aspire to go abroad to study Spanish.

Example 2 Since releasing its first Aspire One in July 2008, Acer has grabbed the lead in global netbook shipments.

⑳ **democracy** [dɪ'mɒkrəsɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* democracies)**

a system of government in which every citizen in the country can vote to elect its government officials; a country that has a government which has been elected by the people of the country; a situation or system in which everyone is equal and has the right to vote, make decisions, etc.

word family democratic; democratically; democratize

related phrase social democracy

Example 1 The essential of democracy is responsibility politics.

Example 2 The spread of democracy in Eastern Europe appears to have had negative as well as positive consequences.

㉑ **adhere** [əd'hɪə] ***vi./vt.*** **(adhered/adhered/adhering)**

to stick firmly to something; to continue to behave according to a particular rule, agreement, or belief; If you adhere to a rule or agreement, you act in the way that it says you should.

synonym stay

antonym quit; abandon; forsake

word family adherent; adherence

related phrase adhere to

Example 1 We adhere to the principle that everyone should be treated fairly.

Example 2 But this means they cannot always adhere to the strict codes of practice dictated in UN headquarters.

㉒ **input** ['ɪnpʊt] ***n./vt.*** **(inputted/inputted/inputting)**

information that is put into a computer; ideas, advice, money, or effort that you put into a job or activity in order to help it succeed; to put information into a computer

synonym	investment
antonym	output
related phrase	input data/file

Example 1 We should phase the input and output of the machine.

Example 2 It then should take an argument or parameter if you want your function to take input.

㉓ **convict** [(for *n.*) 'kɒnvɪkt; (for *v.*) kən'vɪkt] ***n./vt.*** **(convicted/convicted/convicting)**

to prove or officially announce that someone is guilty of a crime after a trial in a law court; someone who has been proved to be guilty of a crime and sent to prison

synonym	culprit; commit
antonym	innocent
word family	conviction
related phrase	a convicted murderer; convict sb. of sth.; convict sb. on sth.

Example 1 As it turned out, the emails presented by the prosecution were not enough to convict.

Example 2 And think of the poor set: crouched like a convict inside a dubious piece of furniture.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

chancellor	commemorate	communist	compel	drawback
expertise	fantasy	journalist	manifesto	menace
mist	nah	network	outlook	quo
revenue	terror	triumph	wit	

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. How do you view the relationship between working time and the salary?
2. If you want to find a job, which factor will you value most?

Rutger Bregman: "We Could Cut the Working Week by a Third"

Rutger Bregman[1] is a 28-year-old Dutchman whose book, *Utopia for Realists*, has taken Holland by storm and could yet revive progressive thought around the globe. His solutions are quite simple and decisively set against current trends: we should institute a universal basic income for everyone that covers minimum living expenses—say around £12,000 a year; the working week should be shortened to 15 hours; borders should be opened and emigrants allowed to move wherever they choose.

If that all sounds like fantasy politics, then Bregman has assembled a wealth of evidence to make his case. Better than that, though, it is not a dry, statistical analysis—although he doesn't shy from solid data—but a book written with ambition, wit and imagination. The effect is charmingly persuasive, even when you can't quite believe what you're reading.

Bregman does something very smart and mature in his book. Instead of just combating capitalist thoughts and post-enlightenment liberalism, at the outset, he commemorates its achievements. He shows the incredible improvements in life expectancy, health, wealth, education and freedoms that have been achieved in the last couple of centuries.

"I think the big problem on the left," says Bregman, "is that it only knows what it's against. So it's against simplicity, against the establishment, against racism. I'm not saying I'm not against those things, but I think you should be for something. You need to have a new vision of where you want to go." Bregman has a vision. And it's a pretty clear one. But, wait a second. Universal benefit, a 15-hour working week, open borders, really? How?

"I've heard for three years that many of my ideas are unrealistic and unreasonable and that we can't afford them," he says. "And the simple answer is 'Oh, you want to adhere to the status quo? How's that been working out?'"

"The first thing we should acknowledge," says Bregman, "is that poverty is hugely expensive. It varies from country to country, but most of the time it's around 3, 4 or 5% of GDP. If you look at what it would cost just to top up the revenue of all the poor people in a country, it would cost about 1% of GDP."

Perhaps, but he's talking about paying everyone—rich and poor—around £12,000 a year. That's a vast amount of money. How could that be achieved? You'd have to tax the middle class so much that what they'd receive would be wiped out, and then try to tax the very wealthy at a much higher rate—which has not proven a successful policy, because the rich are very good at protecting their money.

Bregman gets a little bit vague at this point. He says that even new liberal economists, such as Milton Friedman were keen on universal basic income (UBI), although they tend to call it negative income tax. He also notes that the country that has come closest to implementing a UBI is the U.S., under President Nixon. It was only because the Democrat thought Nixon wasn't offering enough

money in the basic income that the policy was discarded at the last moment.

He acknowledges that a genuinely universal system would involve a massive refurbishment of our tax system and that it would require an enormous amount of public and political support. But you've got to start somewhere, is his outlook, and the best place to start is in redefining what we mean by work.

Well, I say, just because someone doesn't value their job, doesn't mean that it doesn't have value. These things can be part of an invisible network of jobs that keeps everything else going. They can't just be deleted like that.

"That's the best we can come up with nowadays?" he asks, shocked at my dull pragmatic thought. "People are saying: 'I feel isolated, I think my job is useless', and the only answer we have for them is 'No, nah, it's really useful. You know the invisible hand knows best. We're paying you so much money, it has to be useful!'"

I say I was thinking more of the film *It's a Wonderful Life*, which, after all, is about a banker. He thinks his life is worthless and yet we see the depth of his effect on others when his input is stripped away. Anyway, I take his point. We should reconsider much of what society—through the inequality of financial payment—perceives important.

"One of the basic lessons of history," says Bregman, "is that things can be different. The way we've structured our economy, our system of welfare, it's not natural. It could be different."

Bregman studied history at university and thought of becoming an academic. Instead, he began working as a journalist, but realized the news was a distorting way of viewing the world. It's about exceptions—terrorism, corruption, crisis—rather than the everyday means of how things actually work.

So he found a job at a new newspaper that enabled him to write in a way that brings together journalist industry and a more academic approach to the world. The result is a compound that reminisces the New Yorker's Malcolm Gladwell: lots of compelling stories, backed up with information from a multitude of surveys and research papers delivered in a tremendously readable style.

But there's also an extra layer of idealism with Bregman, a belief that people are essentially good and that all it requires is a reasonable analysis of the facts and good administration to make the most profound and lasting changes. As he repeatedly points out, democracy, equal rights for men and women, abolishing slavery—these were all once regarded the preserve of dreamers.

In Bregman's book, he suggests that universal basic income will enable the low-paid to study and then get the kinds of jobs they want to do. In which case, I wonder, who will be a cleaner?

He smiles at the question. "I think one of the most important facts of basic income would be that it's not only a redistribution of income, but also of power. So the cleaners and bin men would have a lot more bargaining power. If you look at a university, for example, the cleaners will get paid more than the professors, which I think is an entirely good thing. Professors love their jobs, they don't need additional money for it. The cleaners don't like their jobs—well, they get rewarded for it!"

I suggest that someone suffering through a Ph.D. might not share that particular conviction. But he answers with a conviction that has triumphed over doubt. "Basic income would give people the most important freedom: the freedom of deciding for themselves what they want to do with their lives."

I can imagine many old heads questioning the wisdom of a young man who has barely experienced the adamant complexity of the world. But Bregman is clearly on to something. Following his proposition, Utrecht and several other Dutch towns are conducting trials on basic income. Finland has implemented a trial, but only with the unemployed. Two Scottish councils, Fife and Glasgow, are looking at a scheme and the Swiss are also interested. The shadow chancellor, John McDonnell, has said that it "might be an idea whose time has come". Even visionary U.S. tech billionaire Elon Musk is in favor.

One reason why Musk supports a basic income is that work is likely to become much more scarce in the near future of advanced robotics and artificial intelligence—and that's also a reason for a much reduced working week. In a way Bregman has less of a hard sell with shorter working hours. History is moving that way and has been for some time. It's just a question of when and how we're going to acknowledge the inevitable.

However, there are still problems to iron out, some of which Bregman doesn't tackle in his book. For instance, expertise tends to be gathered over intense periods of study and practice. Who wants to fly on a plane piloted by someone with limited flying hours, or be operated on by a surgeon who hasn't done much surgery?

Bregman's answer is to point out that pilots and surgeons who are overloaded with work are a danger. Yes, but that doesn't mean a lack of work is not also a potential menace. Now he gets really ambiguous, saying that there would be a paid 15 hours, and then if pilots and surgeons and other experts wanted they could also work in their spare time. When I try to pin him down on what that would mean, he says we need to redefine work as contributing to society in "your own way".

Probably Bregman's weakest argument is for open borders—not because it isn't viable long term, but because he doesn't really examine the drawbacks. Bregman listens to all points and says that for him, open borders are not something he believes will happen tomorrow. It's an aspiration, something to work towards. The same could be said for all of his arguments. However, the critical thing is that he has pointed towards a destination, somewhere that in these embattled times the progressively minded can aim towards, and he's provided some well-researched evidence to support his contentions. Yes, he is a dreamer, but a practical one. He knows there are many problems to overcome, but the first and toughest is the belief that things can change. In that he has made a major contribution.

(Adapted from https: //www. theguardian. com/books/2017/feb/26/rutger-bregman-utopia-for-realists-interview-universal-basic-income)

Note

Rutger Bregman

Utopia for Realists: How We Can Build the Ideal World is a book by Rutger Bregman (born in 1988). It was originally written as articles in Dutch for a virtual journal and since compiled and translated into several languages. It offers a critical proposal that it claims is a practical approach to reconstructing modern society to promote a more productive and equitable life based an three core ideas: a universal and unconditional basic income paid to everybody; a short working week of (fifteen-hours); open borders worldwide with the free exchange of citizens between all nations.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. His solutions are quite simple and ________ set against current trends: we should ________ a universal basic income for everyone that covers ________ living expenses—say around £12,000 a year; the working week should be ________ to 15 hours; borders should be opened and ________ allowed to move wherever they choose.
2. Instead of just ________ capitalist thoughts and post-enlightenment liberalism, at the ________, he commemorates its achievements. He shows the ________ improvements in life ________, health, wealth, education and ________ that have been achieved in the last ________ of centuries.
3. He ________ that a genuinely ________ system would involve a massive ________ of our tax system and that it would require an ________ amount of public and political support.
4. But there's also an extra layer of ________ with Bregman, a belief that people are ________ good and that all it requires is a reasonable analysis of the facts and good ________ to make the most ________ and lasting changes.
5. However, there are still problems to ________ out, some of which Bregman doesn't ________ in his book. For instance, ________ tends to be gathered ________ intense periods of study and practice.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate the last 3 paragraphs. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

adhere	aspire	isolate	refurbish	outset
convict	distort	overload	ambiguous	inevitable

VII. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the proper words based on the English suffixes.

Description: This is a list of words ending with suffix "-ness", meaning "state or quality (makes a noun)".

e.g. bright + ness = brightness

1. faithful ________ + ________ = ________
2. fresh ________ + ________ = ________
3. aggressive ________ + ________ = ________
4. aware ________ + ________ = ________
5. sad ________ + ________ = ________
6. weak ________ + ________ = ________
7. ill ________ + ________ = ________
8. dark ________ + ________ = ________
9. good ________ + ________ = ________
10. clever ________ + ________ = ________

Directions: Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets.

11. In some ways these schools are ________ (differ) from Chinese middle schools.
12. The ________ (create) person is always ready to change his or her idea and to challenge the idea of other people and society.
13. A Youth Hostel is a place that offers a good night's sleep in friendly surroundings at a ________ (reason) price.
14. That was the most ________ (attract) program they could think of.
15. I was ________ (please) to have received your letter dated May 20th.
16. The teacher said his work was ________ (satisfy) but there was still room for improvement.
17. I have a ________ (plenty) supply of things to keep the children happy when we go on long journeys.
18. Living in the country is less ________ (expense) than living in the city.
19. Thanksgiving is a ________ (tradition) festival in the U.S. and Canada.
20. Whether we go or not is ________ (depend) on the weather.

VIII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Instead of just combating capitalist thoughts and post-enlightenment liberalism, at the outset, he commemorates its achievements.
2. You'd have to tax the middle class so much that what they'd receive would be wiped out, and then try to tax the very wealthy at a much higher rate—which has not proven a successful policy, because the rich are very good at protecting their money.
3. He acknowledges that a genuinely universal system would involve a massive refurbishment of our tax system and that it would require an enormous amount of public and political support.

IX. Word Exclusion

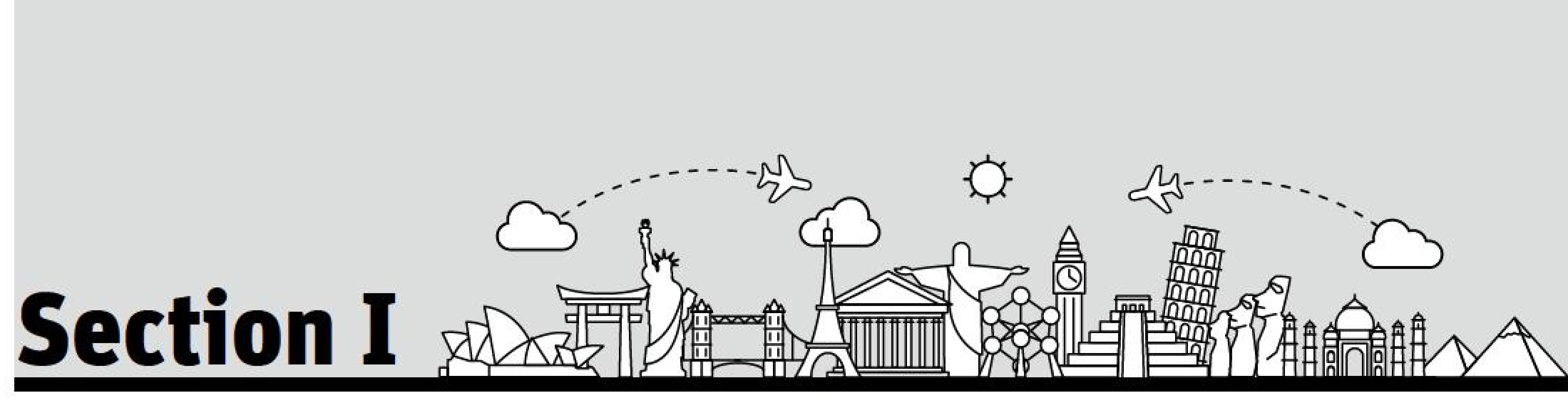
Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

<u>Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.</u>

1. disciple nanny radiator architect marshal colonel maid (　　) ______________
2. alternate blast crease demon enroll mould poach (　　) ______________
3. axe squeal sword wedge socket spade (　　) ______________


Unit 9
Economy and Trade



Section I

Focus on Conversion (I)

Conversion (word formation) means the creation of a word from an existing word without any change in form. Conversions from adjectives to nouns and vice versa are both very common in English; much more remarked upon is the creation of a verb by converting a noun or other word (e.g. the adjective "clean" becomes the verb "clean"). Conversion of nouns to verbs is particularly common in English. More recently, nouns, such as Google, email, text and Skype are also being used as verbs.

Features of Words Formed by Conversion

1) Change in word-class

e.g. a. The enemy attacked (*v.*) us at night.

b. The enemy launched an attack (*n.*) on us at night.

2) Semantic change

e.g. mushroom: (*n.*) a fast-growing fungus of which some kinds can be eaten

mushroom: (*v.*) to gather mushroom or to spread or grow rapidly

3) Phonological change

a. Change in stress pattern

e.g. compound (*v.*)[kəm'paʊnd]

compound (*n.* & *adj.*)['kɒmpaʊnd]

b. Change in pronunciation

e.g. house [haʊs] (*n.*)

house [haʊz] (*v.*)

Classification of Conversion (I)

1) *n.*→*v.* conversion

The conversion is according to the semantic relation between a converted word and its base. In English, verbification typically involves simple conversion of a non-verb word. The verbs to verbify and to verb, the first by derivation with an affix and the second by zero derivation, are themselves products of verbification, and, as might be guessed, the term "to verb" is often used more specifically, to refer only to verbification that does not involve a change in form. (Verbing in this specific sense is therefore a kind of anthimeria.)

Examples of verbification in the English language number in the thousands, including some of the most common words, such as mail and email, strike, talk, salt, pepper, switch, bed, sleep,

ship, train, stop, drink, cup, lure, mutter, dress, dizzy, divorce, fool, merge, to be found on virtually every page in the dictionary. Thus, verbification is by no means confined to slang and has furnished English with countless new expressions: e.g. "access", as in "access the file", which was previously only a noun, as in "gain access to the file". Similar mainstream examples include "host", as in "host a party", and "chair", as in "chair the meeting". Other formations, such as "gift", are less widespread but nevertheless mainstream.

Verbification may have a bad reputation with some English users because it is such a potent source of neologisms. Although some neologistic products of verbification may meet considerable opposition from prescriptivist authorities (the verb sense of "impact" is a well-known example), most such derivations have become so central to the language after several centuries of use that they no longer draw notice.

In many cases, the verbs were distinct from their noun counterparts in Old English, and regular sound change has made them the same form: these can be reanalyzed as conversion. "Don't talk the talk if you can't walk the walk" is an example of a sentence using those forms.

Commonly, we can see the following kinds of conversions.

a. to put in/on

bottle (*n.*) →to bottle(*v.*): to put into a bottle

garage (*n.*) →to garage (*v.*): to put in a garage

b. to give, to provide with

shelter (*n.*) →to shelter (*v.*): to give shelter to

fuel (*n.*) →to fuel (*v.*): to provide with fuel

c. to deprive of

core (*n.*) →to core(*v.*): to remove the core from

dust (*n.*) →to dust (*v.*): to remove dust from

d. to … with

hand (*n.*) →to hand (*v.*): to give with hand

finger (*n.*) →to finger (*v.*): to feel or handle with fingers

e. to be/act as *N.* with respect to

nurse (*n.*) →to nurse (*v.*): to act as a nurse for sick people

dog (*n.*) →to dog (*v.*): to follow or hunt like a dog

shadow (*n.*) →to shadow (*v.*): to be like or act as a shadow

f. to make/change … into

fool (*n.*) →to fool (*v.*): to make a fool of

cash (*n.*) →to cash (*v.*): to change into cash

g. to send/go by

mail (*n.*) →to mail (*v.*): to send by mail

bicycle (*n.*) →to bicycle (*v.*): to go by bicycle

h. to spend the period of time denoted by *N.*

summer (*n.*) →to summer (*v.*): to spend summer in …

Practice by Yourself

Pick up the conversion word in the following sentences and try to explain the meaning.

1) He fathered many inventions.

2) We were hosted by members of the embassy.

3) If so, we must be fooled.

4) This helped to bridge over our difficulties.

5) She is busy oiling the bicycle.

6) He wolfed down three great bowls of rice.

7) Where do swallows winter?

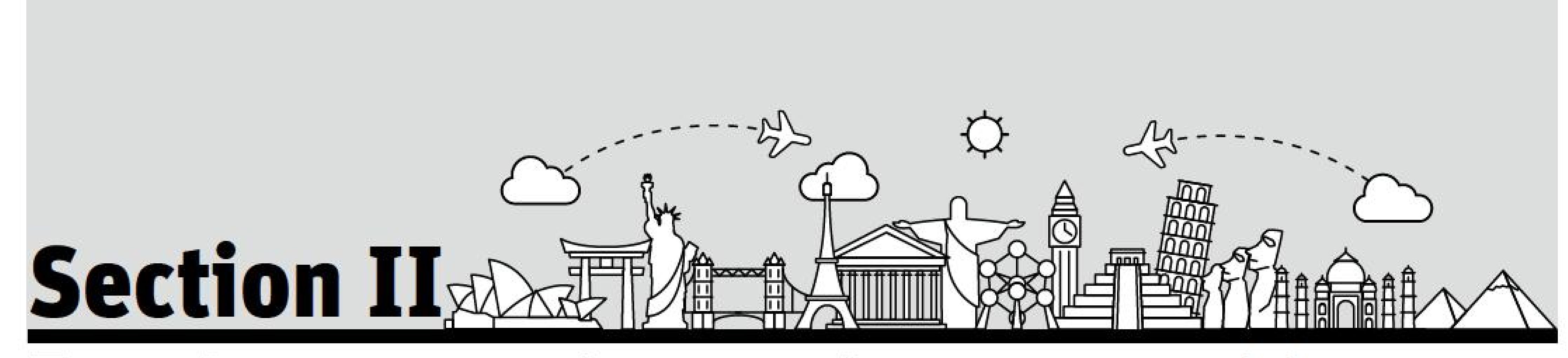
8) Over 1,000 students stormed into the building.

9) This is the chief way of narrowing the differences between them.

10) Wrongs must be righted when they are discovered.

Besides the above one, there are still three classifications of Conversion. We'll discuss them in Unit Ten.

(Adapted from https: //en. wikipedia. org/wiki/Conversion_(word_formation) and online materials)



Section II

Text A: Prospering Market Is a Problem, But a Nice One

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **ambition** [æm'bɪʃn] ***n.***

the desire or determination to be successful, rich, powerful, etc.; a cherished desire; If you have an ambition to do or achieve something, you want very much to do it or achieve it; Ambition is the desire to be successful, rich, or powerful.

synonym	desire; purpose; intent; aspiration
word family	ambitious; ambitiously; ambitiousness; ambitionless
related phrase	noble ambition; achieve one's ambition

Example 1 I worked hard to achieve my ambition and climbed out of the abyss we shared.

Example 2 His wild ambition was thoroughly exposed.

② **amplify** ['æmplɪfaɪ] ***vi./vt.*** **(amplified/amplified/amplifying)**

to increase in size, volume or significance; to enlarge beyond bounds or the truth; If you amplify a sound, you make it louder, usually by using electronic equipment.

synonym	expand; magnify; increase
antonym	shrink; narrow
word family	amplifier; amplification
related phrase	amplify on/upon; amplify with

Example 1 We must amplify our effort by working a lot harder.

Example 2 These stories only amplified her fears.

③ **batter** ['bætə] ***vi./vt.*** **(battered/battered/battering)**

to strike against forcefully; to strike violently and repeatedly; to make a dent or impression in; To batter someone means to hit them many times, using fists or a heavy object.

synonym	beat; assault; smash
word family	battered; battery
related phrase	batter against; batter up; batter down

Example 1 Someone is battering and clouting at the door.

Example 2 A thousand rocket bombs would not batter it down.

④ **cautious** ['kɔːʃəs] ***adj.***

showing or having caution; careful; Someone who is cautious acts very carefully in order to avoid possible danger; careful to avoid danger or risks

synonym	careful; attentive
antonym	careless; incautious
word family	caution; cautiously
related phrase	be cautious of/about

Example 1 Mary is trustworthy and cautious of diffusing secrets.

Example 2 He is cautious in fraying with others, because it stings.

⑤ **dividend** ['dɪvɪdend] ***n.***

share of profits paid to shareholders in a company; A dividend is the part of a company's profits which is paid to people who own shares in the company.

synonym	share; bonus
word family	divide; divider
related phrase	pay dividends

Example 1 The company was forced to subtract its dividend and shear the cost.

Example 2 The company declared a large dividend at the end of the year.

⑥ **fulfil/fulfill** [fʊl'fɪl] ***vt.*** **(fulfilled/fulfilled/fulfilling)**

to meet the requirements or expectations of; to fill or meet a want or need; to put in effect; If you fulfil something, such as a promise, dream, or hope, you do what you said or hoped you would do; To fulfil a task, role, or requirement means to do or be what is required, necessary, or expected.

synonym	execute; achieve
word family	fulfillment; fulfilling; fulfilled
related phrase	fulfill oneself; fulfill obligation

Example 1 Whatever happens, I'm determined to fulfill it.

Example 2 The doctor's instructions must be fulfilled exactly.

⑦ **inhale** [ɪn'heɪl] ***vi./vt.*** **(inhaled/inhaled/inhaling)**

to breathe in; to draw deep into the lungs by breathing; When you inhale, you breathe in; When you inhale something, such as smoke, you take it into your lungs when you breathe in.

synonym	breathe; intake
antonym	exhale

word family inhaler; inhaled

Example 1 Look at all these stubs, do you inhale when you smoke?

Example 2 Henry inhaled lunch and then rushed off to the meeting.

⑧ **liquidate** ['lɪkwɪdeɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(liquidated/liquidated/liquidating)**

to get rid of (someone who may be a threat) by killing; to eliminate by paying off (debts); To liquidate a company is to close it down and sell all its assets, usually because it is in debt.

synonym settle; pay

word family liquidator; liquidated; liquidation

related phrase liquidate assets; liquidate damages

Example 1 I had to liquidate my holdings to pay off my ex-husband.

Example 2 The court decided to help the company liquidate its chain debts.

⑨ **offset** ['ɒfset] ***n./vt.*** **(offset/offset/offsetting)**

to balance or compensate for; a compensating equivalent; If one thing is offset by another, the effect of the first thing is reduced by the second, so that any advantage or disadvantage is cancelled out.

synonym compensate

word family offsetting

related phrase offset curve; offset account; offset paper

Example 1 The gains offset the losses.

Example 2 Their wage increases would be offset by higher prices.

⑩ **perch** [pɜːtʃ] ***n./vi.*** **(perched/perched/perching)**

(of a bird) *to sit, as on a branch; to come to rest, settle; to cause to perch or sit; resting-place or roost; If you perch on something, you sit down lightly on the very edge or tip of it; To perch somewhere means to be on the top or edge of something.*

synonym sit; settle

word family perchance; perched; percher

related phrase perch on

Example 1 The bird took its perch on a tree branch.

Example 2 He perched himself on a high stool.

⑪ **portfolio** [pɔːt'fəʊlɪəʊ] ***n.***

a large, flat, thin case for carrying loose papers or drawings or maps, usually leather; a list of the financial assets held by an individual or a bank or other financial institution

synonym folder; briefcase

related phrase investment portfolio; product portfolio

Example 1 He went through drawer after drawer and eventually searched out a dusty portfolio.

Example 2 My stockbroker manages my portfolio for me.

⑫ **prosper** ['prɒspə] ***vi./vt.*** **(prospered/prospered/prospering)**

to make steady progress; to be at the high point in one's career or reach a high point in historical significance or importance

synonym	flourish; thrive; succeed
antonym	decay; decline
word family	prosperous; prosperity; prosperously
related phrase	prosper in one's suit

Example 1 We are bound to prosper beyond other countries.

Example 2 With her at the wheel, the company began to prosper.

⑬ **rage** [reɪdʒ] ***n./vi.*** **(raged/raged/raging)**

to show violent anger; to continue violently; You say that something powerful or unpleasant rages when it continues with great force or violence.

synonym	explode; roar
antonym	please
word family	raging; raged
related phrase	rage through; rage against/at; fly into a rage

Example 1 You are not yourself when you rage like that.

Example 2 The fever raged throughout the country.

⑭ **rally** ['rælɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* rallies)/*vt.* (rallied/rallied/rallying)**

a large, especially political public meeting; to return to a former good state; When people rally to something or when something rallies them, they unite to support it; When someone or something rallies, they begin to recover or improve after having been weak.

synonym	assembly
word family	rallyist; rallied
related phrase	rally for; rally round; rally to

Example 1 Some higher officials attended the celebration rally.

Example 2 You should rally your courage.

⑮ **recess** [rɪ'ses] ***n./vi.*** **(recessed/recessed/recessing)**

to put into a recess; period of time when work or business is stopped; When formal meetings or court cases recess, they stop temporarily.

synonym	rest; vacation; adjourn
word family	recession; recessive; recessed; recessing

related phrase be in recess; in the innermost recess of the heart

Example 1 The conference will recess till tomorrow morning.

Example 2 The committee is going into recess for a couple of weeks.

⑯ **sane** [seɪn] ***adj.***

having a healthy mind; not mad; showing good judgment; free from mental disorder; Someone who is sane is able to think and behave normally and reasonably, and is not mentally ill; If you refer to a sane person, action, or system, you mean one that you think is reasonable and sensible.

synonym rational; sensible; moderate; sound

antonym insane; irrational

word family sanity; saneness

related phrase sane stage; keep sb. sane

Example 1 A sane healthy mind can get momentarily off the rails.

Example 2 She has a sane attitude toward diving and never goes too fast.

⑰ **trifling** ['traɪflɪŋ] ***adj.***

not worth considering; the deliberate act of delaying and playing instead of working; A trifling matter is small and unimportant.

synonym trivial; unimportant; bit

antonym important; vital; fatal

word family trifle

related phrase trifling details; trifling loss

Example 1 Don't bother about that trifling matter.

Example 2 He was not very solid to others, but there was a hope of his becoming less trifling.

⑱ **underlie** [ˌʌndə'laɪ] ***vt.*** **(underlay/underlaid/underlying)**

to be the cause of something, or be the basic thing from which something develops; If something underlies a feeling or situation, it is the cause or basis of it.

synonym explain

word family underlying; underlier

related phrase underlying cause/problem/principle

Example 1 Try to figure out what feeling underlies your anger.

Example 2 Two problems underlie America's modern poverty: a lack of skills and the breakdown of the family.

⑲ **amend** [ə'mend] ***vi./vt.*** **(amended/amended/amending)**

to correct or make small changes to something that is written or spoken; If you amend something

that has been written, such as a law, or something that is said, you change it in order to improve it or make it more accurate; If you make amends when you have harmed someone, you show that you are sorry by doing something to please them.

synonym modify; correct; revise

word family amendable; amendment; amended

related phrase make amends for; amended version

Example 1 The law was amended to include women.

Example 2 He wanted to make amends for causing their marriage to fail.

⑳ **reconcile** ['rekənsaɪl] ***vt.*** **(reconciled/reconciled/reconciling)**

If you reconcile two ideas, situations, or facts, you find a way in which they can both be true or acceptable; If you are reconciled with someone, you become friendly with them again after a quarrel or disagreement; If you reconcile two people, you make them become friends again after a quarrel or disagreement; If you reconcile yourself to an unpleasant situation, you accept it, although it does not make you happy to do so.

synonym accord; unify

word family reconcilable; reconciliation

related phrase be reconciled (with sb.); reconcile yourself to sth.

Example 1 He tried to reconcile his father to the idea of the wedding.

Example 2 The possibility remains that the two theories may be reconciled.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

bubble	deficit	despondent	duration	equity
eternal	nickname	opponent	pessimistic	premium
ratio	sector	tolerance	transact	tuition

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. How much do you know about the Dow?
2. Can you predict the prospect of the world economy based on your knowledge?

Prospering Market Is a Problem, But a Nice One

The recent rise of the Dow poses the eternal question: When is it time to sell? It's a nice problem to have, but it's still a problem. Stocks have prospered so high that a cautious person might start worrying about oxygen supply.

In January, the Dow Jones industrial average reached 20,000 for the first time. It crossed the 21,000 mark on March 1, and while it slipped on Thursday and then had a late surge on Friday, it still seems to have plenty of power left in it.

That means that if you have been in the market for a while, you are likely to be perching on a mountain of profits. Should you stay where you are and hope for further gains, or is it time to declare victory and move your money to safer ground? That's an eternal question, one that returns whenever the market rises spectacularly. The answer depends, of course, on your analysis of two very different issues: the current situation in the markets, and the one in your own life.

The raw numbers for the stock market are astonishing: Even without counting dividends, the Standard & Poor's index has risen more than 6 percent since New Year's Day, nearly 20 percent in the last 12 months and roughly 250 percent since the start of the bull market[1] in March 2009.

Market history shows how remarkable that performance is.

The current bull run is now the second longest since 1928, according to Bespoke Investment Group, a research firm. It is exceeded in duration only by one that ran from December 1987 to March 2000.

In terms of strength, it ranks third, well behind that 1987-2000 bull market, which had a spectacular gain of 582 percent, but not very far from one that lasted from June 1949 until August 1956, in which the market rose 267 percent.

The current rally has lasted so long and has gone so far that precedents from past markets may not be very helpful in understanding it. "My attitude is, the market is likely to continue to do better, though I can't point to historic measurement to prove my case the way I usually can," said Laszlo Birinyi[2], president of Birinyi Associates, a stock market research and money management firm in Westport, Conn.

Mr. Birinyi is an experienced strategist and a chronic bull. Back in 2009, he told me that we were at the very start of a classic bull market, and he reviewed his bullish view periodically, particularly in 2013, when many investors were growing pessimistic about the prospects for stocks.

In a telephone conversation, he said that while some of the market's recent action has been very strong—"a huge move" upward on Wednesday after President Trump's speech to Congress, for example—the stock market's path since 2009 has generally "been a series of slow, grinding moves" with little evidence of insane flushness.

Clearly, though, market fundamentals are less favorable than they were eight years ago, when stocks had been battered in the raging decline of the great financial crisis, and investors with anticipation and ambition could buy at minimal prices.

For example, one widely followed metric, the price to earnings ratio (P/E ratio[3]) of the Standard & Poor's 500-stock index—which tells you how much money is being paid, on average, for $1 of corporate earnings—has become much less favorable. It has climbed to 22, well above its five-year average of 18.2, according to data from Bloomberg. Consider that in February 2009, the ratio slumped to 12.1, a trifling level reflecting widespread fear that both corporate earnings and stock prices would dive. That moment was a turning point for the market, which has surged upward ever since. It may not be at a peak now, but investors are inhaling rare air, whether they know it or not.

Yet it can be argued, as Mr. Birinyi does, that corporate earnings are rising, the economy is expanding nicely, and investors have been reacting fairly cautiously, keeping valuations within reasonable, if not ideal, bounds.

On the other hand, prices have certainly leapt since Election Day in response to the possibility that the Trump administration and Congress will agree on legislation that could amplify American companies: corporate tax cuts, defense and fundamental constructions and changes in the Affordable Care Act[4]. But, Mr. Birinyi says, the market hasn't risen all that much, and if earnings keep rising, stock prices probably will, too. "It makes sense to stay involved in the stock market and to be positioned for the possibility that it will rise a lot further," he said.

The increasing likelihood of a Federal Reserve interest rate increase would have been a problem a year ago, Mr. Birinyi said, but it is a positive indication at this stage, because it signals that the central bank is convinced that the economy is in good shape and will keep expanding.

That said, he also warned that in the current market, restraint and swiftness are important. "I wouldn't go all in on stocks," he said. "I'd be careful."

Mr. Birinyi sits in front of a terminal all day, trading individual stocks whenever the prices tell him it makes sense to do so, which most people couldn't and shouldn't attempt. "We get out of a stock if the price is no longer right," he said, "and we will buy it again when it's better. We're ready for whatever happens."

Most of us aren't steady stock traders, and need to be prepared for declines in other ways. And if little is implemented in Washington to fulfill investor expectations—or if there is an external shock, such as an international crisis—the market could fall sharply, Mr. Birinyi acknowledged. Furthermore, if the economy recesses in such situations, the long rally in stocks could end violently.

One way to deal with this is to try to take a universal view, as I suggested in a recent column, ignoring the market's ups and downs entirely and remaining a consistent investor for a horizon that lasts decades. That can be implemented by allocating your portfolio appropriately between stocks and bonds, depending on age and tolerance for risk, perhaps using diversified, low-cost mutual funds or exchange traded funds (ETF)[5], in which professional managers do the work for you, merely by tracking broad indexes or by picking a variety of individual securities. If you don't need the money for a long while and are able to retain your calmness in a prolonged crisis, you may be able to avoid paying attention to the stock and bond markets.

But even if you're a very long-term investor, it's smart to take stock. If, for example, you will need a chunk of your portfolio for a down payment on a house or to pay a tuition bill or to replace a roof or buy a car, you may want to liquidate some of it now, congratulating yourself on your gains. In addition, even if you don't need to use the money, selling securities that have incurred losses may be a good move, Mr. Birinyi said. Losses will offset gains when it's time to pay your taxes, and many investors these days are fortunate in having plenty of gains.

In any case, it is surely wise to make sure, after a remarkable run in the stock market, that you will be able to handle a sharp decline when it eventually comes. Personally, I've salted away my savings in broad stock and bond indexes with money that I don't expect to need for years, and I'm careful to limit my own stock allocation. I don't ignore the market. I examine it daily, and if I become convinced that it is shaky, I will reduce my own holdings—and say so—but haven't taken much off the table lately. We all have to live with our own choices. I'm choosing to celebrate but also to be very careful.

(Adapted from "Soaring Market Is a Problem, But a Nice One", *The New York Times*, March 5, 2017)

Notes

① Bull market

A bull market is a period of generally rising prices. The start of a bull market is marked by widespread pessimism. This point is when the "crowd" is the most "bearish". The feeling of despondency changes to hope, "optimism" and eventually euphoria, as the bull runs its course. This often leads the economic cycle, for example in a full recession, or earlier.

② Laszlo Birinyi

Laszlo Birinyi Jr. is an investor, entrepreneur and the founder of Birinyi Associates, Inc. and Asset Management Arm. Birinyi was born in Hungary but moved to Pennsylvania at the age of seven. He graduated from the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, in 1966, with a major in history, and has an MBA from the New York University Graduate School of Business. He started his career in the investment industry as a trader, and then worked at Salomon Brothers starting from 1976 as an equity researcher and market analyst, later being promoted to head of Equity Market Analysis. In that position he constructed the *Stock Week*—a weekly commentary containing studies on fund flow, market structure, volatility, etc.. He helped establish the Salomon-Russell International Index.

③ P/E ratio

The price/earnings ratio (often shortened to the P/E ratio or the PER) is the ratio of a company's stock price to the company's earnings per share. The ratio is used in valuing companies. The price/earnings ratio (PER) is the most widely used method for determining whether shares are "correctly" valued in relation to one another. But the PER does not in itself indicate whether the share is a bargain. The PER depends on the market's perception of the risk and future growth in earnings. A company with a low PER indicates that the market perceives it as higher risk or lower growth or both as compared to a company with a higher PER.

④ Affordable Care Act

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, often shortened to the Affordable Care Act (ACA) and nicknamed Obamacare, is a United States federal statute enacted by the 111th United States Congress and signed into law by President Barack Obama on March 23, 2010. Under the act, hospitals and primary physicians would transform their practices financially, technologically and clinically to drive better health outcomes, lower costs, and improve their methods of distribution and accessibility. The Affordable Care Act was designed to increase health insurance quality and affordability, lower the uninsured rate by expanding insurance coverage and reduce the costs of healthcare. It introduced mechanisms including mandates, subsidies and insurance exchanges. The law requires insurers to accept all applicants, cover a specific list of conditions, and charge the same rates regardless of pre-existing conditions or sex.

⑤ Exchange traded funds (ETF)

An exchange-traded fund (ETF) is an investment fund traded on stock exchanges, much like stocks. An ETF holds assets, such as stocks, commodities, or bonds, and trades close to its net asset value over the course of the trading day. Most ETFs track an index, such as a stock index

or bond index. ETFs may be attractive as investments because of their low costs, tax efficiency and stock-like features. By 2013, ETFs were the most popular type of exchange-traded product. ETF distributors only buy or sell ETFs directly from or to authorized participants, which are large broker-dealers with whom they have entered into agreements—and then, only in creation units, which are large blocks of tens of thousands of ETF shares, usually exchanged in-kind with baskets of the underlying securities.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) In July, the Dow Jones industrial average reached 20,000 for the first time.
2. ( ) The current bull run is now the third longest since 1928, according to Bespoke Investment Group.
3. ( ) Mr. Trump is an experienced strategist and a chronic bull.
4. ( ) Mr. Birinyi reviewed his bullish view periodically, particularly in 2013, when many investors were growing pessimistic about the prospects for stocks.
5. ( ) Market fundamentals are favorable than they were eight years ago.
6. ( ) Nowadays stocks have been battered in the raging decline of the great financial crisis, and investors with anticipation and ambition can buy at minimal prices.
7. ( ) Prices have certainly leapt since Election Day in response to the possibility that the Trump administration and Congress will agree on legislation that could amplify American companies.
8. ( ) Most of us aren't steady stock traders, and need to be prepared for declines in other ways.
9. ( ) Even if you're a very long-term investor, it's smart to take stock.
10. ( ) It is surely wise to make sure, after a remarkable run in the stock market, that you will be able to handle a sharp decline when it eventually comes.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

anticipate	sane	implement	fundament	exceed
restrain	slump	portfolio	fulfill	surge

VII. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets.

1. The first quarter ________ (divide) has been increased by nearly 3 percent.
2. She ________ (flush) the rest of her drink down the toilet yesterday.
3. The news caused a ________ (spectacle) fall in the stock market.
4. Music has been called the ________ (universe) language.
5. Outside California these difficulties may seem fairly ________ (trifle).
6. David moved ________ (cautious) forward and looked over the edge.
7. He took a long slow breath, ________ (inhale) deeply.
8. He lit a cigarette and ________ (perch) on the corner of the desk.
9. The company's troubles started only when it ________ (diversify) into new products.
10. Most member countries have already ________ (legislate) against excessive overtime.

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the proper words given below, changing the form if necessary.

anticipate	sane	implement	fundament	exceed
restrain	slump	portfolio	fulfill	surge

11. In finance, a ________ is the combination of investments that a particular person or company owns.
12. It is ________ that the equivalent of 192 full-time jobs will be lost.
13. I would be ________ jealous if Bill left me for another woman.
14. All round the region we are seeing signs of countries ________ back into protectionism.
15. A ________ human right is being withheld from these people.
16. The government promised to ________ a new system to control financial loan institutions.
17. A good police officer is not ________ his role if he neglects this vital aspect.
18. My boat was ________ through the huge waves.
19. Opposition politicians have called for ________ on public spending.
20. He was fined for ________ the speed limit.

VIII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following paragraph into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

But even if you're a very long-term investor, it's smart to take stock. If, for example, you will need a chunk of your portfolio for a down payment on a house or to pay a tuition bill or to replace a roof or buy a car, you may want to liquidate some of it now, congratulating yourself on your gains. In addition, even if you don't need to use the money, selling securities that have incurred losses may be a good move, Mr. Birinyi said. Losses will offset gains when it's time to pay your taxes, and many investors these days are fortunate in having plenty of gains.

IX. Composition

Directions: Write an article to predicate and share your ideas concerning President Trump's influence on America in the future, with at least 120 words in 30 minutes.

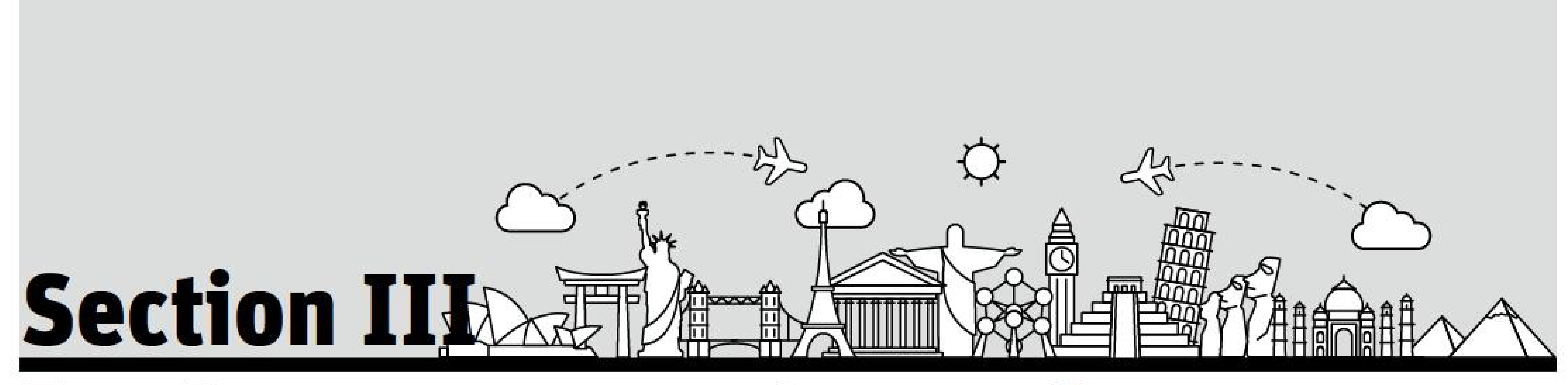
X. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to explain the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. papa nephew nanny uncle carrot granny ( ) ______________
2. phew innit hark nah nappy golly ( ) ______________
3. pasta brownie lemonade cereal spaghetti margarine marmalade pastry butty loaf ( ) ______________
4. karate badminton slipper spear lance skate ( ) ______________
5. dyslexia paranoid arthritis hiccup goo allergy ( ) ______________



Section III

Text B: A Target Too Big to Nail

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **absorb** [əb'sɔːb] ***vt.*** **(absorbed/absorbed/absorbing)**

to take in a liquid, gas or other substance from the surface or space around; to read or hear a large amount of new information and understand it; to interest someone so much that they do not pay attention to other things

synonym	digest
antonym	disperse
word family	absorbable; absorbingly; absorbability
related phrase	be absorbed in/with; absorb sth. into sth.

Example 1 Can your brain absorb all this information?

Example 2 Large nations shouldn't absorb smaller ones.

② **apprentice** [ə'prentɪs] ***n./vt.*** **(apprenticed/apprenticed/apprenticing)**

someone who works for an expert to learn a trade; If a young person is apprenticed to someone, they go to work for them in order to learn their skill.

synonym	beginner; newcomer; learner; freshman
antonym	expert; professional
word family	apprenticeship
related phrase	apprentice in

Example 1 The shop is taking on two new apprentices.

Example 2 He began his career as an apprentice.

③ **currency** ['kʌrənsɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* currencies)**

The money used in a particular country is referred to as its currency; money system in use in a country; the state of being accepted or used by a lot of people; common or general use

synonym	cash; coin; money
word family	current; currently

related phrase currency exchange; currency board

Example 1 The president proclaimed that a new currency would be issued.

Example 2 Tourism is the country's top earner of foreign currency.

④ **dent** [dent] ***vt.*** **(dented/dented/denting)**

to make a depression into; If you dent the surface of something, you make a hollow area in it by hitting or pressing it; If something dents your confidence or your pride, it makes you realize that you are not as good or successful as you thought.

synonym impress; nick; pit

word family dental; dentist

related phrase make a dent in; dent resistance

Example 1 No one was injured, but the car was dented.

Example 2 The scandal has dented his reputation.

⑤ **dismantle** [dɪs'mæntl] ***vt.*** **(dismantled/dismantled/dismantling)**

to pull down or take to pieces; to bring to an end (a system, arrangement, etc.), especially by gradual stages; If you dismantle a machine or structure, you carefully separate it into its different parts; To dismantle an organization or system means to cause it to stop functioning by gradually reducing its power or purpose.

synonym demolish

word family dismantlement; dismantler; dismantling

related phrase ability to dismantle; dismantle existing legislation

Example 1 This toy machine gun dismantles easily.

Example 2 We should dismantle our inefficient tax system.

⑥ **displace** [dɪs'pleɪs] ***vt.*** **(displaced/displaced/displacing)**

to take the place of; to put sth./sb. else in the place of; to put out of the right or usual position; If one thing displaces another, it forces the other thing out of its place, position, or role, and then occupies that place, position, or role itself.

synonym move; shift; transfer

word family displacement; displacer; displaceable; displaced

related phrase response displace; displaced person

Example 1 Weeds tend to displace other plants.

Example 2 Please don't displace my dictionaries.

7 **duplicate** [(for *n.*) 'dju:plɪkət; (for *v.*) 'dju:plɪkeɪt] ***n./vt.*** **(duplicated/duplicated/duplicating)**

to double, multiply by two; If you duplicate something that has already been done, you repeat or copy it; To duplicate something which has been written, drawn, or recorded onto tape means to make exact copies of it.

synonym	copy; reproduce
antonym	original; script
word family	duplicable; duplicately
related phrase	in duplicate; duplicate copy

Example 1 Please duplicate the document for me!

Example 2 These results duplicate those of others.

8 **erupt** [ɪ'rʌpt] ***vi./vt.*** **(erupted/erupted/erupting)**

to cause oneself to suffer (sth. bad); to bring upon oneself; When a volcano erupts, it throws out a lot of hot, melted rock called lava, as well as ash and steam; If violence or fighting erupts, it suddenly begins or gets worse in an unexpected, violent way.

synonym	burst; discharge; spurt
word family	eruption; eruptive; eruptively; eruptivity
related phrase	erupt from; erupt into

Example 1 Violence has erupted on the streets.

Example 2 An active volcano may erupt at any time.

9 **flip** [flɪp] ***vt.*** **(flipped/flipped/flipping)**

to toss with a sharp movement so as to cause to turn over in the air; If you flip through the pages of a book, for example, you quickly turn over the pages in order to find a particular one or to get an idea of the contents.

synonym	toss; throw; pitch
word family	flipping; flipper
related phrase	flip at; flip through; flip out; flip over

Example 1 The fish flipped on the deck.

Example 2 The plane nearly flipped when it landed.

10 **harness** ['hɑ:nɪs] ***n./vt.*** **(harnessed/harnessed/harnessing)**

to exploit the power of; to control and direct with or as if by reins; If you harness something, such as an emotion or natural source of energy, you bring it under your control and use it.

synonym	use; control
antonym	unharness

word family harnessmaker; harnesslike

related phrase in harness; safety harness

Example 1 If you can harness your energy, you will accomplish a great deal.

Example 2 They will harness the sun's energy to heat homes.

⑪ **insight** ['ɪnsaɪt] ***n.***

the power of using one's mind to see or understand the true nature of a situation; a sudden, clear, but not always complete understanding

synonym comprehension; perception

word family insightful; insightfully

related phrase insight into; insight learning

Example 1 I've got an insight into the problem.

Example 2 The book is filled with remarkable insights.

⑫ **software** ['sɒftweə] ***n.***

data, programs, etc. not forming part of a computer but used when operating it; the sets of programs that tell a computer how to do a particular job

antonym hardware

related phrase software package; computer software; software program

Example 1 There are many sorts of software in my computer.

Example 2 We deal in hardware but not software.

⑬ **spokesman** ['spəʊksmən] ***n.*** **(*pl.* spokesmen)**

a man who speaks, or is chosen to speak, on behalf of a group

synonym spokesperson; representative

word family spokesmanship

related phrase spokesman role; web spokesman

Example 1 He was the spokesman for the workers on strike.

Example 2 Her criticism brought an immediate reply from a government spokesman.

⑭ **trench** [trentʃ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* trenches)/*vt.* (trenched/trenched/trenching)**

long narrow hole dug in the earth; a deep ditch dug in the ground as a protection for soldiers; A trench is a long narrow channel that is cut into the ground, for example, in order to lay pipes or get rid of water.

synonym ditch; channel; moat

word family trencher; trenching

related phrase dig a trench; fortify a trench; trench coat

Example 1 The farmers gouged out a trench across the field.

Example 2 They dig a trench to keep the forest fire from spread.

⑮ **venture** ['ventʃə(r)] ***n./vt.*** **(ventured/ventured/venturing)**

an investment that is very risky but could yield great profits; a commercial undertaking that risks a loss but promises a profit; to go somewhere that could be dangerous; to say or do something in an uncertain way because you are afraid it is wrong or will seem stupid

synonym adventure; risk; dare

word family vent; venturesome; venturous

related phrase venture capital; joint venture; venture to do sth.

Example 1 These foreigners have put forward a proposal for a joint venture.

Example 2 He was sucked in as a partner in this venture.

⑯ **convert** [kən'vɜːt] ***vi./vt.*** **(converted/converted/converting)**

to change something into a different form, or to change something so that it can be used for a different purpose or in a different way; to persuade someone to change to a different religion; to change to a different set of ideas, principles, or ways of doing something; to persuade someone to change to a different set of ideas, principles, or ways of doing something

synonym transform; shift

word family convertible; conversion; convertibility; converter

related phrase convert into/to; newly converted

Example 1 In the process, the light energy converts to heat energy.

Example 2 If you try to convert him, you could find he just walks away.

⑰ **spin off**

To spin off something, such as a company means to create a new company that is separate from the original organization.

Example 1 He rescued the company and later spun off its textile division into a separate entity.

Example 2 If a deal goes through one of the first jobs of a merged management team may well be to spin off these combined flower arms.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

auction	bobby	fake	Kenya	outlet
puff	subsidiary	warden		

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. How many apps are being used for online transaction?

2. Can you make some comparisons between the Chinese and Western banking system?

A Target Too Big to Nail

Silicon Valley Tried to Flip over Banks. Now It's Working with Them.

San Francisco—In 2011, Brett King was promoting his book *Breaking Banks*, and creating a start-up that he hoped would do to the banks what Amazon[1] did to the retail industry and Facebook[2] did to media. "We had grand ideas of being the Facebook of banking, and being a new form of bank account," Mr. King said recently.

Six years later, his company, Moven, has opened only 60,000 of those new bank accounts. Mr. King has now converted to selling his software to the banks, who use it as a component of their mobile applications. "We realize that if you want millions of users as a bank, it is a very different proposition than building a social media network," he said.

Silicon Valley has flipped over a growing number of industries, and it had seemed not too long ago that Wall Street would soon be next. A puff of financial launching (start-ups) rose quickly and grabbed billions of dollars in investments. Mr. King is just one of the many technology capitalists who have since recently run into the enormous trenches that surround and protect the existing financial industry. The venture capitalists who have invested billions of dollars in this wave of new financial technology—think Venmo and Bitcoin—have been left waiting for an erupting star that actually looks like a threat to even a part of the big banks' business.

"A lot of people set out saying, 'We are going to displace the banks,'" said Sheel Mohnot, a venture capitalist at 500 launching who focuses on financial technology. "We realized along the way that you really have no choice but to work with the banks." And the difficulty of denting the influence and power of the big banks is only likely to get harder under the Trump administration. President Trump has said he wants to encourage innovation and new business by cutting back on regulations of all sorts, including financial regulations. Yet it was the regulations passed after the financial crisis that forced the big banks to reduce their risks in many areas and provided an opening for launching like Moven, which were willing to take more risks.

Mr. Trump's plan to dismantle those post-crisis regulations is widely expected to give the big banks more total freedom and close the window of opportunity for apprentices. "The degree to which banks have been caught under the saddle of regulatory obligations is very likely to lighten up under Trump," said Arjan Schütte, the founder of the venture capital firm Core Innovation Capital, which focuses on financial technology.

Mr. Schütte has been moving his firm's investments away from bank disrupters and toward launching that are set up to partner with existing financial institutions. Even if there has not been a disruption of the big banks, basic financial services available to consumers are changing rapidly, anyway.

Americans are now able to send each other money instantly from their phones, thanks to

Venmo, and can get approved for a loan in minutes, also from their phone.

The consulting firm McKinsey estimated in a report last month that digital disruption could put $90 billion, or 25 percent of bank profits, at risk over the next three years as services become more computerized and more tellers are replaced by chat machines.

Much of this change, however, is now expected to come from the banks themselves as they absorb new ideas from the technology world and shrink their own operations, without necessarily losing significant numbers of customers to launch.

Venmo, for instance, has captured the wallets of many young Americans, but the largest banks have all begun their own versions of the service and some of them say that they already process, as single banks, more instant personal payments than Venmo.

The large banks are also teaming up to start a comprehensive mobile phone application, Zelle, that will take Venmo directly in 2017.

PayPal[3], which bought Venmo in 2009, is still trying to find a way to make money from the business, which is currently offered primarily as a free service.

Financial launching (start-ups) are not facing the same challenges everywhere in the world. In China, the technology company Ant Financial has grown to 450 million users since spinning off from the e-commerce giant Alibaba[4] in 2014. Ant Financial now processes a majority of online payments in China.

Ant Financial has used its position as an electronic, phone-based wallet to grab lots of other financial business from Chinese consumers, offering online loans, insurance and investment advice to its hundreds of millions of customers.

China has four of the five most valuable financial technology launching in the world, according to CB Insights, with Ant Financial leading the way at $60 billion. And investments in financial technology rose 64 percent in China last year, while they were falling 29 percent in the United States, according to CB Insights.

In Africa, the financial industry has been shaken up by the rise of new forms of mobile phone-based payment systems like M-Pesa[5], in Kenya, which was started by the local mobile phone operator rather than a bank, and has risen to become the dominant form of payment in the country.

The obvious reason that financial launching (start-ups) have not achieved the same level of growth in the United States is that most Americans already have access to a relatively functional set of financial products.

Some launching looked at becoming banks, so they could offer deposit insurance—among other things—but they generally found that getting a bank charter required more time and money than is available to even the most successful launching. This left most launching reliant on banks to hold and move any money they collected from customers.

"Operating in America, you needed to get a warden to approve your access to the networks," said Josh Reich, who sold his banking start-up, Simple, to the Spanish banking giant BBVA.[6] "If we wanted to touch their money, we needed to be part of the banking system."

Online lenders were particularly ambitious in trying to take on the banks from outside the system. Lending Club, which makes personal loans, and OnDeck, which focuses on small business loans, initially grew swiftly and went public, but both companies have run up against the limits of

how fast a lending business can grow without being a bank.

The online lenders have struggled with the high cost of acquiring new customers through marketing, which is not as necessary in other industries that have been disrupted by technology.

At a more fundamental level, online lenders realized how hard it was to fund the new loans they wanted to give out without having access to cheap deposits, as the banks do.

The shares of both Lending Club and OnDeck are now trading far below where they were on the day they went public. One notable success among the new lenders has been SoFi[7], or Social Finance, but even it has captured only about 250,000 customers, as compared to the 160 million users of Snapchat[8], the social network that was founded the same year.

Launching focused on improving payments have had more success—the most valuable recent American technology start-up is Stripe, which helps new companies accept online payments.

But Stripe and other payment start-ups like Square are all built on top of the existing credit card and banking facility and have not posed any type of fundamental threat or challenge to the existing giants.

"We are explicitly not a threat to the banks," Tim Drinan, a spokesman for Stripe, said. "From our perspective the banks and card networks have built something pretty good and pretty hard to duplicate."

Perhaps the most ambitious recent project aimed at flipping over the banks was Bitcoin, which promised a new way to hold and move money, totally outside the existing banking system.

The virtual currency has not taken off as a way to hold and spend money on a daily basis, as many of its fans had predicted.

At the same time, in a pattern that has been repeated elsewhere in the financial industry, the big banks have been making big investments aimed at harnessing the technology underlying Bitcoin—known as the block chain—for their own purposes.

Tim Swanson, an early Bitcoin follower and analyst who now works with the block chain consulting firm R3, said that Bitcoin wasn't able to fulfill the marketing promises that were made for it back in 2012.

"It may take some time, but if there is anyone that has the capital base and the developer base to see this through, it's the banks for sure," Mr. Swanson said.

(Adapted from https: //www. seattletimes. com/business/silicon-valley-tried-to-upend-wall-street-now-it-works-with-the-financial-industry/)

Notes

① Amazon

Amazon. com, commonly known as Amazon, is an American electronic commerce and cloud computing company that was founded on July 5, 1994, by Jeff Bezos and is based in Seattle, Washington. It is the largest Internet-based retailer in the world by total sales and market capitalization. Amazon. com started as an online bookstore, later diversifying to sell DVDs, Blu-rays, CDs, video downloads/streaming, MP3 downloads/streaming, audiobook downloads/streaming, software, video games, electronics, apparel, furniture, food, toys and jewelry. The

company also produces consumer electronics—notably, Kindle e-readers, Fire tablets, Fire TV and Echo—and is the world's largest provider of cloud infrastructure services (IaaS and PaaS). Amazon also sells certain low-end products like USB cables under its in-house brand AmazonBasics. Amazon has separate retail websites for the United States, the United Kingdom and Ireland, France, Canada, Germany, Italy, Spain, Netherlands, Australia, Brazil, Japan, China, India and Mexico.

② Facebook

Facebook is an American for-profit corporation and an online social media and social networking service based in Menlo Park, California. The Facebook website was launched on February 4, 2004, by Mark Zuckerberg, along with fellow Harvard College students and roommates, Eduardo Saverin, Andrew McCollum, Dustin Moskovitz and Chris Hughes. As of April 2016, Facebook was the most popular social networking site in the world, based on the number of active user accounts. Facebook classifies users from the ages of 13 to 18 as minors and therefore sets their profiles to share content with friends only.

③ PayPal

PayPal Holdings, Inc. is an American company operating a worldwide online payments system that supports online money transfers and serves as an electronic alternative to traditional paper methods like cheques and money orders. PayPal is one of the world's largest Internet payment companies. The company operates as a payment processor for online vendors, auction sites and other commercial users, for which it charges a fee. Established in 1998, PayPal had its initial public offering in 2002, and became a wholly owned subsidiary of eBay later that year. In 2014, eBay announced plans to spin-off PayPal into an independent company by mid-2015 and this was completed on July 18, 2015.

④ Alibaba

Alibaba Group Holding Limited is a Chinese e-commerce company that provides consumer-to-consumer, business-to-consumer and business-to-business sales services via web portals. It also provides electronic payment services, shopping search engines and data-centric cloud computing services. The group began in 1999 when Jack Ma founded the website Alibaba.com, a business-to-business portal to connect Chinese manufacturers with overseas buyers. In 2012, two of Alibaba's portals handled 1.1 trillion yuan ($170 billion) in sales. Suppliers from other countries are supported (with more stringent checks than for Chinese companies), but the company primarily operates in the People's Republic of China (PRC). At closing time on the date of its initial public offering (IPO), 19 September 2014, Alibaba's market value was $231 billion.

⑤ M-Pesa

M-Pesa (M for mobile, Pesa is Swahili for money) is a mobile phone-based money transfer, financing and micro-financing service, launched in 2007 by Vodafone for Safaricom and Vodacom, the largest mobile network operators in Kenya and Tanzania. It has since expanded to Afghanistan, South Africa, India and in 2014 to Romania and in 2015 to Albania. M-Pesa allows users to deposit, withdraw, transfer money, and pay for goods and services easily with a mobile device.

⑥ BBVA

Banco Bilbao Vizcaya Argentaria, S. A. (BBVA) is a multinational Spanish banking group. It was formed from a merger of Banco Bilbao Vizcaya and Argentaria in 1999, and is the second largest bank in Spain. The company is a component of the Euro Stoxx 50 stock market index. In 2007, the firm started an initiative to digitally transform the bank. Following implementation, it saw a 19% year-on-year increase in new customers. As of 2015, the total number of these clients stood at 14.8 million.

⑦ SoFi

SoFi (Social Finance, Inc.) is a U.S. non-profit organization. It focuses on the emerging field of Pay for Success (PFS) financing (also called a Social Impact Bond (SIB)) in the United States. Social Finance provides advisory, social investment and active performance management services to public- and private-sector partners seeking to drive more resources to social programs that deliver proven results to those in need. The organization has offices in Boston, MA, Austin, TX and San Francisco, CA.

⑧ Snapchat

Snapchat is an image messaging and multimedia mobile application created by Evan Spiegel, Bobby Murphy and Reggie Brown, former students at Stanford University, and developed by Snap Inc., originally Snapchat Inc.. One of the principal concepts of Snapchat is that pictures and messages are only available for a short time before they become inaccessible. The prototype for Snapchat was started by Brown and Spiegel as a project for one of Spiegel's classes at Stanford, where Spiegel was a product design major. Beginning as "Picaboo", the idea was to create a selfie app (application) which allowed users to share images that were explicitly short-lived and self-deleting. The temporary nature of the pictures would therefore encourage frivolity and emphasize a more natural flow of interaction. When, in April 2011, Spiegel floated the product idea in front of his class as a final project, the classmates focused on the impermanent aspect of the potential product, and balked at the thought of temporary photos.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Fast Reading

Directions: Read the text quickly and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the information given in the text.

1. ( ) Brett King was promoting his book *Breaking Banks* and creating a start-up that he hoped would do to the banks what Amazon did to the retail industry and Facebook did to media.
2. ( ) Mr. King realizes that if people want millions of users as a bank, it is a very easy proposition than building a social media network.
3. ( ) Silicon Valley has flipped over a growing number of industries, and it had seemed not too long ago that Wall Street would soon be next.
4. ( ) President Trump said that they were going to displace the banks.

5. (　　) Mr. Trump's plan to dismantle those post-crisis regulations is widely expected to give the big banks more total freedom and close the window of opportunity for apprentices.
6. (　　) Americans are now able to send each other money instantly from their phones, thanks to Schütte, and can get approved for a loan in minutes, also from their phone.
7. (　　) Venmo has captured the wallets of many young Americans.
8. (　　) PayPal, which was bought by Venmo in 2009, is still trying to find a way to make money from the business.
9. (　　) In Africa, the financial industry has been shaken up by the rise of new forms of mobile phone-based payment systems.
10. (　　) The obvious reason that financial launching (start-ups) have not achieved the same level of growth in the United States is that most Americans already have access to a relatively functional set of financial products, like in Africa and China.

II. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

III. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

IV. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

V. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets.

1. City schools were ________ (absorb) into the countywide school district.
2. Lenin had hoped to even have a working relationship with the ________ (capital).
3. It would take years ________ (displace) this system entirely.
4. The physician who lives in the Chicago area invested heavily in stocks, only to cry as the value of his portfolio ________ (shrink) 42% over the last decade.
5. I've never ________ (acquire) a taste for wine.
6. From there ________ (charter) a small plane to drop you in a jungle settlement or beach village.
7. The last ________ (erupt) of this volcano lasted over a year, so this cannot be ruled out.
8. He enjoys little success when he ________ (venture) into business.
9. This degree of ________ (sight) helps you quickly isolate and address problems.
10. You are advised ________ (deposit) valuables in the hotel safe.

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the proper words given below, changing the form if necessary.

ambitious	digital	dominant	explicit
primary	rapid	swift	useful

11. Sexually ________ scenes in movies and books were taboo under the old regime.
12. The ________ project was completed in only nine months.
13. Our task is to challenge the UN to make a(n) ________ decision.
14. Extra blank paper will probably come in ________.
15. His misunderstanding of language was the ________ cause of his other problems.
16. The new ________ technology would allow a rapid expansion in the number of TV channels.
17. He was moving ________ around the room.
18. Every ten years or so, a new ________ platform emerges to elevate computing to another level.

VI. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. "Operating in America, you needed to get a warden to approve your access to the networks," said Josh Reich, who sold his banking start-up, Simple, to the Spanish banking giant BBVA. "If we wanted to touch their money, we needed to be part of the banking system."
2. The shares of both Lending Club and OnDeck are now trading far below where they were on the day they went public. One notable success among the new lenders has been SoFi, or Social Finance, but even it has captured only about 250,000 customers, as compared to the 160 million users of Snapchat, the social network that was founded the same year.
3. Tim Swanson, an early Bitcoin follower and analyst who now works with the block chain consulting firm R3, said that Bitcoin wasn't able to fulfill the marketing promises that were made for it back in 2012.

VII. Composition

Directions: Write a summary of the text with at least 120 words in 30 minutes.

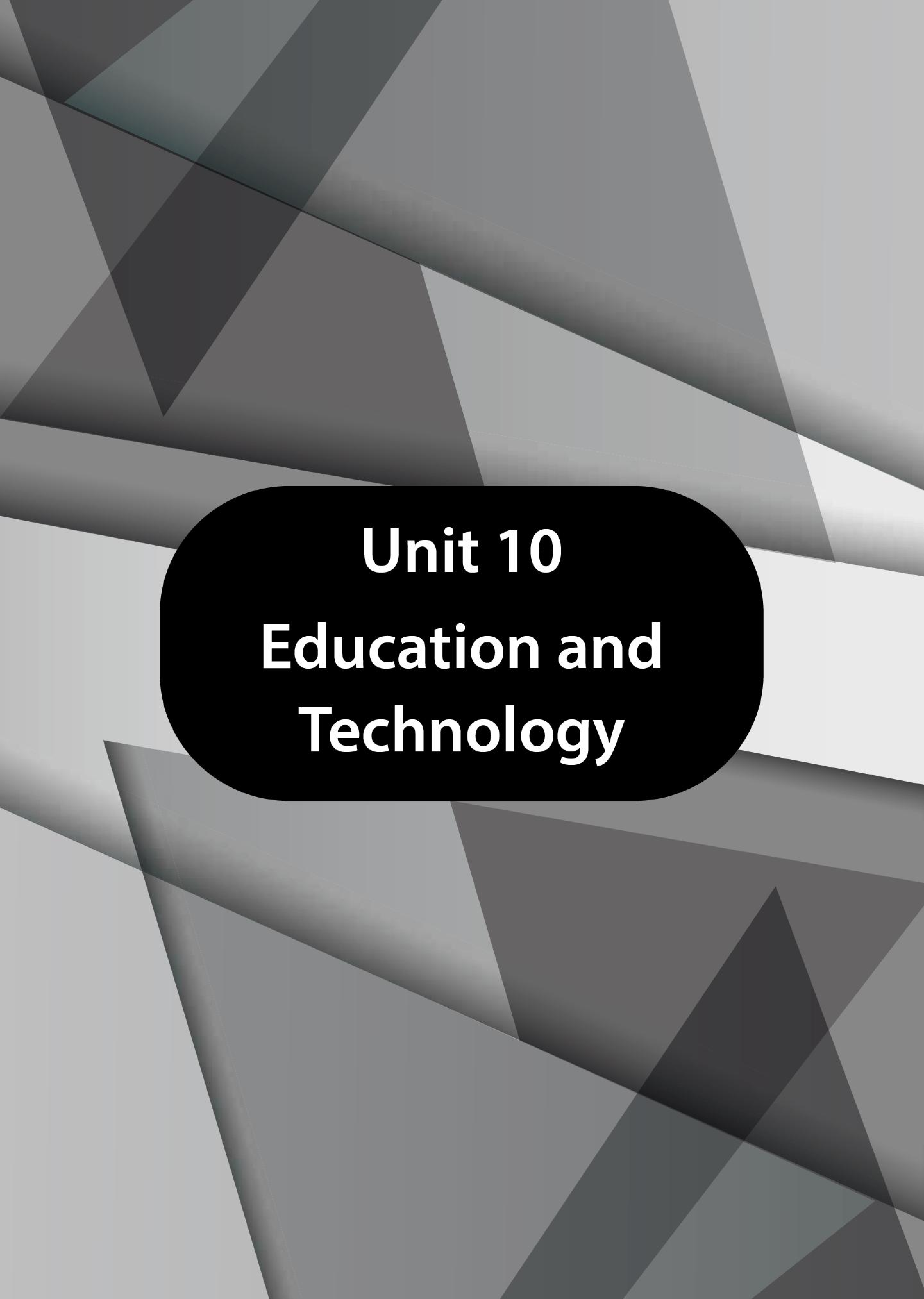
VIII. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

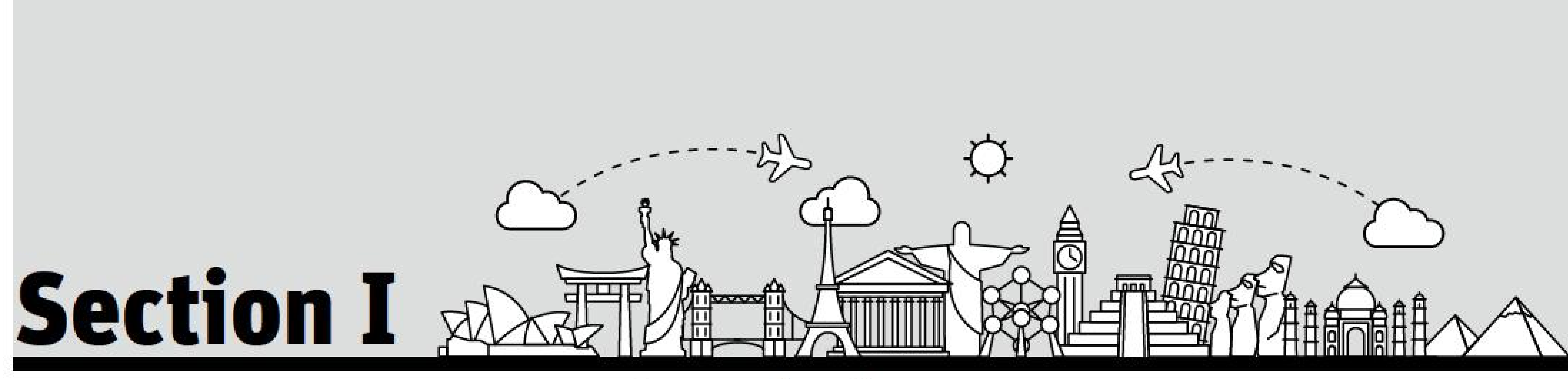
Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. armor hoop rig crate saw peg pedal (　　) ________
2. cage cave bunker turf coffin arena sewer bunk (　　) ________
3. knob lens lob locker hose gown chore shaft (　　) ________
4. ash blaze stow bonfire clay soot (　　) ________
5. pickle missile sauce sour laser scarf curry custard (　　) ________



Unit 10
Education and Technology

Section I



Focus on Conversion (II)

In Unit Nine, we have learned *n.* →*v.*conversion.

In this Unit, we will discuss the other three classifications of conversion.

Classification of Conversion (II)

v. →*n.* conversion

1) state (state of mind/sensation)

   to desire (*v.*) →desire (*n.*)

   to want (*v.*) →want (*n.*)

2) event/activity

   to cry (*v.*) →cry (*n.*): to give a cry

   to look (*v.*) →look (*n.*): to have a look

   to dash (*v.*) →dash (*n.*): to make a dash

   to peep (*v.*) →peep (*n.*): to take a peep

3) object or result of *V*.

   to find (*v.*) →find (*n.*)

   to import (*v.*) →import (*n.*)

4) agent of *V*.

   to bore (*v.*) →bore (*n.*)

   to cheat (*v.*) →cheat (*n.*)

5) instrument of *V*.

   to cover (*v.*) →cover (*n.*)

   to cure (*v.*) →cure (*n.*)

6) place of *V*.

   to turn (*v.*) →turn (*n.*)

   to divide (*v.*) →divide (*n.*)

adj. →*v.* conversion

1) *vi.*: to be, or to become the quality denoted by the adjective

2) *vt.*: to cause someone or something to be, or to become the quality denoted by the adjective

dry (*adj.*) →to dry ↗ (*vt.*) to make … dry
↘ (*vi.*) to become dry

narrow (*adj.*) →to narrow ↗ (*vt.*) to make … narrow
↘ (*vi.*) to become narrow

adj. →*n.* conversion

Mainly is partial conversion with the following characteristics:

*taking on only some of the features of a noun.

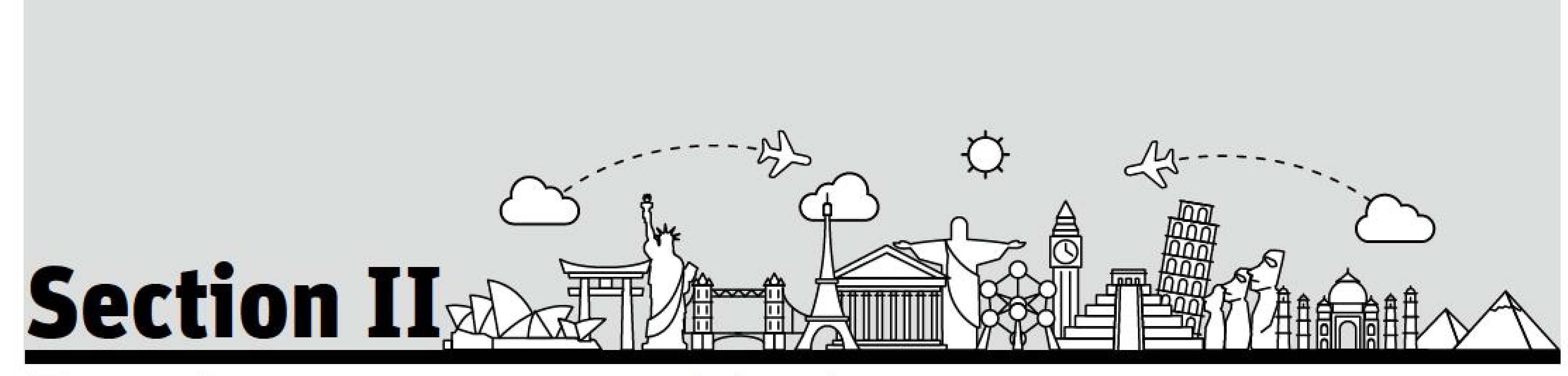
*being preceded by "the" or modified by *adv.* or used in its comparative or superlative degree.

*not taking plural or genitive inflection.

*not being preceded by determiners like "a" "this" "my", etc..

e.g. the poor, the very unfortunate, the poorer than oneself, the most corrupt of them all

(Adapted from https: //en. wikipedia. org/wiki/Conversion_(word_formation) and online materials.)



Section II

Text A: Learners Behind Bars

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **prune** [pruːn] ***n./vi./vt.*****(pruned/pruned/pruning)**

to cut off some of the branches of a tree or bush to make it grow better; to make something smaller by removing parts that you do not need or want; If you prune something, you cut out all the parts that you do not need.

synonym shear; crop; stupid; fool

word family pruning; pruned

related phrase prune juice; prune weights

Example 1 The company is pruning staff in order to reduce costs.

Example 2 The original version of the text has been pruned quite a bit.

② **extraordinary** [ɪk'strɔːdnrɪ] ***adj.***

very unusual or surprising; If you describe something or someone as extraordinary, you mean that they have some extremely good or special quality.

synonym remarkable; particular; temporary; special; wonder

word family extraordinarily; extraordinariness

related phrase extraordinary ability; extraordinary talent

Example 1 Grove is a man of extraordinary will power.

Example 2 We gather some of the most beautiful and extraordinary scenery of France.

③ **literacy** ['lɪt(ə)rəsɪ] ***n.***

the state of being able to read and write

antonym illiteracy

word family literary; literate; literature

related phrase literacy education

Example 1 Literacy is an essential foundation for development and prosperity.

Example 2 He joined a literacy program and later one on television training.

④ **rehabilitate** [ˌriːhəˈbɪlɪteɪt] ***vi./vt.*** **(rehabilitated/rehabilitated/rehabilitating)**

to help someone to live a healthy, useful, or active life again after they have been seriously ill or in prison; To rehabilitate someone who has been ill or in prison means to help them to live a normal life again; To rehabilitate someone who has a drug or alcohol problem means to help them stop using drugs or alcohol.

synonym repristinate; unmake; revive

word family rehabilitative; rehabilitation

related phrase rehabilitate criminals

Example 1 My friend Susan, the host, tried to rehabilitate me with the remaining guests.

Example 2 Without additional security, it's not possible to rehabilitate the country securely, and it's not possible to provide better services.

⑤ **remedy** [ˈremɪdɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* remedies)/*vt.* (remedied/remedied/remedying)**

a way of dealing with a problem or making a bad situation better; to deal with a problem or improve a bad situation; If you remedy something that is wrong or harmful, you correct it or improve it.

synonym cure; help; repair; therapy; satisfaction; cure

word family remedial; remediable; remediation

related phrase legal remedy; remedy for

Example 1 Your only remedy is to go to law.

Example 2 We need to make this information open to prevent the problems and know how to remedy them.

⑥ **trim** [trɪm] ***adj./vi./vt.*** **(trimmed/trimmed/trimming)**

to make something look neater by cutting small pieces off it; If a government or other organization trims something, such as a plan, policy, or amount, they reduce it slightly in extent or size; A person who is trim is thin in an attractive way.

synonym shear; arrange; crop

word family trimly; trimming; trimmer; trimness

related phrase trim down; trim sth. away/off

Example 1 The military budget will trim a lot next year.

Example 2 Hiya, do you want me to trim your moustache?

⑦ **constrain** [kənˈstreɪn] ***vt.*** **(constrained/constrained/constraining)**

to stop someone from doing what they want to do; To constrain someone or something means to limit their development or force them to behave in a particular way.

synonym restrain; encumber; cumber; stiffen; tighten

word family constrained; constrainedly

related phrase constrain creativity; constrain sb. from doing sth.

Example 1 Financial factors should not constrain doctors from prescribing the best treatment for patients.

Example 2 Poor soil has constrained the level of crop production.

⑧ degrade [dɪ'greɪd] *vi./vt.* (degraded/degraded/degrading)

to treat someone without respect and make them lose respect for themselves; to make a situation or the condition of something worse

synonym lower; bemean

word family degraded; degrading; degradation; degrader

related phrase degrade performance; degrade yourself (by doing sth.)

Example 1 How can you degrade yourself by writing such trash?

Example 2 The dolphin's habitat is being rapidly degraded.

⑨ diminish [dɪ'mɪnɪʃ] *vi./vt.* (diminished/diminished/diminishing)

to become or make something become smaller or less important; When something diminishes, or when something diminishes it, it becomes reduced in size, importance, or intensity.

synonym micrify; minify

word family diminished; diminution

related phrase diminish inflammation

Example 1 Their food supply gradually diminished as the days wore on.

Example 2 The governor's popularity has diminished.

⑩ upright ['ʌpraɪt] *adv./adj./n.*

standing or sitting straight up; laced in a vertical position; always behaving in an honest way; You can describe people as upright when they are careful to follow acceptable rules of behavior and behave in a moral way.

synonym honest; vertical; straight

word family uprightly; uprightness

related phrase upright position; sit upright

Example 1 He was a good honest upright man.

Example 2 Your seat should be in the upright position when the plane is landing.

⑪ custody ['kʌstədɪ] *n.*

the right to take care of a child, given to one of their parents when they have divorced; when

someone is kept in prison until they go to court, because the police think they have committed a crime; when someone is responsible for keeping and looking after something

synonym keeping; detention

word family custodial; custodian

related phrase custody transfer; in custody

Example 1 He got custody of his son after the divorce.

Example 2 Managers are responsible for the safe custody and retention of records.

⑫ **hardy** ['hɑːdɪ] ***adj.***

strong and healthy and able to bear difficult living conditions; A hardy plant is able to live through the winter.

synonym strong; tough; brave; steel

word family hardiness; harden

related phrase hardy resolution; hardy plant

Example 1 Hardy mosses sometimes pioneer on uncolonized rock surfaces.

Example 2 To those hardy enough to survive here, it offered a life ruled only by the elements.

⑬ **embrace** [ɪm'breɪs] ***n./vi./vt.*** **(embraced/embraced/embracing)**

to put your arms around someone and hold them in a friendly or loving way; to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion, etc.; to include something as part of a subject, discussion, etc.

synonym involve; contain; hug; cuddle

word family embracing; embracement

related phrase warm embrace; embrace an idea/concept

Example 1 We hope these regions will embrace democratic reforms.

Example 2 Jack warmly embraced his son.

⑭ **inhibit** [ɪn'hɪbɪt] ***vt.*** **(inhibited/inhibited/inhibiting)**

to prevent something from growing or developing well; If something inhibits an event or process, it prevents it or slows it down; To inhibit someone from doing something means to prevent them from doing it, although they want to do it or should be able to do it.

synonym bar; restrain; control; stay

word family inhibitory; inhibition

related phrase inhibit behavior; inhibit sb. from doing sth.

Example 1 An unhappy family life may inhibit children's learning.

Example 2 Officers will be inhibited from doing their duty.

⑮ **tailor** ['teɪlə] ***n./vi./vt.* (tailored/tailored/tailoring)**

someone whose job is to make men's clothes that are measured to fit each customer perfectly; to make something so that it is exactly right for someone's particular needs or for a particular purpose

synonym dressmaker; needlecraft; sartor; seamster

word family tailored; tailoring

related phrase tailor sth. to sb.'s needs/requirements

Example 1 In his youth his father bound him out to a tailor.

Example 2 You can tailor this to fit the scope of your project.

⑯ **skinny** ['skɪnɪ] ***adj.***

being very thin; A skinny person is extremely thin, often in a way that you find unattractive.

synonym cheap; leather

word family skinned; skinless; skinner; skinniness

related phrase skinny jeans; skinny girl

Example 1 That is what everyone says to the skinny girl still trying to lose more weight.

Example 2 He was quite a skinny little boy.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

campus	counsel	curriculum	eternal	jail
pamphlet	stark	expansion	spur	verb
invasion	batch	ramp		

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Do you know the prison college?
2. Can you imagine an ideal prison college in your mind in the future?

Learners Behind Bars

What is college for? American higher education began as a narrow religious and moral project, preparing a small batch of young men for upright lives in this world and the eternal one. But it has evolved into a large vocational enterprise, which promises to yield gainful employment for its increasing variety of eager customers. Whether a college diploma will lead to upper-middle-class jobs is one of the most hotly contested questions in American social sciences right now. But for prisoners, the practical advantages of a college education are impossible to deny. Only 2 percent of

BPI[1] graduates return to jail, as opposed to about half of released prisoners nationwide. Even more importantly, BPI schoolmates make vital and often unexpected contributions to their communities upon their return. In their prison classes, they talk about working as youth advocates, counselors and teachers. And once they are home, that's mostly what they do.

There are in fact only a limited number of college-in-prison programs in the U.S.. The 1994 Violent Crime Control and Law Enforcement Act, signed by President Clinton, prevented criminals from obtaining federal Pell Grants[2] to cover tuition costs. Almost anyone receiving a college degree in prison today relies on private initiatives like BPI, which has raised impressive amounts of foundation money.

Lagemann links the decline of college prison programs to the punishing spirit of criminal justice over the past several decades and to the simultaneous drop in public commitment to higher education. Since the 1960s, America has taken more people into custody—and for longer periods of time—than at any time in its history, and more than any other nation on earth. Many criminals were seen as beyond rehabilitation, so the only seemingly reasonable thing to do was to lock them up for many years. And even as states and the federal government ramped up more money into prisons, they pruned funds for colleges and universities. They also slashed student aid, shifting the cost burden from grants to loans—that is, from public to private hands. The imprisoning widened, and the educational state degraded.

Incarceration is fed by our failing K-12 schools, as well. That is the theme of *Notes from the Field*, Anna Deavere Smith's recent performance piece off-Broadway, in which Smith assumes the voices of a school principal, a teacher and a student as well as of several criminals. Her message is stark, and almost incredibly sad: if you take young people from needy homes and place them in poorly run schools, a high fraction of them will wind up in jail. But there are hopeful stories, too. The most affecting character in Smith's pamphlet is Denise Dodson, a criminal in Maryland and a student in a prison education[3] program run by Goucher College.

Like Bard[4], Goucher offers full college students degrees in prison. Dodson seems transformed by her course work. "I guess I can say that I just wasn't connecting to everything," Dodson says, reflecting on her life before prison, "because I wasn't given enough information to know that we are all connected somehow." Just as a poor education transports people into prison, a rich one can transform them beyond it.

Our prison population leveled off during the Obama years, as recession-strapped legislators looked for new ways to trim budgets. And the number of students attending college or university continued to grow, assisted by Obama's expansion of tuition tax credits and his provision of direct government loans to replace the private banks that served student borrowers.

Yet there doesn't seem to be any more public sentiment on behalf of college for prisoners than there was before. Obama did initiate a small program in 2015 to get around the Pell Grant Ban, and this is expected to provide federal student aid to 12,000 criminals. But the "experimental" tag of this effort also indicated that it had skinny political status. Indeed, as Republicans and Democrats agree to reduce the number of prisoners and their associated tax burden, life might become even more miserable for the people who remain behind bars. Reserving prison for "the worst offenders" makes it tougher to make any kind of case for assisting them. And many Americans—probably most Americans—are offended by the idea of devoting their tax dollars to the education of supposedly hardy criminals.

To their credit, neither Lagemann nor Karpowitz beautifies the students in BPI. Almost all of them are in prison for committing acts of violence, not for drug violations or other crimes. Not surprisingly, many of them also lack more than the ABCs of basic literacy. But in the era of "college for all", it turns out that prisoners want a degree as much as, and maybe more than, anyone else. Some of the most profound passages in Lagemann's book describe prisoners' repeated efforts to gain admission to the Bard program, which requires a written test as well as an interview. Only one of ten applicants is admitted, but some prisoners keep trying—as many as eight times—until they get in.

Students of the Bard Prison Initiative attending a calculus class at Eastern New York Correctional Facility, Napanoch, New York Bard commits to giving them a rigid college education but not "remedy", the catch-up instruction that many of our universities provide for students who don't have the skills that high schools are supposed to provide. Instead, BPI students are presented with guides to grammar and usage upon admission. They pass these books around the prison yard, where students help each other master the rules of sentence structure and verb conjugation. It's up to them—and not help from Bard—to acquire the basic proficiency they didn't receive in school.

Nor does Bard tailor its curriculum to their expected future vocations, another characteristic of contemporary higher education. Most American college students major in so-called "practical" fields—business, computer science, communication, education, and so on—rather than in liberal arts. In part, that trend reflects the preferences of students: as an annual survey of freshmen has demonstrated, rising numbers of young people value financial and job security over other educational goals. The same trend has also been spurred by politicians like Florida governor Rick Scott and former North Carolina governor Pat McCrory, who both suggested that their states shouldn't assist students who choose to major in the liberal arts or social sciences.

Even President Obama suggested a similar view, telling a 2014 audience that "folks can make a lot more, potentially, with skilled manufacturing or the trades than they might with an art history degree." Obama later took back the remark, but even his apology spoke volumes about popular perceptions of the liberal arts: "I was making a point about the jobs market, not the value of art history," Obama wrote, in a handwritten note to an offended art historian. "As it so happens, art history was one of my favorite subjects in high school, and it has helped me take in a great deal of joy in my life that I might otherwise have missed." One might conclude from this that the liberal arts give you enjoyment, and fields like business and communication yield employment.

That's the conventional wisdom, but it's probably wrong. In a recent survey of business leaders, nearly all of them said they valued clear thinking and communication skills in job applicants more than the particular graduate majors of job candidates; 80 percent agreed that "every college student should acquire broad knowledge in the liberal arts and sciences"; and three quarters said they would recommend liberal arts education as "the best way to prepare for success in today's global economy".

Lagemann and Karpowitz make a similar point, noting that BPI's liberal arts approach prepares graduates for a broader variety of vocations than an explicitly "vocational" curriculum would. They're slightly contradictory on this score, and for understandable reasons: by emphasizing advantages the liberal arts may have in securing jobs, we may risk diminishing the kind of inherent joy and deeper perception that President Obama experienced in his art history classes. But surely there is room for both: the liberal arts can prepare students to be economically successful workers and more intellectually aware human beings. And that's also why we need to provide a liberal arts education to people across our diverse colleges and universities, as well as in outstanding

institutions like Bard College.

At the same time, however, Americans also need to acknowledge that some tendencies in liberal education have closed minds rather than liberated them. The freewheeling, take-no-prisoners discussions in Bard's prison program are in contrast to many campus classrooms, where rules of political etiquette inhibit honest conversation. A professor tells Karpowitz that when she teaches students on the Bard campus they often respond to a controversial statement or opinion by announcing that they are "uncomfortable" with it. But her students in the prison program embrace rather than avoid potentially embarrassing topics, which gives them intellectual outlet from the dull routines of custody.

The comparison of the two kinds of discussion tells us a great deal, not just about the mind-deadening quality of prison life but also about the ways that extraordinary campuses can dare constrain minds in the name of protecting them. Witness the growing language of trigger warnings and micro invasions and safe spaces, all anticipating that some students will be enraged by a variety of historical references or literature texts and all reflecting the dubious proposition that young minds need sober defense from injury. Many of the BPI students aren't young, and they have caused or witnessed physical injuries that most of our campus students can only imagine. They're not put off by controversy, and they never ask professors to shield them from it. One suspects that in many cases they get more out of college than their on-campus peers do, in part because the prisoners aren't afraid to give—or receive—offense. It is astonishing to think that prisoners could have, in effect, more freedom of speech than free citizens in many colleges. But in narrow matters of concern about insulting language, it might also be true.

(Adapted from http: //www. nybooks. com/articles/2017/02/23/scholars-behind-bars-college-prison/)

Notes

① BPI

The Baltimore Polytechnic Institute, colloquially referred to as BPI, Poly and The Institute, is a U.S. public high school founded in 1883. Though established as an all-male trade school, it is now a coeducational institution that emphasizes sciences, technology, engineering and mathematics (STEM). It is located on a 53-acre tract of land in North Baltimore at the intersection of Falls Road and West Cold Spring Lane, bordering Roland Park to the east and I-83 to the west. BPI and Western High School are located on the same campus, share several amenities including a cafeteria, auditorium and athletic fields, as well as a collaborative marching band, The Marching Flock. BPI is a "Maryland Blue Ribbon School of Excellence".

② Pell Grants

A Pell Grant is a subsidy the U.S. federal government provides for students who need it to pay for college. Federal Pell Grants are limited to students with financial need, who have not earned their first bachelor's degree, or who are enrolled in certain post-baccalaureate programs, through participating institutions. The Pell Grant is named after Democratic U.S. Senator Claiborne Pell of Rhode Island, and was originally known as the Basic Educational Opportunity Grant. A Pell Grant is generally considered the foundation of a student's financial aid package,

to which other forms of aid are added. The Federal Pell Grant program is administered by the United States Department of Education, which determines the student's financial need and through it, the student's Pell eligibility. The U.S. Department of Education uses a standard formula to evaluate financial information reported on the Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA) for determining the student's expected family contribution (EFC).

③ Prison education

Prison education, also known as Inmate Education and Correctional Education, is a broad term that encompasses any number of educational activities occurring inside a prison. These educational activities include both vocational training and academic education. The goal of such activities is to prepare the prisoner for success outside of prison and to enhance the rehabilitative aspects of prison. Educational programs offered inside prisons are typically provided and managed by the prison systems in which they reside. Funding for the programs are provided through official correctional department budgets, private organizations (e.g. colleges, nonprofits, etc.), and the prisoners or their families, if the prisoner is pursuing education through a correspondence program.

④ Bard

Bard College is a private liberal arts college in Annandale-on-Hudson, a hamlet in New York, United States. The campus overlooks the Hudson River and Catskill Mountains, and is within the Hudson River Historic District, a National Historic Landmark. Founded in 1860, the institution consists of a liberal arts college, a conservatory, as well as eight graduate programs offering over 20 graduate degrees in the arts and sciences. The undergraduate student-to-faculty ratio is 10: 1. The college has a network of over thirty-five affiliated programs, institutes and centers, spanning twelve cities, five states, seven countries and four continents. Bard's Annandale campus serves as an important regional cultural institution. Both the CCS Hessel Museum of Contemporary Art and the Richard B. Fisher Center for the Performing Arts are located on campus. The college also hosts two acclaimed annual arts festivals, Bard SummerScape and the Bard Music Festival.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. American higher education began as a ________ religious and moral ________, preparing a small ________ of young men for ________ lives in this world and the ________ one.
2. Lagemann ________ the decline of college prison programs to the ________ spirit of criminal justice over the past several decades and to the ________ drop in public ________ to higher education.
3. And even as states and the federal government ________ up more money into prisons, they ________ funds for colleges and universities. They also ________ student aid, ________ the cost burden from grants to loans.
4. Her message is________, and almost ________ sad: if you take young people from needy homes and place them in ________ run schools, a high ________ of them will wind ________ in jail.
5. And the number of students attending college or university continued to grow, ________ by Obama's ________ of tuition tax credits and his ________ of direct government loans to ________ the private banks that ________ student borrowers.
6. Indeed, as ________ and Democrats agree to reduce the number of prisoners and their ________ tax burden, life might become even more ________ for the people who remain behind bars.
7. Some of the most ________ passages in Lagemann's book describe prisoners' ________ efforts to gain ________ to the Bard program, which requires a written test as well as an interview.
8. In a recent ________ of business leaders, nearly all of them said they ________ clear thinking and ________ skills in job applicants more than the particular graduate majors of job ________.
9. The freewheeling, take-no-prisoners discussions in Bard's prison program are in ________to many ________ classrooms, where rules of political ________ inhibit honest conversation.
10. They're not put off by ________, and they never ask professors to ________ them from it. One ________ that in many cases they get more out of college than their on-campus ________ do.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate Paragraphs 1 and 2. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Explanation

Directions: After learning the core words and the text, try to explain the following words using your own words. Pay attention to the usage. You can make sentences with them.

trim	hardy	upright	prune
tailor	diminish	rehabilitate	skinny

VII. Synonym Replacement

Directions: Read each sentence and choose an item from A/B/C/D with the similar meaning of the underlined word.

1. You give shares to someone who is contributing to the enterprise. (   )
   A. company   B. communion   C. entertainment   D. conversion
2. These values are a cause for concern and determining the biology behind this is the first step to remedy the trend. (   )
   A. revert   B. recollect   C. recycle   D. cure
3. The company trimmed £46,000 from its advertising budget. (   )
   A. revised   B. modified   C. cut   D. hoistd
4. The government denies that such policies constrain religious freedom or are especially aimed at the Jews. (   )
   A. commute   B. conspire   C. restrict   D. clobber
5. Peter gives two explicit answers in verse 38 to what they need—what we need. (   )
   A. vertical   B. clear   C. true   D. concise
6. Many people choose a vocation in the hopes that it would bring them wealth and success. (   )
   A. worship   B. job   C. fortune   D. doll
7. The mother's behavior has a profound impact on the developing child. (   )
   A. direct   B. ludicrous   C. immune   D. deep
8. In the film she was cast as a hardworking upright middle-aged woman. (   )
   A. honest   B. kind   C. outright   D. tempered
9. Don't let him diminish your achievements. (   )
   A. dismiss   B. degrade   C. divert   D. depart
10. These bloody lessons would sober most people down. (   )
   A. slop   B. skim   C. slam   D. calm

VIII. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets.

Practice 1

Rafting is an ________ (excite) adventure. A raft is a small boat that you can use to paddle down rivers and streams. Rafting is a good way to experience ________ (natural). If you want a normal rafting trip, choose a quiet stream or river that is wide and has few fallen trees or rocks. If you are looking for more ________ (excite), you may want to try whitewater rafting. Whitewater rafting is ________ (adventure) and ________ (difficulty) than normal rafting. It is done on rivers and streams where the water moves ________ (quick). You have to be ________ (care) not to hit rocks, trees and other ________ (dangerous). The name "whitewater" comes from the fact that the water in these streams and rivers looks white when it moves quickly.

Practice 2

Steve Jones is an ________ (environment) expert who tries to keep animals and plants from ________(become) endangered. If we know more about what causes ________ (danger), we may be able to take measures before it is too late. A species can become ________ (endanger) for ________(differ) reasons. Animals and plants must have a habitat or home, which is ________(comfort) and clean, and where there is enough food and other resources. Otherwise they cannot live ________ (comfortable). They are all used to their environment; that is, they have learnt how to live ________ (succeed) in their habitat.

IX. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. Lagemann links the decline of college prison programs to the punishing spirit of criminal justice over the past several decades and to the simultaneous drop in public commitment to higher education.
2. Obama did initiate a small program in 2015 to get around the Pell Grant Ban, and this is expected to provide federal student aid to 12,000 criminals.
3. Indeed, as Republicans and Democrats agree to reduce the number of prisoners and their associated tax burden, life might become even more miserable for the people who remain behind bars.
4. Nor does Bard tailor its curriculum to their expected future vocations, another characteristic of contemporary higher education.
5. In part, that trend reflects the preferences of students: as an annual survey of freshmen has demonstrated, rising numbers of young people value financial and job security over other educational goals.

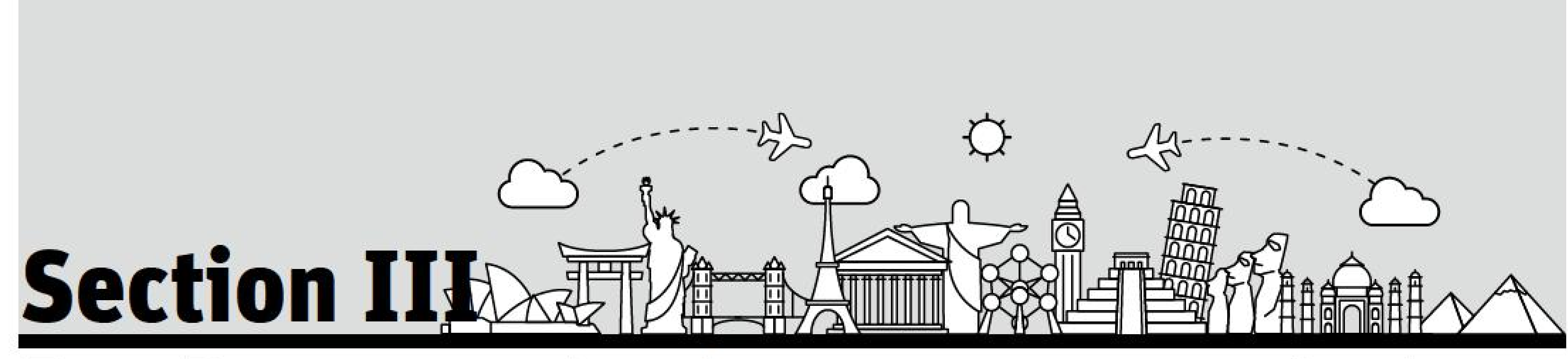
X. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. mole tiger worm swine ram hog stud (   ) ____________
2. pram wheelbarrow cot buggy crane bollock (   ) ____________
3. Guinea Israel Kenya Latin Austria (   ) ____________
4. waist thigh calf neck flesh scruff skull (   ) ____________
5. guardian jockey rogue shepherd carpenter monk jordan fireman (   ) ____________



Section III

Text B: How Technology Gets Us Hooked

Part 1 Power of Words

Core Words

① **farce** [fɑːs] ***n.***

an event or a situation that is very badly organized or does not happen properly, in a way that is silly and unreasonable; a humorous play or film in which the characters are involved in complicated and silly situations, or the style of writing or acting that is used

synonym	dido; comedy
word family	farcical; farcically
related phrase	melodramatic farce

Example 1 The audience roared at the farce.

Example 2 It has been noted that history repeats itself, first as tragedy and then as farce.

② **grin** [grɪn] ***n./vt.*** **(grinned/grinned/grinning)**

a facial expression characterized by turning up the corners of the mouth, usually to show pleasure or amusement; to draw back the lips and reveal the teeth, in a smile, grimace, or snarl

synonym	smile
word family	grinning; grinned
related phrase	grin and bear it; grin widely

Example 1 Look at Matt. Look at that fur, those eyes, that playful grin.

Example 2 I grin, quite pleased by this turn of events.

③ **raffle** ['ræf(ə)l] ***n./vt.*** **(raffled/raffled/raffling)**

a lottery in which the prizes are goods rather than money; dispose of in a lottery; a competition or game in which people buy numbered tickets and can win prizes; If someone raffles something, they give it as a prize in a raffle.

synonym	waste; refuse; garbage; junk
word family	raffled; raffling
related phrase	raffle ticket

Example 1 “Three for a dollar,” I asked her what caused the raffle supported.

Example 2 In return for my wise counsel, Matt gave me the only fee I ever received for legal advice in the Elm Street Diner, a raffle ticket.

④ **persist** [pə'sɪst] ***vi./vt.*** **(persisted/persisted/persisting)**

to continue to do something, although this is difficult, or other people oppose it; If you persist in doing something, you continue to do it, even though it is difficult or other people are against it.

synonym stay; abide; insist; adhere

antonym interrupt; quit; abandon

word family persistent; persistence

related phrase persist in

Example 1 If you persist in doing that, you will end up in trouble.

Example 2 I say no at first, but they persist. They promise to work around my schedule; they flatter me.

⑤ **refrain** [rɪ'freɪn] ***n./vi.*** **(refrained/refrained/refraining)**

the part of a song where a soloist is joined by a group of singers; to resist doing something; choose not to consume; If you refrain from doing something, you deliberately do not do it.

synonym chorus; forbear; abstain; desist

antonym insobriety

word family refrainment

related phrase refrain from; refrain words

Example 1 The first letter of a phrase or song refrains.

Example 2 That refrain always comes after those kinds of statements.

⑥ **stagger** ['stægə] ***vi./vt.*** **(staggered/staggered/staggering)**

to walk as if unable to control one's movements; to walk with great difficulty; to arrange in a systematic order; to astound or overwhelm, as with shock

synonym titubate; hesitate

word family staggering; staggerer

related phrase stagger tuning; stagger from sth. to sth.

Example 1 They planned to stagger our rehearsing hours.

Example 2 However, if you stagger and overlap multiple evolutions, then you can effectively manipulate the phases.

⑦ **discourage** [dɪs'kʌrɪdʒ] ***vt.*** **(discouraged/discouraged/discouraging)**

to try to prevent; to show opposition to; to deprive of courage or hope; to take away hope from; to cause to feel discouraged; to admonish or counsel in terms of someone's behavior

synonym stem; block; dispute; prohibit
antonym advocate; encourage
word family discouragement; discouragingly
related phrase discourage sb. from doing sth.

Example 1 Low prices discourage industry.

Example 2 Teachers should discourage their students from smoking and drinking.

⑧ intrude [ɪn'tru:d] *vi./vt.* (intruded/intruded/intruding)

to interrupt someone or become involved in their private affairs in an annoying and unwanted way; to come into a place or situation, and have an unwanted effect

synonym invade
word family intrusive; intrusion; intrusiveness
related phrase intrude detecting

Example 1 Be strict, and don't let them intrude on your thoughts.

Example 2 Banks occasionally intrude, but only to offer cheap loans to buy one or the other.

⑨ susceptible [sə'septɪb(ə)l] *adj.*

likely to suffer from a particular illness or be affected by a particular problem; A susceptible person is easily influenced or attracted by someone or something.

synonym impressionable; suggestible
antonym insusceptible; untouched; unswayed
word family susceptibility
related phrase susceptible animals; susceptible of sth.

Example 1 But pigs in Canada have contracted it from a human, indicating that the animals are susceptible.

Example 2 I have been following news reports on women who appear to be more susceptible to aggressive acts, although jealousy and hate occur for either gender.

⑩ sensation [sen'seɪʃ(ə)n] *n.*

a feeling that you get from one of your five senses, especially the sense of touch; a feeling that is difficult to describe, caused by a particular event, experience, or memory

synonym consciousness; feel
antonym senselessness
word family sensible; sensory; sensational
related phrase pleasant sensation; visual sensation

Example 1 Working with one's head causes a sensation of hunger quite as much as muscular work.

Example 2 The new book has created a great sensation.

⑪ **classify** ['klæsɪfaɪ] ***vt.*** **(classified/classified/classifying)**

to decide what group something belongs to; to regard people or things as belonging to a particular group because they have similar qualities

synonym	categorize
word family	classified; classifying; classification
related phrase	classify as

Example 1 Classify them by branch, region and year.

Example 2 This is true regardless of how we classify the service.

⑫ **overload** [(for *v.*) ˌəʊvə'ləʊd; (for *n.*) 'əʊvələʊd] ***n./vt.*** **(overloaded/overladen/overloading)**

to put too many things or people on or into something; to put too much electricity through an electrical system or piece of equipment; to give someone too much work or information to deal with

synonym	surcharge; overcarriage
word family	overladen
related phrase	overload protection; information overload

Example 1 You should test for the overload at each point of the cycle.

Example 2 The bar waiter was already overloaded with orders.

⑬ **pursuit** [pə'sjuːt] ***n.***

when someone tries to get, achieve, or find something in a determined way; when someone chases or follows someone else; an activity, such as a sport or hobby, which you spend a lot of time doing

synonym	profession; employment; career
word family	pursuant; pursuance; pursuing
related phrase	in pursuit of; in hot pursuit

Example 1 After a pursuit lasting all day we finally caught up with them.

Example 2 For the foregoing reasons, I have never wavered in my pursuit of this purpose.

⑭ **elegant** ['elɪgənt] ***adj.***

beautiful, attractive, or graceful; An idea or a plan that is elegant is very intelligent yet simple.

synonym	graceful; exquisite
antonym	inelegant
word family	elegantly; elegance
related phrase	elegant appearance

Example 1 A man's demeanor is high and elegant.

Example 2 That required flexibility and performance, but also the ability to express elegant interfaces.

⑮ **ignite** [ɪɡ'naɪt] ***vt.*** **(ignited/ignited/igniting)**

to start burning, or to make something start burning; to start a dangerous situation, angry argument, etc.; If something or someone ignites your feelings, they cause you to have very strong feelings about something.

synonym trigger; stimulate; burn

word family ignition; ignitor; ignitable

related phrase ignite set; ignite one's spirit

Example 1 It can ignite your spirit and make you feel like you can do anything.

Example 2 They give me energy and motivation; they ignite my creativity while maintaining a high level of productivity.

⑯ **cling** [klɪŋ] ***vi.*** **(clung/clung/clinging)**

to hold someone or something tightly, especially because you do not feel safe; to stick to someone or something, or seem to surround them; to stay close to someone all the time because you are too dependent on them or do not feel safe—used to show disapproval

synonym adhere; stay

antonym quit; abandon

word family clinging

related phrase cling to

Example 1 Despite the low rate of success at the market, parents cling to the hope that they will find a suitable match for their offspring.

Example 2 These are the lifeblood of the Barba people living in the villages that cling to every mountain top.

⑰ **terminology** [ˌtɜːmɪ'nɒlədʒɪ] ***n.*** **(*pl.* terminologies)**

the technical words or expressions that are used in a particular subject; The terminology of a subject is the set of special words and expressions used in connection with it.

synonym term; technology; onym

word family terminological

related phrase scientific terminology; technical terminology

Example 1 For the moment, it is a breakthrough of terminology more than substance.

Example 2 What you can consciously do is to mirror their language or use the same terminology.

⑱ dole out

to administer or bestow, as in small portions

synonym distribute; administer; mete; dispense

related phrase dole out sth. to sb.

Example 1 The Red Cross flew to the area of the earthquake, ready to dole out supplies of food, water and medicine.

Example 2 At the same time, trade exposes inefficiencies in state-run enterprises, further limiting the ability of state officials to dole out jobs and favors.

Words for Self-study

Please find and memorize the meanings and usages of the following words with the help of dictionaries, online resources and other references.

bulb	deck	itch	kiddy	ledge
microscope	noble	peck	rake	reel
staircase	toddler	tray	triple	

Part 2 Text

Pre-reading Questions

1. Have you ever got hooked on technology? Do you think it's a bad phenomenon?
2. Can you fancy about the technology 100 years later?

How Technology Gets Us Hooked

Not long ago, I stepped into a moving staircase on the 18th floor of a tall building in New York City. A young woman inside the staircase was looking down at the top of her toddler's head with embarrassment as he looked at me and grinned. When I turned to push the ground-floor button, I saw that every button had already been pushed. Kiddies love pushing buttons, but they only push every button when the buttons light up. From a young age, humans are driven to learn, and learning involves getting as much feedback as possible from the immediate environment. Kiddies are susceptible to the feedback. The toddler who shared my elevator was grinning because feedback—in the form of lights or sounds or any change in the state of the world—is hilarious.

But this pursuit for feedback doesn't end with childhood. In 2012, an ad agency in Belgium produced an outdoor campaign for a TV channel that quickly went popular. The campaign's producers placed a big red button on a ledge in an elegant square in a sleepy town in Flanders. A big arrow hung above the button with a simple instruction: Push to add drama. You can see the glint in each person's eye as he or she approaches the button—the same glint that came just before the toddler in my elevator raked his tiny hand across the panel of buttons.

Psychologists have long tried to understand how animals respond to different forms of feedback. In 1971, a psychologist named Michael Zeiler sat in his lab across from three hungry

white pigeons. At this stage, the research program focused on rats and pigeons, but it had noble aims. Could the behavior of lower-order animals teach governments how to encourage charity and discourage crime? Could business executives inspire overloaded shift workers to find new meaning in their jobs? Could parents learn how to shape perfect children?

Before Zeiler could change the world, he had to work out the best way to deliver rewards. One option was to reward every desirable behavior. Another was to reward those same desirable behaviors on an unpredictable schedule, creating some of the mystery that spurs people to buy raffle tickets. The pigeons had been raised in the lab, so they knew the drill. Each one staggered up to a small button and pecked persistently, hoping that the button would release a tray of Purina pigeon bulbs. During some trials, Zeiler would program the button so it delivered food every time the pigeons pecked; during others, he programmed the button so it delivered food only some of the time. Sometimes the pigeons would peck uselessly, the button would turn red, and they would receive nothing.

When I first learned about Zeiler's work, I expected the consistent schedule to work best. But that's not what happened at all. The results weren't even close: the pigeons pecked almost twice as often when the reward wasn't guaranteed. Their brains, it turned out, were releasing far more dopamine when the reward was unexpected than when it was predictable. Zeiler had documented an important fact about positive feedback: that less is often more. His pigeons were drawn to the mystery of mixed feedback just as humans are attracted to the uncertainty of gambling.

Decades after Zeiler published his results, in 2012, a team of Facebook web developers prepared to unleash a similar feedback experiment on hundreds of millions of humans. The site already had 200 million users at the time—a number that would triple over the next three years. The experiment took the form of a dubiously simple new feature called a "like button[1]".

It's hard to exaggerate how much the "like button" changed the psychology of Facebook use. What had begun as a passive way to track your friends' lives was now deeply interactive, and with exactly the sort of unpredictable feedback that motivated Zeiler's pigeons. Users were gambling every time they shared a photo, web link, or status update. A post with zero "likes" wasn't just privately painful, but also a kind of public condemnation: either you didn't have enough online friends, or, worse still, your online friends weren't impressed. Like pigeons, we're more driven to seek feedback when it isn't guaranteed. Facebook was the first major social networking force to introduce the like button, but others now have similar functions. You can like and repost tweets on Twitter, pictures on Instagram[2], posts on Google+, columns on LinkedIn[3] and videos on YouTube.

The act of liking became the subject of courtesy debates. What did it mean to refrain from liking a friend's post? If you liked every third post, was that an implied condemnation of the other posts? Liking became a form of basic social support—the online equivalent of laughing at a friend's farce in public.

Web developer Rameet Chawla[4] developed an app as a marketing exercise, but also a social experiment, to uncover the effect of the like button. When he launched it, Chawla posted this introduction on its homepage: "People are addicted. We experience withdrawals. We are so driven by this drug, getting just one hit ignites truly peculiar reactions. I'm talking about likes. They've unconsciously emerged as the first digital drug to dominate our culture."

Chawla's app, called Lovematically, was designed to automatically like every picture that rolled through its users' newsfeeds. It wasn't even necessary to impress them any more; any old post was

good enough to inspire a like. Apart from enjoying the warm glow that comes from spreading good cheer, Chawla—for the first three months, the app's only user—also found that people repaid. They liked more of his photos, and he attracted an average of 30 new followers a day, totting up to almost 3,000 followers during the trial period. On Valentine's Day 2014, Chawla allowed 5,000 Instagram users to install a trial version of the app. After only two hours, Instagram shut down Lovematically for violating the social network's terms of use.

"I knew way before launching it that it would get shut down by Instagram," Chawla said. "Using drug terminology, you know, Instagram is the dealer and I'm the new guy in the market giving away the drug for free."

Chawla was surprised, though, that it happened so quickly. He'd hoped for at least a week of use, but Instagram popped immediately.

When I moved to the United States for graduate studies in 2004, online entertainment was limited. These were the days before Instagram, Twitter and YouTube—and Facebook was limited to students at Harvard. One evening, I stumbled on a game called Sign of the Zodiac that demanded very little mental energy.

Zodiac was a simple online slot machine, much like the actual slot machines in gambling houses: you decided how much to make a bet, lazily clicked a button over and over again, and watched as the machine spat out wins and losses. At first, I played to relieve the stress of long days filled with too much thinking, but the brief "ding" that followed each small win, and the longer rhythm that followed each major win, hooked me fast. Eventually screen shots of the game would intrude on my day. I'd picture five crabs lining up for the game's highest prize, followed by the prize rhythm that I can still cling to today. I had a minor behavioral addiction, and these were the conscious leftovers of the random, unpredictable feedback that followed each win.

My Zodiac addiction wasn't unusual. For 13 years, Natasha Dow Schüll, a cultural anthropologist, studied gamblers and the machines that hook them. She collected descriptions of slot machines from gambling experts and current and former addicts, which included the following: "Slots are the crack itch of gambling ... the most viral strain of gambling in the history of man ... Slots are the primary addiction delivery device."

These are sensationalized descriptions, but they capture how easily people become hooked on slot-machine gambling. I can relate, because I became addicted to a slots game that wasn't even doling out real money. The reinforcing sound of a win after the silence of several losses was enough for me.

In the U.S., banks are not allowed to handle online gambling winnings, which makes online gambling practically illegal. Very few companies are willing to fight the system, and the ones that do are quickly defeated. That sounds like a good thing, but free and legal games, such as Sign of the Zodiac can also be dangerous. At gambling houses, the deck is stacked heavily against the player; on average the house has to win. But the house doesn't have to win in a game without money.

As David Goldhill, the chief executive officer of the Game Show Network, which also produces many online games, told me: "Because we're not restricted by having to pay real winnings, we can pay out $120 for every $100 played. No land-based gambling house could do that for more than a week without going out of business." As a result, the game can continue forever because the player never runs out of chips. I played Sign of the Zodiac for four years and rarely had to start a new

game. I won roughly 95% of the time. The game only ended when I had to eat or sleep or attend class in the morning. And sometimes it didn't even end then.

Gambling houses win most of the time, but they have a clever way of convincing gamblers that the outcomes are reversed. Early slot machines were incredibly simple devices: the player pulled the machine's arm to spin its three mechanical reels. If the center of the reels displayed two or more of the same symbol when they stopped spinning, the player won a certain number of coins or credits. Today, slot machines allow gamblers to play multiple lines. Every time you play, you're more likely to win on at least one line, and the machine will celebrate with you by flashing bright lights and playing catchy tunes. If you play 15 lines, and you win on two of the lines, you make a net loss, and yet you enjoy the positive feedback that follows a win—a type of win that Schüll and other gambling experts call a "loss disguised as a win".

Losses disguised as wins only matter because players don't classify them as losses—they classify them as wins. This is what makes modern slot machines—and modern gambling houses—so dangerous. Like the little boy who hit every button in my lift, adults never really grow out of the thrill of attractive lights and sounds. If our brains convince us that we're winning even when we're actually losing, it becomes almost impossible to summon the self-control to stop playing.

The success of slot machines is measured by "time on device". Since most players lose more money the longer they play, time on device is a useful agent for profitability. Video-game designers use a similar measure, which captures how engaging and enjoyable their games are. The difference between gambling houses and video games is that many game designers are more concerned with making their games fun than with making buckets of money. Bennett Foddy, who teaches game design at New York University's Game Center, has created a number of successful free-to-play games, but each was a labor of love rather than a money-making vehicle.

"Video games are governed by microscopic rules," Foddy says. "When your mouse moves over a particular box, text will pop up, or a sound will play. Designers use this sort of micro-feedback to keep players more engaged and more hooked in."

(Adapted from https: //www. theguardian. com/technology/2017/feb/28/how-technology-gets-us-hooked)

Notes

① Like button

Like option, or recommend button, is a feature in communication software, such as social networking services, Internet forums, news websites and blogs where the user can express that they like, enjoy or support certain content. Like is the lowest level category feedback on content that a user can provide in Internet-based social networks, and it has positive impact as it indicates that the user finds the content interesting, useful or, worth considering. Internet services that feature like buttons usually display the number of users who liked each content, and may show a full or partial list of them. This is a quantitative alternative to other methods of expressing reaction to content, like writing a reply text. Some websites also include a dislike button, so the user can either vote in favour, against or neutrally. Other websites include more complex web content voting systems, for example five stars.

② Instagram

Instagram is a mobile, desktop and Internet-based photo-sharing application and service that allows users to share pictures and videos either publicly or privately. It was created by Kevin Systrom and Mike Krieger, and launched in October 2010 as a free mobile app exclusively for the iOS operating system. A version for Android devices was released a year later, in April 2012, followed by a feature-limited website interface in November 2012, and apps for Windows 10 Mobile and Windows 10 in April 2016 and October 2016 respectively.

③ LinkedIn

LinkedIn is a business- and employment-oriented social networking service that operates via websites and mobile apps. Founded on December 28, 2002, and launched on May 5, 2003, it is mainly used for professional networking, including employers posting jobs and job seekers posting their CVs. As of 2015, most of the company's revenue came from selling access to information about its members to recruiters and sales professionals. As of September 2016, LinkedIn had more than 467 million accounts, out of which more than 106 million are active. As of April 2017, LinkedIn had 500 million members in 200 countries. LinkedIn allows members (both workers and employers) to create profiles and "connections" to each other in an online social network which may represent real-world professional relationships. Members can invite anyone (whether an existing member or not) to become a connection.

④ Rameet Chawla

Rameet Chawla (born on January 1, 1983) is an American entrepreneur, best known as the founder and CEO of Fueled, a design and development company based in New York City, London and Chicago. Chawla has contributed to the web development of several notable startup companies. In 2014, Rameet launched Lovematically, a mobile app and social experiment which automatically "liked" social media posts.

Part 3 Exercises

I. Text Understanding

Directions: Read the text quickly and try to make an oral summary of the main idea. You can make an outline with some key words at first.

II. Subvocal Reading

Directions: Read aloud and listen to the audio of the text for full understanding. Then practice subvocal reading at fast speed (150 words per minute).

III. Faster Reading

Directions: Try to suppress subvocal to achieve faster reading speed.

IV. Text Familiarity

Directions: Read the text carefully and repeatedly to fully understand the content first, and

try to fill in the blanks based on your memory. You should not refer to the text while doing the exercises.

1. At this ________, the research program focused on rats and pigeons, but it had aims. Could the behavior of lower-order animals teach governments how to encourage and ________ crime?
2. Another was to reward those same ________ behaviors on an ________ schedule, creating some of the mystery that ________ people to buy ________ tickets.
3. What had begun as a passive way to ________ your friends' lives was now deeply ________, and with exactly the sort of ________ feedback that ________ Zeiler's pigeons.
4. ________ from enjoying the warm ________ that comes from ________ good cheer, Chawla—for the first three months, the app's only user—also found that people ________.
5. These are ________ descriptions, but they capture how easily people become ________ on slot-machine gambling. I can ________, because I became ________ to a slots game that wasn't even ________ out real money.

V. Text Dictation

Directions: Listen to the audio of the text repeatedly and try to dictate the last two paragraphs. Through the reading and listening practice, you'd better recite the whole passage.

VI. Word Formation

Directions: Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets.

1. There is always the ________ (possible) of an earthquake in this region, but so far there has been no sign of trouble.
2. The man told me that the ________ (equip) would arrive in three days.
3. Although I do not share his religious ________ (believe), I respect him.
4. There is little ________ (probable) that it will rain tonight.
5. With the ________ (apply) of credit cards more people got into debt.
6. The world is running out of oil, and energy experts believe that there could be serious ________ (short) in ten years' time.
7. The child told the ________ (true) when he said he hadn't broken the window.
8. The accident was caused by the motorist's ________ (impatient).
9. We could make an ________ (arrange) to meet at 10 o'clock.
10. He shook his head, but gave no ________ (explain).

VII. Translation

Directions: Translate the following sentences into Chinese and pay attention to the context.

1. What had begun as a passive way to track your friends' lives was now deeply interactive, and with exactly the sort of unpredictable feedback that motivated Zeiler's pigeons.
2. Web developer Rameet Chawla developed an app as a marketing exercise, but also a social experiment, to uncover the effect of the like button.

3. Apart from enjoying the warm glow that comes from spreading good cheer, Chawla—for the first three months, the app's only user—also found that people repaid.
4. They liked more of his photos, and he attracted an average of 30 new followers a day, totting up to almost 3,000 followers during the trial period.
5. At first, I played to relieve the stress of long days filled with too much thinking, but the brief "ding" that followed each small win, and the longer rhythm that followed each major win, hooked me fast.

VIII. Word Exclusion

Directions: Read the following words and pick up the one that does not belong to the word group and try to give the reasons. You'd better master the meaning and usage of each word first. Work with your partners.

e.g. cherry chestnut lemon plum strawberry (chestnut)

Because all the other words mean some kind of fruit except chestnut.

1. embroider diplomat crew pedestrian punter porter jumper ( ) ________________
2. Cyprus California Cork Saudi Belgium Mediterranean ( ) ________________
3. butterfly robin parrot pelican puss lark eagle ( ) ________________
4. cab caravan liner metro rug tram ( ) ________________
5. shit bitch arse bastard jerk fuck demon bullshit ( ) ________________